

APPLETONS'

SCHOOL and COLLEGE TEXT-BOOKS

Latin, Greek, Syriac, Hebrew.

LATIN.

Arnold, T. K. First and Second Latin Book and Practical Grammar. By SPENCER. 12mo.

— — Latin Prose Composition. 12mo.

— — Cornelius Nepos. With Notes. 12mo.

Beza. Latin Testament. 12mo.

Butler, Noble, and Sturgis, Minard. Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline, with Notes and Vocabulary. Revised edition. 12mo.

Cæsar. See HARKNESS and SPENCER.

Cicero. See HARKNESS, E. A. JOHNSON, LINCOLN, and THACHER.

Cornelius Nepos. See ARNOLD and LINDSAY.

Crosby, W. H. Quintus Curtius Rufus. Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited and illustrated, with English Notes. 12mo.

Frieze, Henry S. The Tenth and Twelfth Books of Quintilian. With Notes 12mo.

— — Vergil's Aeneid. With Notes, etc. 12mo.

— — Vergil's Aeneid. With Notes and Dictionary. New edition. 12mo.

— — The Complete Works of Vergil. With Notes and Dictionary. 12mo.

— — A Vergilian Dictionary, embracing all the Words in the Eclogues, Georgics, and Aeneid. 12mo.

— — The Georgics, Bucolics, and the First Six Books of the Aeneid of Vergil. With Notes and a Vergilian Dictionary. 12mo.

Gates, C. O. Latin Word-Building. 12mo.

Harkness, Albert. Series of Latin Text-Books. 12mo:

An Introductory Latin Book, intended as an Elementary Drill-Book on the Inflections and Principles of the Language.

Arnold's First Latin Book.

Second Latin Book.

Progressive Exercises.

A Complete Course for the First Year.

A Latin Grammar, for Schools and Colleges.

[A Latin Grammar, for Schools and Colleges. Revised edition. 1881.

The Elements of Latin Grammar, for Schools.

A Latin Reader, intended as a companion to the author's Latin Grammar.

A Latin Reader. With Exercises.

[A New Latin Reader. With References, Suggestions, Notes, and Vocabulary.

STANDARD CLASSICAL TEXT-BOOKS.

Harkness, Albert. Series of Latin Text-Books. 12mo:

A Practical Introduction to Latin Composition. For Schools and Colleges.
Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. With Notes, Dictionary, etc.
New Pictorial Edition.

Preparatory Course in Latin Prose Authors, comprising Four Books of
Caesar's Gallic War, Sallust's Catiline, and Eight Orations of Cicero
With Notes, Illustrations, a Map of Gaul, and a Special Dictionary. New
Pictorial Edition.

Sallust's Catiline. With Notes and a Special Dictionary.

Cicero's Select Orations. With Notes, etc.

The Same, with Notes and Dictionary.

This series has received the unqualified commendation of many of the
most eminent classical professors and teachers in our country, and is already in
use in every State of the Union, and, indeed, in nearly all our leading classical
institutions of every grade, both of school and college.

Herbermann's Sallust's Jugurthine War.

Horace. See LINCOLN.

Johnson, E. A. Cicero's Select Orations. With Notes. 12mo.

Latin Speaker. See SEWALL.

Lincoln, John L. Horace. With Notes, etc. 12mo.

— — Livy. With Notes, Map, etc. 12mo.

— — Ovid.

— — Same, with Notes and Vocabulary.

Lindsay, T. B. Cornelius Nepos. With Notes, Vocabulary, Index, and Exercises. Illustrated. 12mo.

— — Same, for Sight-Reading.

Lord's Cicero's Laelius.

Quintilian. See FRIEZE.

Quintus Curtius Rufus. See CROSBY, W. H.

Sallust. See BUTLER and STURGIS, HARKNESS, and HERBERMANN.

Sewall, Frank. Latin Speaker. Easy Dialogues, and other Selections for Memorizing and Declaiming in the Latin Language. 12mo.

Spencer, J. A. Caesar's Commentaries. With Notes, etc. 12mo.

Thacher, Thomas A. Cicero's de Officiis. Three Books, with Notes and Con-
spectus. 12mo.

Tyler, W. S. Germania and Agricola of Tacitus. With Notes, etc. 12mo

— — Histories of Tacitus. With Notes. 12mo.

Vergil. See FRIEZE.

GREEK.

Adams, F. A. Greek Prepositions.

Anabasis. See BOISE and OWEN.

Antigone. See SMEAD.

Arnold, T. K. First Greek Book. Edited by SPENCER. 12mo.



THE LIBRARY
OF
THE UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA

IN MEMORY OF
PROFESSOR WILLIAM MERRILL
AND
MRS. IMOGENE MERRILL

EDUCATION LIBR.

A

COMPLETE LATIN COURSE

FOR THE

FIRST YEAR,

COMPRISING

AN OUTLINE OF LATIN GRAMMAR, AND A SERIES OF
PROGRESSIVE EXERCISES IN READING AND
WRITING LATIN, WITH FREQUENT
PRACTICE IN READING
AT SIGHT.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, PH.D., LL.D.,

PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

REVISED EDITION.

NEW YORK:

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,

1, 3, AND 5 BOND STREET.

1888.

Education

GIFT

Merrill Plate

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1883, by

ALBERT HARKNESS,

In the Office of the Librarian of Congress at Washington.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1888, by

ALBERT HARKNESS,

In the office of the Librarian of Congress at Washington.

PA 2087

H 364

1888

Educ.

Lib

PREFACE

TO THE REVISED EDITION.

In this edition, the Latin Course for the First Year has been thoroughly revised and in part rewritten. In its present form it aims to introduce the beginner to the Latin language as a means of expressing thought, and not as a mere system of grammatical forms and rules, to make his first lessons as simple and attractive as possible, and then to conduct him by easy stages to such a practical and working knowledge of the language as will enable him to read Caesar or Vergil with some little facility and with some degree of pleasure.

The following are a few of the leading features of the revised edition.

1. The beginner is introduced, at the outset, to complete Latin sentences, and is informed how he may best ascertain their meaning.

2. He learns no arbitrary rules. He is allowed to see the various Latin usages exemplified in the language itself, and is thus prepared to recognize in each rule of syntax, to which his attention is called, only a simple statement of the facts in the case.

3. He is instructed that his chief object must be to read and appreciate the language itself, and that the grammar will be useful mainly as it aids him in this work. An attempt is made to enable him to understand and enjoy the thought in the original, to see that Latin words are not mere equivalents for corresponding English words, but that they have a meaning of their own, that Latin nouns, for instance, are the actual names of real persons and things.

4. The grammatical information, which will be of immediate and constant use to the learner in reading and understanding Latin, is given in the lessons themselves, while other grammatical facts which ought to be within his reach, but which should not be allowed to burden his memory, are placed in the introduction for reference.

In conclusion, the learner is advised to make faithful use of the Suggestions, which he will find in the latter part of the book, beginning on page 261. It is hoped that they will greatly aid him in his work.

BROWN UNIVERSITY, *July*, 1888.

P R E F A C E.

THE volume now offered to the public is intended to furnish the pupil a complete course for his first year in the study of Latin. It conducts the beginner through the common forms and inflections of the language, introduces him to the leading principles of its syntax, and aims to prepare him to enter with success upon the consecutive study of Caesar or of any of the less difficult Latin authors. It comprises an Outline of Latin Grammar, Progressive Exercises in Reading and Writing Latin, eighteen pages of Connected Discourse from Caesar, Directions for Reading at Sight, Suggestions to the Learner, Notes, a Latin-English and an English-Latin Vocabulary.

The Paradigms and Rules are introduced in the exact form and language of the author's Grammar. Thus the great objection to many First Latin Books, that they fill the memory of the pupil with forms of statement that must be laid aside as soon as he passes to his Grammar, is entirely obviated in this volume.

The *Latin Exercises* are taken chiefly from Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. They are made so strictly progressive, that the learner will find it perfectly easy, in the latter part of the volume, to make the transition from classified sentences to connected discourse. The

English Exercises are modelled after the Latin, and involve the same constructions and the same vocabulary.

The *Exercises in Reading at Sight* consist of easy passages of connected discourse from Caesar's Commentaries. They are so arranged that all the words and constructions involved in any given exercise are introduced and used in previous lessons. The pupil, therefore, who has learned all the vocabularies, and has been faithful in his other work, will find little difficulty in reading at sight in accordance with the directions given him. The important point is not that he should translate any given passage absolutely at sight, but that he should master it without help from any source whatever. The exercises are intended to encourage independent work, to promote self-reliance in study, and to give facility in reading and appreciating Latin.

The *Suggestions to the Learner* are intended not only to point out to the beginner the process by which he may most readily and surely reach the meaning of a Latin sentence, but also to aid him in expressing that meaning in idiomatic English. Experience has abundantly shown the need of such directions. The beginner's first efforts to solve the problem presented by a Latin sentence are too often little better than a series of unsuccessful conjectures, while his first translations are purely mechanical renderings, with little regard either to the thought of his author or to the proprieties of his mother-tongue.

I am happy in this connection to acknowledge my obligations to my esteemed friend, Mr. Edward H. Cutler, the accomplished Head-Master of the Newton High School. His accurate scholarship and large professional experience have contributed greatly to the value of every part of the work. The vocabularies are all from his hand.

The work which appears entire in this volume is also published without the *Grammatical Outline*, under the title: *Progressive Exercises in Reading and Writing Latin, with*

Frequent Practice in Reading at Sight, intended as a Companion Book to the Author's Latin Grammar.

Teachers who use the author's Latin Series in connection with the Standard Edition¹ of his Latin Grammar, may now choose for their classes during the first year of their Latin studies any one of the following courses :—

1. *The Complete Latin Course for the First Year.*
2. *The Grammar, and the Progressive Exercises in Reading and Writing Latin.*
3. *The Grammar, and the New Latin Reader.*

Each of these courses will be found to furnish an adequate preparation for the reading of any of the less difficult Latin authors. In making the selection, teachers will have an opportunity to gratify their individual preferences, and to consult the special needs of their schools.

¹ Those who retain the earlier edition of the Grammar will find the *Introductory Latin Book* and the *Latin Reader* adapted to it. The editions of Latin Authors may be had with references to either edition of the Grammar, at the option of the instructor.

BROWN UNIVERSITY, PROVIDENCE, R.I.,

July, 1883.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION. Pronunciation. — Quantity. — Accentuation	1
Sentences. — Verbs	11
LESSON I. Parts of Speech. — Nouns	15
II. Cases	17
III., IV. Sentences. — Verbs. — First Conjugation	19
V. First Declension	22
VI. Subject Nominative. — Agreement of Verbs	23
VII. Direct Object	26
VIII., IX. Questions	28
X., XI. Certain Forms of the Second Conjugation. — Appositives. — Genitive with Nouns	30
XII., XIII. Second Declension	33
XIV. Adjectives. — First and Second Declension. — Agreement of Adjectives	37
XV. Adjectives. — Certain Forms of <i>Sum</i>	39
XVI., XVII. Adjectives. — <i>Liber</i> . — <i>Aeger</i>	40
XVIII., — XXIV. Third Declension	43
Dative with Verbs	47
Predicate Nouns	51
XXV. Gender in Third Declension. — Cases with Prepositions	56
XXVI. Certain Forms of the Third Conjugation. — Use of Adverbs	60
XXVII., XXVIII. Certain Forms of the Fourth Conjugation. — Perfect Tense. — Ablative of Means	62
XXIX., XXX. Adjectives of the Third Declension	66
Comparison of Adjectives	70
XXXI. Ablative with Comparatives	71
XXXII. Fourth Declension. — Fifth Declension. — Time	74

LESSON XXXIII.	Numerals. — Accusative of Time and Space	77
XXXIV. — XXXVI.	Pronouns	81
	Questions — Answers	87
XXXVII.	Agreement of Pronouns	88
XXXVIII.	Present and Imperfect Subjunctive Active, and Present Imperative Active, in Conju- gations I. and II., and in <i>Sum</i> . — Use of Indicative	91
XXXIX.	Subjunctive of Desire, Command. — Impera- tive	94
XL., XLI.	Present and Imperfect Subjunctive Active, and Present Imperative Active, in Conju- gations III. and IV. — Sequence of Tenses. — Purpose	97
XLII.	Result	102
XLIII.	Moods in Indirect Clauses	106
XLIV.	Present Infinitive Active. — Use of Infini- tive. — Certain Forms of <i>Possum</i>	109
XLV.	Directions for Reading at Sight. — Exercise in Reading at Sight	112
XLVI., XLVII.	<i>Sum</i>	115
	Dative with Adjectives	118
XLVIII. — L.	First Conjugation. — Indicative Active	120
LI., LII.	First Conjugation. — Active Voice	123
	Two Accusatives — Same Person	126
LIII. — LV.	First Conjugation. — Indicative Passive. — Separation, Source, Cause	128
LVI., LVII.	First Conjugation. — Subjunctive Passive. — Supine in <i>um</i>	133
LVIII.	First Conjugation. — Passive Voice. — Accusa- tive and Infinitive. — Subject of Infinitive	135
LIX.	Exercise in Reading at Sight	140
LX.	Second Conjugation. — Indicative Active	141
LXI. — LXIII.	Second Conjugation. — Active Voice	143
	Place in Which	147
LXIV., LXV.	Second Conjugation. — Indicative Passive. — Use of Vocative	151
LXVI. — LXVIII.	Second Conjugation. — Passive Voice	153

LESSON LXIX.	Exercise in Reading at Sight	160
LXX.	Third Conjugation. — Indicative Active . . .	161
LXXI., LXXII.	Third Conjugation. — Active Voice	163
LXXIII. — LXXV.	Third Conjugation. — Passive Voice	169
LXXVI.	Exercise in Reading at Sight	176
LXXVII.	Fourth Conjugation. — Indicative Active . .	177
LXXVIII., LXXIX.	Fourth Conjugation. — Active Voice	179
	Ablative of Specification	183
LXXX. — LXXXII.	Fourth Conjugation. — Passive Voice	185
	Ablative of Difference	188
	Ablative Absolute	190
LXXXIII.	Exercise in Reading at Sight	193
LXXXIV.	Third Conjugation. — Verbs in <i>iō</i> . — Active Voice. — Supine in <i>ū</i>	194
LXXXV.	Third Conjugation. — Verbs in <i>iō</i> . — Passive Voice. — Conditional Sentences	198
LXXXVI.	Concessive Clauses	202
LXXXVII.	Deponent Verbs. — Ablative in Special Con- structions	205
LXXXVIII.	Indirect Discourse	209
LXXXIX.	Periphrastic Conjugations. — Exercise in Reading at Sight	214
XC. — XCV.	Irregular Verbs. — <i>Possūm</i>	215
	<i>Ferō</i>	216
	<i>Volō</i> . — <i>Nōlō</i> . — <i>Mālō</i> . — Two Accusatives. . .	220
	<i>Fiō</i> . — <i>Eō</i> . — Accusative of Limit. — Place from Which	224
XCVI., XCVII.	Impersonal Verbs. — Two Datives	229
	Accusative and Genitive	232
XCVIII.	Exercise in Reading at Sight	235
XCIX., C.	Gerunds, Gerundives, and Participles	236
Narratives from Caesar. — The Helvetii		242
Invasion of Britain		253
Suggestions on Exercises in Latin Composition		260
Suggestions to the Learner.		261
Latin-English Vocabulary		271
English-Latin Vocabulary		305
Appendix. — General Rules of Syntax		321

FIRST YEAR'S LATIN COURSE.

INTRODUCTION.

NOTE. — The teacher will doubtless deem it advisable to begin with Lesson I., page 15, and to use the introduction for reference.

LATIN ALPHABET.

1. LATIN GRAMMAR treats of the principles of the Latin language.

2. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, with the omission of *w*.

3. Letters are divided according to the position of the vocal organs at the time of utterance into two general classes, vowels and consonants,¹ and these classes are again divided into various subdivisions, as seen in the following

CLASSIFICATION OF LETTERS.

I. VOWELS.

1. OPEN VOWEL ²	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	a
2. MEDIAL VOWELS	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	e o
3. CLOSE VOWELS ³	.	.	.	.	.	.	i	y u

¹ If the vocal organs are sufficiently open to allow an uninterrupted flow of vocal sound, a vowel is produced, otherwise a consonant; but the least open vowels are scarcely distinguishable from the most open consonants.

² In pronouncing the open vowel *a* as in *father*, the vocal organs are fully open. By gradually contracting them at one point and another we produce in succession the medial vowels, the close vowels, the semivowels, the nasals, the aspirate, the fricatives, and finally the mutes, in pronouncing which the closure of the vocal organs becomes complete.

³ *E* is a medial vowel between the open *a* and the close *i*; *o* a medial

II. CONSONANTS.¹

	GUTTURALS.	DENTALS.	LABIALS.
1. SEMIVOWELS, <i>sonant</i> ²	i or j = y		v = w
2. NASALS, <i>sonant</i>	n ³	ɲ	m
3. ASPIRATE, <i>surd</i> ²	h		
4. FRICATIVES, comprising :			
1. <i>Liquids, sonant</i>		l, r	
2. <i>Spirants, surd</i>		s	f
5. MUTES, comprising :			
1. <i>Sonant mutes</i>	g	d	b
2. <i>Surd mutes</i>	c, k, q	t	p

NOTE. — *X* = *cs*, and *z* = *ds*, are double consonants, formed by the union of a mute with the spirant *s*.

4. Diphthongs are formed by the union of two vowels in one syllable.

NOTE. — The most common diphthongs are *ae*, *oe*, *au*, and *eu*. *Ei*, *oi*, and *ui* are rare.

PHONETIC CHANGES.

22. Vowels are often weakened, *i.e.*, are often changed to weaker vowels.

The order of the vowels, from the strongest to the weakest, is as follows:

vowel between the open *a* and the close *u*; *y* was introduced from the Greek.

¹ Observe that the consonants are divided:

I. According to the ORGANS chiefly employed in their production, into

1. Gutturals — *throat letters*, also called Palatals.

2. Dentals — *teeth letters*, also called Linguals.

3. Labials — *lip letters*.

II. According to the MANNER in which they are uttered, into

1. Sonants, or *voiced letters*.

2. Surds, or *voiceless letters*.

² The distinction between a *sonant* and a *surd* will be appreciated by observing the difference between the sonant *b* and its corresponding surd *p* in such words as *bad*, *pad*. *B* is vocalized, *p* is not.

³ With the sound of *n* in *concord*, *linger*. It occurs before gutturals. *congruenter*, suitably.

a,	o,	u,	e,	i ¹
Thus a is changed to o . . . u . . . e . . . i				
o to u . . . e . . . i.				
u to e . . . i.				
e to i. ²				

Carmen,³ *carmenis*, *carminis*, a song, of a song; *faciō*, *cōn-faciō*, *cōn-ficiō*, I make, I accomplish; *factus*, *in-factus*, *in-fectus*, made, not made; *teneō*, *con-teneō*, *con-tineō*, I hold, I contain; *tuba*, *tuba-cen*, *tubi-cen*, a flute, a flute-player.

30. A Guttural — **c, g, q, (qu)** or **h**, — before **s** generally unites with it and forms **x**:

Ducs, *dux*, leader; *pācs*, *pāx*, peace; *rēgs*, *rēcs*, *rēx*, king; *lēgs*, *lēcs*, *lēx*, law; *coqusī*, *cocsi*, *coxi*, I have cooked; *trahsi*, *tracsi*, *traxi*, I have drawn.

31. **S** is generally changed to **r** when it stands between two vowels:

Flōsēs, *flōrēs*, flowers; *jūsa*, *jūra*, rights; *mēnsāsum*, *mēnsārum*, of tables; *agrōsum*, *agrōrum*, of fields; *esam*, *eram*, I was; *esāmus*, *erāmus*, we were.

33. PARTIAL ASSIMILATION. — A consonant is often partially⁴ assimilated by a following consonant. Thus before the surd **s** or **t**, a sonant **b** or **g** is generally changed to its corresponding surd, **p** or **c**:

Scribsī, *scripsī*, I have written; *scribtus*, *scriptus*, written; *rēgsī*, *rēcsī*, *rēxī* (30), I have ruled; *rēgtus*, *rēctus*, ruled.

¹ The change from *a* through *o* to *u* is usually arrested at *ɶ*, while *a* is often changed directly through *e* to *i* without passing through *o* or *u*. Thus the open *a* is changed either to the close *u* through the medial *o*, as seen on the right side of the following vowel-triangle, or to the close *i* through the medial *e*, as seen on the left side:

Open vowel	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	a
Medial vowels	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	e o
Close vowels	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	i u

² But *u*, *e*, and *i* differ so slightly in strength that they appear at times to be simply interchanged.

³ Here *e* in *carmen* becomes *i* in *carminis*, *a* in *faciō* becomes *i* in *cōn-ficiō*, etc.

⁴ That is, it is adapted or accommodated to it, but does not become the same letter.

PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.¹I. *Roman Method of Pronunciation.*²

5. VOWELS. — The vowel sounds are the following: —

LONG.			SHORT.		
ā	like ā in father:	ā'-rīs. ³	a	like a in Cuba: ⁵	a'-met.
ē	" e " prey; ⁴	ē'-dī.	e	" e " net:	re'-get.
ī	" i " machine: ⁴	ī'-rī.	i	" i " cigar:	vī'-det.
ō	" o " old:	ō'-rūs.	o	" o " obey:	mo'-net.
ū	" u " rule: ⁴	ū'-nō.	u	" u " full:	su'-mus.

1. A short vowel in a long syllable is pronounced short: *sunt*,⁶ *u* as in *sum*, *su'-mus*. But see 16, note 2.

3. *I* preceded by an accented *a*, *e*, *o*, or *y*, and followed by another vowel, is a semivowel with the sound of *y* in *yet* (7): *A-chā'-ia* (*A-kā'-yā*).

4. *U* in *qu*, and generally in *gu* and *su* before a vowel, has the sound of *u*: *qui* (*kwē*), *lin'-gua* (*lin'-gwā*), *suā'-sit* (*swā'-sit*).

¹ In this country three distinct methods are recognized in the pronunciation of Latin. They are generally known as the *Roman*, the *English*, and the *Continental Methods*. Recent researches have revealed laws of phonetic change of great value in tracing the history of Latin words. Accordingly, whatever method of pronunciation may be adopted for actual use in the class-room, the pupil should sooner or later be made familiar with the leading features of the Roman Method, which is at least an approximation to the ancient pronunciation of the language. The pupil will, of course, at present study only the method adopted in the school.

² Those who adopt the English Method will now turn to page 6; those who adopt the Continental Method to page 8. Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the Continent of Europe has its own method.

³ The Latin vowels marked with the macron " are long in quantity, i.e. in the duration of the sound (16); those not marked are short in quantity; see 16, note 3. Observe that the accent is also marked. For the laws of accentuation, see 17 and 18 in this introduction.

⁴ Or *ē* like *ā* in *made*, *ī* like *ē* in *me*, and *ū* like *oo* in *moon*.

⁵ The short vowels can be only imperfectly represented by English equivalents. In theory they have the same sounds as the corresponding long vowels, but occupy only half as much time in utterance.

⁶ Observe the difference between the length or quantity of the vowel and the length or quantity of the syllable. Here the vowel *u* is short, but the syllable *sunt* is long; see 16, I. In syllables long irrespective of the length

6. DIPHTHONGS. — In diphthongs each vowel retains its own sound :

ae (for *ai*) like the English **ay** (yes): *mēn'-sae*.¹

au like *ow* in *how*: *cau'-sa*.

oe (for *oi*) like *oi* in *coin*: *foe'-dus*.²

7. CONSONANTS. — Most of the consonants are pronounced nearly as in English, but the following require special notice:

c like *k* in *king*: *cē'-lēs* (kay-lace), *cī'-vī* (kē-wē).

g “ *g* “ *get*: *re'-gunt*, *re'-glis*, *ge'-nus*.

j “ *y* “ *yet*: *jū'-stum* (yoo-stum), *ja'-cet*.

s “ *s* “ *son*: *sa'-cer*, *so'-ror*, *A'-si-a*.

t “ *t* “ *time*: *tī'-mor*, *tō'-tus*, *ūc'-ti-ō*.

v “ *w* “ *we*: *va'-dum*, *vī'-cī*, *vī'-ti-um*.³

8. SYLLABLES. — In dividing words into syllables,

1. Make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mō'-re*, *per-suā'-dē*, *mēn'-sae*.

2. Join to each vowel as many of the consonants which precede it — one or more — as can be conveniently pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable: ⁴ *pa'-ter*, *pa'-trēs*, *ge'-ne-rī*, *dō'-mi-nus*, *men'-sa*, *bel'-l-um*. But —

3. Compound words must be separated into their component parts, if the first of these parts ends in a consonant: *ab'-es*, *ob-ī'-re*.⁵

of the vowels contained in them, it is often difficult and sometimes absolutely impossible to determine the *natural quantity* of the vowels; but it is thought advisable to treat vowels as short in all situations where there are not good reasons for believing them to be long.

¹ Combining the sounds of *a* and *i*.

² *Ei* as in *veil*, *eu* with the sounds of *e* and *u* combined, and *oi* = *oe*, occur in a few words: *dein*, *neu'-ter*, *proin*.

³ There is some uncertainty in regard to the sound of *v*. Corssen gives it at the beginning of a word the sound of the English *v*.

⁴ By some grammarians any combination of consonants which can begin either a Latin or a Greek word is always joined to the following vowel, as *o'-mnis*, *i'-pse*. Others, on the contrary, think that the Romans pronounced with each vowel as many of the following consonants as could be readily combined with it.

⁵ Those who adopt the *Roman Pronunciation*, omitting the *English* and the *Continental Method*, will now turn to LESSON I., page 15.

II. *English Method of Pronunciation.*

9. **VOWELS.** — Vowels generally have their long or short English sounds.

10. **LONG SOUNDS.** — Vowels have their long English sounds — **a** as in *fate*, **e** in *mete*, **i** in *pine*, **o** in *note*, **u** in *tube*, **y** in *type* — in the following situations: —

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel: —

Se, si, ser'-vi, ser'-vo, cor'-nu, mi'-sy.

2. In all syllables, before a vowel or diphthong: —

*De'-us, de-o'-rum, de'-ae, di-e'-i, ni'-hi-lum.*¹

3. In penultimate² syllables before a single consonant, or before a mute followed by a liquid: —

Pa'-ter, pa'-tres, ho-no'-ris, A'-thos, O'-thrys.

4. In unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or before a mute followed by a liquid: —

Do-lo'-ris, cor'-po-ri, con'-su-lis, a-gric'-o-la.

1. **A** unaccented, except before consonants in final syllables (11, 1), has the sound of *a* final in *America*: *men'-sa, a-cu'-tus, a-ma'-mus.*³

2. **I** and **y** unaccented, in any syllable except the first and last, generally have the short sound: *nob'-i-lis* (*nob'-e-lis*), *Am'-y-cus* (*Am'-e-cus*).

3. **I** preceded by an accented *a, e, o,* or *y,* and followed by another vowel, is a semivowel with the sound of *y* in *yet*: *A-cha'-ia* (*A-ka'-ya*), *Pom-pe'-ius* (*Pom-pe'-yus*), *La-to'-ia* (*La-to'-ya*), *Har-py'-ia* (*Har-py'-ya*).

4. **U** in *qu*, and generally in *gu* and *su* before a vowel, has the sound of *w*: *qui* (*kwi*), *qua*; *lin'-gua* (*lin'-gwa*); *sua'-de-o* (*swa'-de-o*).

11. **SHORT SOUNDS.** — Vowels have their short English sounds — **a** as in *fat*, **e** in *met*, **i** in *pin*, **o** in *not*, **u** in *tub*, **y** in *myth* — in the following situations: —

¹ In these rules no account is taken of the aspirate *h*: hence the first *i* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel; for the same reason, *ch, ph,* and *th* are treated as single mutes; thus *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

² Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

³ Some give the same sound to *a* final in monosyllables: *da, qua*: while others give it the *long* sound, according to 10, 1.

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant : —

A'-mat, a'-met, rex'-it, sol, con'-sul, Te'-thys ; except *post, es final*, and *os final* in plural cases: *res, di'-es, hos, a'-gros*.

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants except a mute followed by a liquid (10, 3 and 4) : —

Rex'-it, bel'-lum, rex-e'-runt, bel-lo'-rum.

3. In all accented syllables, not penultimate, before one or more consonants : —

Dom'-i-nus, pat'-ri-bus. But —

1) **A, e, or o** before a single consonant (or a mute and a liquid), followed by *e, i, or y* before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es, a'-cri-a, me'-re-o, do'-ce-o*.

2) **U**, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant or a mute and a liquid, except *bl*, has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus, sa-lu'-bri-tas*.

12. DIPHTHONGS. — Diphthongs are pronounced as follows:

Ae like *e* : *Cae'-sar, Daed'-a-lus*.¹ | **Au** as in author: *au'-rum*.

Oe like *e* : *Oe'-ta, Oed'-i-pus*.¹ | **Eu**² as in neuter: *neu'-ter*.

13. CONSONANTS. — The consonants are pronounced in general as in English. Thus : —

I. **C** and **G** are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e, i, y, ae*, and *oe*, and *hard* in other situations³: *ce'-do* (*se'-do*), *ci'-vis, Cy'-rus, cae'-do, coe'-pi, a'-ge* (*a'-je*), *a'-gi*; *ca'-do* (*ka'-do*), *co'-go, cum, Ga'-des*.

II. **S, T, and X** are generally pronounced as in the English words *son, time, expect*: *sa'-cer, ti'-mor, rex'-i* (*rek'-si*). But —

1. **S, T, and X** are aspirated before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel, — *s* and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, and *x* that of *ksh*: *Al'-si-um* (*Al'-she-um*), *ar'-ti-um* (*ar'-she-um*), *anx'-i-us* (*ank'-she-us*).

¹ The diphthong has the *long sound* in *Cae'-sar* and *Oe'-ta*, according to 10, 3, but the *short sound* in *Daed'-a-lus* (*Ded'-a-lus*) and *Oed'-i-pus* (*Ed'-i-pus*), according to 11, 3, as *e* would be thus pronounced in the same situations.

² *Ei* and *oi* are seldom diphthongs, but when so used they are pronounced as in *height, coin*: *hei, proin*. *Ui*, as a diphthong, with the long sound of *i*, occurs in *cut, hui, hui*.

³ *C* has the sound of *sh* —

1. Before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel: *so'-ci-us* (*so'-she-us*);

2. Before *eu* and *yo* preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (*ca-du'-she-us*), *Stc'-y-on* (*Slsh'-y-on*)

2. *S* is pronounced like *z* —

1) At the end of a word, after *e*, *ae*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, *r*: *spes*, *præes*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hi'-ems*, *mons*, *pars*;

2) In a few words after the analogy of the corresponding English words: *Cæ'-sar*, *Caesar*; *cau'-sa*, *cause*; *mu'-sa*, *muse*; *mi'-ser*, *miser*, *miserable*, etc.

3. *X* at the beginning of a word has the sound of *z*: *Xan'-thus*.

14. SYLLABLES. — In dividing words into syllables —

1. Make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mo'-re*, *per-sua'-de*, *men'-sae*.

2. Distribute the consonants so as to give the proper sound to each vowel and diphthong, as determined by previous rules (10–12): *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *a-gro'-rum*, *au-di'-vi*, *gen'-e-ri*, *dom'-i-nus*.

III. Continental Method of Pronunciation.

5. VOWELS. — The vowel sounds are the following: —

LONG.			SHORT.		
ā	like	ä in father:	ā'-ris. ¹	a	like a in Cuba: ³
ē	“	e “ prey: ²	ē'-dī.	e	“ e “ net:
ī	“	ī “ machine: ²	ī'-rī.	i	“ i “ cigar:
ō	“	ō “ old:	ō'-rās.	o	“ o “ obey:
ū	“	u “ rule: ²	ū'-nō.	u	“ u “ full:
					<i>a'-met.</i>
					<i>re'-get.</i>
					<i>vi'-det.</i>
					<i>mo'-net.</i>
					<i>su'-mus.</i>

1. A short vowel in a long syllable is pronounced short: *sunt*,⁴ *u* as in *sum*, *su'-mus*. But see 16, note 2.

6. DIPHTHONGS. — In diphthongs each vowel retains its own sound: —

ae (for *ai*) like the English **ay** (yes): *mēn'-sae*.⁵

au like *ow* in **how**: *cau'-sa*.

oe (for *oi*) like *oi* in **coin**: *foe'-dus*.⁶

¹ The Latin vowels marked with the macron “ are long in quantity, i.e. in the duration of the sound (16); those not marked are short in quantity; see 16, note 3.

² Or *ē* like *ā* in *made*, *ī* like *ē* in *me*, and *ū* like *oo* in *moon*.

³ The sounds of the vowels and diphthongs are the same as in the Roman method; see pages 4 and 5.

⁴ See foot-note 6, page 4.

⁵ See foot-note 1, page 5.

⁶ See foot-note 2, page 3.

13. CONSONANTS. — The consonants are pronounced in general as in English ; see 13, I., II. 1, 2, page 7.

14. SYLLABLES. — In dividing words into syllables make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mō'-re*, *per-suā'-dē*, *mēn'-sae*.¹

QUANTITY.

16. Syllables are in quantity or length either long, short, or common.²

I. LONG. — A syllable is long in quantity —

1. If it contains a diphthong or a long vowel: *haec*, *rēs*.³

2. If its vowel is followed by *x* or *z* or any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid:⁴ *dux*, *rēx*, *sunt*.⁵

II. SHORT. — A syllable is short, if its vowel is followed by another vowel, by a diphthong, or by the aspirate *h*: *di-ēs*, *vi-ae*, *nī'-hil*.⁶

¹ Join to each vowel as many of the consonants which precede it — one or more — as can be conveniently pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-trēs*, *ge'-ne-rī*, *do'-mi-nus*, *mēn'-sa*, *bel'-lum*. But compound words must be separated into their component parts, if the first of these parts ends in a consonant: *ab'-es*, *ob-i'-re*.

² Common, *i.e.* sometimes long and sometimes short.

³ See note 3, below.

⁴ That is, in the order here given, with the mute before the liquid; if the liquid precedes, the syllable is long.

⁵ Observe that the vowel in such syllables may be either long or short. Thus it is long in *rēx*, but short in *dux* and *sunt*.

⁶ By referring to pages 4 and 8, it will be seen, that, in the Roman Method and in the Continental, *quantity* and *sound* coincide with each other: a vowel long in quantity is long in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is short in sound. But, by referring to 10 and 11, it will be seen, that, in the English Method, the quantity of a vowel does not at all affect its sound, except in determining the accent (18). Hence, in this method, a vowel long in quantity is often short in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is often long in sound. Thus in *rēx* and *sūt*, the vowels are long in quantity; but by 11, 1, they have the short English sounds: while in *ave*, *mare*, the vowels are all short in quantity; but by 10, 1 and 3, they all have the long English sounds. Hence, in pronouncing according to the English Method, determine the place of the accent by the quantity, according to

III. COMMON. — A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally¹ short, is followed by a mute and a liquid: *a-grī*.

NOTE 1. — Vowels are also in quantity either long, short, or common; but the quantity of the vowel does not always coincide with the quantity of the syllable.²

NOTE 2. — Vowels are long before *ns*, *nf*, *gn*, and *gm*; *cōn'-sul*, *īn-fē'-līx*, *rēg'-num*, *āgmen*.

NOTE 3. — The signs [˘], ^ˉ are used to mark the quantity of vowels, the first denoting that the vowel over which it is placed is *long*, the second that it is *common*, i.e. sometimes long and sometimes short: *a-mā'-bō*. All vowels not marked are to be treated as short.³

ACCENTUATION.

17. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first: *mēn'-sa*.

18. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the *Penult*,⁴ if that is long in quantity;⁵ otherwise on the *Antepenult*:⁴ *ho-nō'-ris*, *cōn'-su-lis*.⁶

3. A secondary or subordinate accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent — on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity, otherwise on the third: *mo'-nu-ē'-runt*, *mo'-nu-e-rā'-mus*,⁷ *in-stau'-rā-vē'runt*.

18, and then determine the sounds of the letters irrespective of quantity, according to 10-13.

¹ A vowel is said to be *naturally* short, when it is short in its own nature; i.e. in itself, without reference to its position.

² Thus in long syllables the vowels may be either long or short, as in *rēx*, *dux*, *sunt* (see foot-note 6, p. 4). But in short syllables the vowels are also short.

³ See p. 4, foot-note 6. In many works short vowels are marked with the sign [˘]: *rējīs*.

⁴ The penult is the last syllable but one; the antepenult, the last but two.

⁵ Thus the quantity of the *syllable*, not of the *vowel*, determines the place of the accent: *regen'-tis*, accented on the penult, because that *syllable* is *long*, though its *vowel* is *short*: see 16, I., 2.

⁶ In the subsequent pages, the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules.

⁷ In the English Method divide thus: *mon'-u-e'-runt*, *mon-u-e-ra'-mus*.

SENTENCES. — VERBS.

346. A sentence is a combination of words expressing either a single thought or two or more thoughts.

347. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses a single thought:

Deus mundum aedificavit, God made (built) the world. Cic.

348. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses one leading thought with one or more dependent thoughts:

Dōnec eris fēlix, multōs numerābis amīcōs, so long as you shall be prosperous, you will number many friends.¹ Ovid.

349. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts:

Sōl ruit et montēs umbrantur, the sun hastens to its setting and the mountains are shaded. Verg.

356. The SIMPLE SENTENCE in its MOST SIMPLE FORM consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:—

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks;

2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject:

Cluilius moritur, Cluilius dies.² Liv.

NOTE. — In Latin, both subject and predicate may be contained or implied in a single word, if that word is a verb:

Amās,³ thou lovest. Amat,³ he loves.

357. The SIMPLE SENTENCE in its MOST EXPANDED FORM consists of these same parts with their various modifiers:

¹ In this example two simple sentences — (1) '*you will be prosperous*,' and (2) '*you will number many friends*' — are so united that the first only specifies the *time* of the second: *You will number many friends so long as you shall be prosperous*. The part of the complex sentence which makes complete sense of itself — *multōs numerābis amīcōs* — is called the *Principal* or *Independent Clause*; and the part which is dependent upon it — *dōnec eris fēlix* — is called the *Subordinate* or *Dependent Clause*.

² Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *moritur* the predicate.

³ The ending *s* shows that the subject is of the *second person singular*, THOU, while *t* shows that it is of the *third person singular*, HE.

In his castris Cluilius, Albānus rēx, moritur, *Cluilius, the Alba king, dies in this camp.*¹ Liv.

192. Verbs in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormit*, he is sleeping; *legit*, he reads.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes: —

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS admit a direct object of the action: *servum verberat*, he beats the slave.²

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS do not admit such an object: *puer currit*, the boy runs.²

194. Verbs have *Voice, Mood, Tense, Number and Person*.

195. There are two voices:

I. The ACTIVE VOICE³ represents the subject as ACTING or EXISTING: *pater filiū amat*, the father loves his son; *est*, he is.

II. The PASSIVE VOICE represents the subject as ACTED UPON by some other person or thing: *filius ā patre amātur*, the son is loved by his father.

196. There are three moods: ⁴ —

I. The INDICATIVE MOOD either asserts something as a *fact* or inquires after the *fact*:

Legit, HE IS READING. *Legitne*, IS HE READING? *Servius rēgnāvit*, *Servius* REIGNED. *Quis ego sum*, who AM I?

¹ Here *Cluilius, Albānus rēx*, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form: in *his castris moritur*, the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

² Here *servum*, 'the slave,' is the object of the action; *beats* (what?) *the slave*. The object thus *completes* the meaning of the verb. *He beats* is incomplete in sense, but *the boy runs* is complete, and accordingly does not admit an object.

³ *Voice* shows whether the subject *acts* (Active Voice), or is *acted upon* (Passive Voice). Thus, with the Active Voice, 'the father loves his son' the subject, *father*, is the one who *performs the action, loves*, while with the Passive Voice, 'the son is loved by the father,' the subject, *son*, merely *receives the action, is acted upon, is loved*.

⁴ *Mood*, or *Mode*, means *manner*, and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several moods.

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD expresses not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception*.

Amemus patriam, LET US LOVE our country. *Sint beati*, MAY THEY BE happy. *Quaerat quispiam*, some one MAY INQUIRE.

III. The IMPERATIVE MOOD expresses a *command* or an *entreaty* :

Jūstitiam cole, PRACTISE justice. *Tū nē cēde malis*, DO not YIELD to misfortunes.

197. There are six tenses :¹

I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION : —

1. Present : *amō*, I love, I am loving.
2. Imperfect : *amābam*, I was loving, I loved.
3. Future : *amābō*, I shall love, I will love.

II. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION :

1. Perfect : *amāvī*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect : *amāveram*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect : *amāverō*, I shall have loved.

198. Tenses are also distinguished as —

I. PRINCIPAL OR PRIMARY TENSES :

1. Present : *amō*, I love.
2. Present Perfect : *amāvī*, I have loved.
3. Future : *amābō*, I shall love.
4. Future Perfect : *amāverō*, I shall have loved.

II. HISTORICAL OR SECONDARY TENSES :

1. Imperfect : *amābam*, I was loving.
2. Historical Perfect : *amāvī*, I loved.
3. Pluperfect : *amāveram*, I had loved.

199. In *Verbs*, as in *Nouns* (44), there are two numbers, SINGULAR and PLURAL, and three persons, FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD.

NOTE. — The various verbal forms which have voice, mood, tense number, and person, make up the *finite verb*.

¹ *Tense* means *time* The tense of a verb shows the *time* of the action.

200. Among verbal forms are included the following verbal nouns and adjectives:

I. The INFINITIVE is a verbal noun. It is sometimes best translated by the English *Infinitive*, sometimes by the *verbal noun in ING*, and sometimes by the *Indicative*:

Exire ex urbe volō, I wish TO GO out of the city. *Gestiō scīre omnia, I long TO KNOW all things.* *Haec scīre juvat, TO KNOW these things affords pleasure.*

II. The GERUND gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension,¹ used only in the *genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English verbal noun in *ING*:

Amandī, OF LOVING. *Amandī causā, for the sake OF LOVING.* *Ars vivendī, the art OF LIVING.* *Ad discendum prōpēnsus, inclined TO LEARN, OF TO LEARNING.*

III. The SUPINE gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension.² It has a form in **um** and a form in **ū**:

Amātum, TO LOVE, FOR LOVING. *Amātū, TO BE LOVED, FOR LOVING, IN LOVING.* *Auxilium postulātum vēnit, he came TO ASK aid.* *Difficile dictū est, it is difficult TO TELL.*

IV. The PARTICIPLE in Latin, as in English, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective. It is sometimes best translated by the English *Participle* or *Infinitive*, and sometimes by a *Clause*:

Amāns, LOVING. *Amātūrus, ABOUT TO LOVE.* *Amātus, LOVED.* *Amandus, DESERVING TO BE LOVED.* *Platō scribēns mortuus est, Plato died WHILE WRITING, OF WHILE HE WAS WRITING.*

NOTE. — A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and the Future, *amāns, amātūrus*; and two in the Passive, the Perfect and the Gerundive, *amātus, amandus*.

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations.

¹ See 32, 51

² See 92, 116.

LESSONS AND EXERCISES.

LESSON I.

PARTS OF SPEECH.—NOUNS.

1. *Lesson from the Grammar.*¹

38. IN Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*, viz.: *Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions*, and *Interjections*.²

NOUNS.

39. A Noun or Substantive is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cicerō*, Cicero; *Rōma*, Rome; *domus*, house.

1. A PROPER NOUN is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cicerō*; *Rōma*.

2. A COMMON NOUN is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vir*, man; *equus*, horse.

40. Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case*.

¹ The lessons are from the author's Latin Grammar, and the numerals at the side of the page, 38, 39, etc., designate articles in that work. It is advised that the Introduction be used mainly for reference, but that such parts of it be learned from time to time as the interests of the class may require. For pronunciation the pupil must at first depend upon his teacher, but he will soon be able to profit by the rules contained in the Introduction.

² In general, the use of the Parts of Speech is the same in Latin as in English.

I. GENDER.

41. There are three genders:¹ *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

NOTE.—In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

42. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

I. Masculines:—

1. Names of *Males*; *Cicerō*; *vīr*, man; *rēx*, king.
2. Names of *Rivers*, *Winds*, and *Months*: *Rhēnus*, Rhine; *Notus*, south wind; *Mārtius*, March.

II. Feminines:—

1. Names of *Females*: *mulier*, woman; *leaena*, lioness.
2. Names of *Countries*, *Towns*, *Islands*, and *Trees*: *Graecia*, Greece; *Rōma*, Rome; *Dēlos*, Delos; *pirus*, pear-tree.

II. PERSON AND NUMBER.

44. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one; the plural, more than one.

2. *In this exercise give the GENDER and NUMBER of each noun, and tell whether it is COMMON or PROPER.*

1. Caesar (*Caesar*), Alexander (*Alexander*), Graecia (*Greece*).
2. Mātrēs (*mothers*), māter (*a mother*), Hispānia (*Spain*).
3. Pater (*a father*), patrēs (*fathers*), Rhēnus (*the river Rhine*).
4. Puer (*a boy*), puerī (*boys*), puella (*a girl*), puellae (*girls*).
5. Sicilia (*Sicily*), Sparta (*the city Sparta*), miles (*a soldier*), milītēs (*soldiers*).

¹ In English, *gender* denotes *sex*. Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males*; feminine nouns, *females*; and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female*. In Latin, however, this natural distinction of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females*; while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction, according to grammatical rules.

LESSON II.

NOUNS.—CASES.

3. *Lessons from the Grammar.*

45. The Latin has six cases: ¹—

NAMES.	ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with <i>of</i> .
Dative,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with <i>from</i> , <i>with</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>in</i> .

Thus in general the English cases are represented in Latin as follows:

1. The *Nominative*, by the *Nominative* in Latin:

THE QUEEN is praised. *Rēgina laudātur.*²

2. The *Possessive* and the *Objective* with *of*, by the *Genitive* in Latin:

THE QUEEN'S daughter is praised. *Filia rēginæ laudātur.*³

THE daughter OF THE QUEEN is praised. *Filia rēginæ laudātur.*

3. The *Objective* with *to* or *for*, by the *Dative* in Latin; the *Objective* without a preposition, by the *Accusative*:

They give a BOOK TO THE QUEEN. *Rēginæ librum dōnant.*⁴

¹ The *case* of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words: as, *John's book*. Here the *possessive case* shows that John sustains to the book the relation of *possessor*.

² Observe that the English words to be illustrated are printed in SMALL CAPITALS and the corresponding Latin in *Italics*. QUEEN is in the *Nominative*, and is the subject of the verb *is praised*, and *rēgina*, the corresponding word in the Latin, is also in the *Nominative* and is the subject of the Latin verb *laudātur*. The Latin has no article; accordingly *rēgina* may mean a queen, the queen, or simply queen.

³ Here *daughter*, the subject of the English sentence, and *filia*, the subject of the Latin sentence, are both in the *Nominative*, but the *possessive queen's*, or its equivalent, *of the queen*, becomes in the Latin *rēginæ*, the *Genitive* of *rēgina*.

⁴ *Book*, the object of *give*, is in the *Objective* case, and the correspond-

4. The *Nominative Independent* in an address, by the *Vocative* in Latin :

They praise you, O QUEEN. *Tē, rēgina, laudant.*¹

5. The *Objective* with *from, with, by, in, by the Ablative* in Latin :

They are fortifying the city WITH A WALL. *Urbein vallō mūniunt.*²

They are walking IN THE GARDEN. *In hortō ambulānt.*

NOTE 1. The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative are called the *Oblique Cases*.

NOTE 2. The Latin has also a few remnants of another case, called the *Locative*, denoting the place in which.

4. In this exercise give the GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE of each Noun, and tell whether it is COMMON or PROPER.

1. *Rēx* (the king) *laudātur* (is praised). 2. *Filius* (the son) *rēgis* (of the king) *laudātur* (is praised). 3. *Filiī* (the sons) *rēgis* (of the king) *laudantur* (are praised). 4. *Filiī* (the sons) *rēgum* (of kings) *laudantur* (are praised). 5. *Rēx* (the king) *filiam* (his³ daughter) *amat* (loves). 6. *Rēx* (the king) *filiās* (his daughters) *amat* (loves). 7. *Caesar* (Caesar) *militēs* (the soldiers) *laudat* (praises). 8. *Militēs* (the soldiers) *laudantur* (are praised).

ing Latin, *librum*, the object of the Latin verb *dōnant*, is in the *Accusative*, but the words *to the queen* are rendered by *rēginae*, the *Dative* of *rēgina*. Observe the order of the words:

ENGLISH ORDER: They give a book to the queen.

LATIN ORDER: To the queen a book they give.

¹ *O queen* is rendered by the *Vocative* *rēgina*; and *you*, the object of praise, by the *Accusative* *tē*, the object of *laudant*. Here again observe the order of the words.

² *With a wall* is rendered by the *Ablative* *vallō*, but *in the garden* by the *Ablative* with *in*: *in hortō*. Observe the order of the words:

ENGLISH ORDER: They are fortifying the city with a wall.

LATIN ORDER: The city with a wall they are fortifying.

ENGLISH ORDER: They are walking in the garden.

LATIN ORDER: In the garden they are walking.

Observe that in all these examples the verb in Latin stands at the end of the sentence.

³ In Latin the possessive pronouns, meaning *his, her, their*, when not emphatic, are seldom expressed if they can be supplied from the context.

LESSON III.

SENTENCES.—VERBS.—CERTAIN FORMS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

5. Lesson from the Grammar.

356. Every SENTENCE consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:—

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks;
2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject:

*Cluilius moritur, Cluilius dies.*¹ Liv.

NOTE.—In Latin, both subject and predicate may be contained or implied in a single word, if that word is a verb:

*Amās,*² *thou lovest. Amat,*² *he loves.*

201. Regular verbs³ are conjugated in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations.

6. In Verbs of the FIRST CONJUGATION, the THIRD PERSON in the *singular* and *plural* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative mood* has the following—

ENDINGS.

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
<i>Singular, at,</i>	<i>ābat,</i>	<i>ābit.</i>
<i>Plural, ant,</i>	<i>ābant,</i>	<i>ābunt.</i>

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres. amat, he loves;</i> ⁴	<i>amant, they love.</i>
<i>Imp. amābat, he was loving;</i> ⁵	<i>amābant, they were loving.</i> ⁵
<i>Fut. amābit, he will love;</i>	<i>amābunt, they will love.</i> ⁶

¹ *Cluilius* is the subject, and *moritur* the predicate.

² The ending *s* shows that the subject is of the *second person singular*, THOU, while *t* shows that it is of the *third person singular*, HE.

³ For verbs, mood, tense, number, and person, see pages 12 and 13.

⁴ The subject of each of these verbs may be, in English, either *he*, *she*, or *it*: *amat, he loves, she loves, or it loves.* The suffix, *t*, shows the number and person of the subject, but not its gender.

⁵ Or, *he loved*; plural, *they loved.* See page 13, 197.

⁶ Each of these Latin forms, *amat, amant, etc.*, consists of two distinct elements—(1) the stem, which gives the general meaning of the verb;

7. In English, the *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons* of verbs are indicated by certain *words* or *signs*; as,

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
<i>He</i> loves,	<i>he was</i> loving,	<i>he will</i> love.
<i>They</i> love,	<i>they were</i> loving,	<i>they will</i> love.

In Latin, however, no such *signs* are used; but their place is supplied by the *endings* of the verb. Hence, in translating English into Latin, omit these signs, and express the *tense*, *number*, and *person* of the verb by the *proper endings*:

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
Eng.	<i>He</i> loves,	<i>he was</i> loving,	<i>he will</i> love,
Lat.	<i>Amat</i> ,	<i>amābat</i> ,	<i>amābit</i> .

LESSON IV.

CERTAIN FORMS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.— EXERCISES.

8. Vocabulary.¹

Ambulat,	<i>he walks, he is walking.</i> ²
Arat,	<i>he ploughs, he is ploughing.</i>
Dēliberat,	<i>he deliberates, he is deliberating.</i>
Equitat,	<i>he rides, he is riding.</i>
Lacrimat,	<i>he weeps, he is weeping.</i>
Nāvigat,	<i>he sails, he is sailing.</i>
Rēgnat,	<i>he reigns, he is reigning.</i>

and (2) the *suffix*, added to the *stem*, to designate *tense*, *number*, and *person*. Thus in

ama-t	ama-nt
amā-bat	amā-bant
amā-bit	amā-bunt

the stem is *amā*, and the suffixes are *t*, *nt*, *bat*, *bant*, *bit*, *bunt*; but as in some verbal forms the final vowel of the stem has become inseparably united with the suffix, it is impossible to keep the two elements of the word distinct. We accordingly give the *endings* produced by the union of this final vowel with the suffix, as above, *at*, *ant*, etc.

The *final vowel of the stem* is called the *stem characteristic*.

¹ It is recommended that the Vocabularies be so carefully and accurately learned that the pupil shall be able to give with promptness either the English for the Latin or the Latin for the English.

² Or, *she walks*, etc.

9. In this exercise, first pronounce the several sentences with care, then give the TENSE, NUMBER, and PERSON of each Verb, and finally translate the whole into English.

1. Rēgnat,¹ rēgnant. 2. Dēliberābat, dēliberābant. 3. Lacrimābit, lacrimābunt. 4. Ambulant, arant, equitant. 5. Equitat, equitābat, equitābit. 6. Nāvigat, nāvigābat, nāvigābunt. 7. Ambulat, ambulābunt, ambulābat. 8. Rēgnant, rēgnābit, rēgnābant. 9. Nāvigant, ambulābit, equitābant.

10. Translate into Latin.

1. He was reigning, they will reign, she will reign.² 2. They are walking, he will walk, they were walking. 3. She is weeping, they will weep, he was weeping. 4. They will ride, he will sail. 5. He is deliberating, they will deliberate. 6. He was ploughing, they will plough. 7. They were ploughing, he will plough. 8. They were sailing, they are deliberating.

¹ In preparing this exercise, notice carefully the endings of the words; even a Roman could not understand this Latin without attending to these endings. What, then, is the meaning of the endings *at, ant, in rēgnat, rēgnant*? They show that in the first the *subject*, or *agent*, of the action is in the third person singular, *he, she, or it*; and, in the second, in the third person plural, *they*. But these endings also show that the verbs are in the present tense. How does that fact help you to understand the meaning? It tells you that the action is now taking place: *He is reigning*.

Again, what is the meaning of *ābat, ābant, in dēliberābat, dēliberābant, and of ābit, ābunt, in lacrimābit, lacrimābunt*? What do these endings tell you about the *subjects* of these verbs? What about their *tense*? What about the *time of each action*? The endings *ābat* and *ābant* assure you that the action of the verb was taking place at some past time; *ābit* and *ābunt* that it will be taking place or will take place at some future time.

In these exercises you may use at pleasure either *he* or *she* as subject, if the sense permits: *he reigns, he is reigning, or she reigns, she is reigning*. You should, however, accustom yourself to think of all the possible meanings of a Latin word, or of a Latin sentence, before you attempt to translate it. This habit, if early formed, will be of great value to you in your subsequent work.

² Observe that the English pronouns, *he, she, it, they*, are not to be rendered by separate Latin words, as the Latin verb contains a pronominal subject in itself. Hence, 'he reigns,' *rēgnat*; 'they reign,' *rēgnant*.

LESSON V.

NOUNS.—CASES.—FIRST DECLENSION.

11. Lesson from the Grammar.

46. DECLENSIONS.—The process by which the several cases of a word are formed is called Declension. It consists in the addition of certain suffixes to one common base called the stem.¹ In Latin there are five declensions.

FIRST DECLENSION.—A NOUNS.

48. Nouns of the first declension end in
a and ē—*feminine*; ās and ēs—*masculine*.²

Nouns in a are declined as follows:

EXAMPLE	SINGULAR.	MEANING.	CASE-ENDING. ⁴
Nom. mēnsa,		a table, ³	a
Gen. mēnsae,		of a table,	ae
Dat. mēnsae,		to, for a table,	ae
Acc. mēnsam,		a table,	am
Voc. mēnsa,		O table,	a
Abl. mēnsā,		from, with, by a table,	ā
	PLURAL.		
Nom. mēnsae,		tables,	ae
Gen. mēnsārum,		of tables,	ārum
Dat. mēnsis,		to, for tables,	is
Acc. mēnsās,		tables,	ās
Voc. mēnsae,		O tables,	ae
Abl. mēnsis,		from, with, by tables.	is

¹ Thus each case-form contains the *stem*, which gives the general meaning of the word, and the *case-suffix*, which shows its relation to some other word. In *rēg-is*, 'of a king,' the general idea, *king*, is denoted by the stem, *rēg*; the relation of, by the suffix *is*. When the stem ends in a vowel, the *case-suffix* is seen only in combination with that vowel. The ending thus produced is called a *case-ending*, and the final vowel of the stem is called the *stem characteristic* or simply the *characteristic*.

² That is, nouns of this declension in a and ē are feminine, and those in ās and ēs are masculine, unless their gender is determined by their *signification* according to the General Rules: see page 16, 42.

³ *Mēnsa* may be translated a table, table, or the table.

⁴ These *case-endings* should be carefully studied and compared, as

1. Stem. — In nouns of the first declension, the stem ends in *ā*.¹
2. In the PARADIGM, observe that the stem is *mēnsā*,¹ and that the several cases are distinguished by their case-endings.²
3. Examples for Practice. — Like *mēnsa* decline :—
Ala, wing; *aqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortūna*, fortune.
4. Locative. — Names of towns and a very few other words have a Locative Singular in *ae*, denoting the *place in which* (p. 18, note 2): *Rōmae*, at Rome; *militiae*, in war.

LESSON VI.

NOUNS.—FIRST DECLENSION.—NOMINATIVE CASE.—
RULES III. AND XXXVI.12. *Examine carefully the following examples.*

1. Rēgnat,	<i>He, she, or it reigns.</i> ³
2. Numa rēgnat,	<i>Numa reigns.</i> ⁴
3. Rēgnat,	<i>He reigns.</i>
4. Victōria rēgnat,	<i>Victoria reigns.</i>
5. Rēgnat,	<i>She reigns.</i>
6. Rēgīnae rēgnant,	<i>Queens reign.</i>
7. Rēgnant,	<i>They reign.</i> ⁴

they will serve as a practical guide to the learner in distinguishing the different cases and in ascertaining the meaning of words.

¹ Remember that the final vowel of the *stem* forms a part of the *case-ending*. See page 22, foot-note, 1.

² Observe also (1) that the *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike, (2) that the *Dative* and *Ablative* plural are alike, and (3) that the *Genitive* and *Dative* singular and the *Nominative* and *Vocative* plural are all alike.

³ This is the full meaning of *rēgnat* when there is nothing in the context to restrict it, but take notice that in the third example it is rendered *he reigns*, because we make it refer to *Numa*, the king, while in the fifth example it is rendered *she reigns*, because we make it refer to *Victōria*.

⁴ Observe (1) that *rēgnant*, 'they reign,' differs from *rēgnat*, 'he, she, or it reigns,' only in having *nt*, meaning *they*, as its ending, while *rēgnat* has simply *t*, meaning *he, she, it*; and (2) that, though the forms of the verb thus contain a pronoun, yet a substantive may at any time be introduced as subject, and that then the pronoun is not translated. Thus *rēgnat*, 'he, she, or it reigns,' but *Numa rēgnat*, 'Numa reigns' (not 'Numa he reigns'), *Victōria rēgnat*, 'Victoria reigns,' *rēgnant*, 'they reign,' but *rēgīnae rēgnant*, 'queens reign.'

NOTE 1. — Observe (1) that in the first, third, fifth, and seventh examples the subjects are pronouns implied in the endings *at*, *ant*, or, more strictly, *t*, *nt*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*, and (2) that in the second example the subject is *Numa*, in the fourth *Victōria*, and in the sixth *rēginae*, and that these three subjects are all in the Nominative case. This is in accordance with general Latin usage,¹ expressed in the following

RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

368. The subject of a finite verb² is put in the Nominative.

NOTE 2. — Observe that in the examples at the head of this lesson the verb is in the singular if the subject is singular, and in the plural if the subject is plural. Thus, in the second example, the singular verb, *rēgnat*, is used, because the subject, *Numa*, is singular, while in the sixth example the plural verb, *rēgnant*, is used, because the subject, *rēginae*, is plural. Observe also that these verbs are in the third person, because their subjects, *Numa* and *rēginae*, are in the third person.³ This is in accordance with general Latin usage, expressed in the following

RULE XXXVI.—Agreement of Verb with Subject.

460. A finite verb agrees with its subject in NUMBER and PERSON.

13. Vocabulary.

Agricola, ae, ⁴ m. ⁵	husbandman. ⁶
Incola, ae, m. or f.	inhabitant.

¹ English usage is the same.

² That is, Latin writers always put a noun or pronoun in the Nominative case when they wish to use it as the subject of a finite verb, i.e. of any part of the verb except the Infinitive. This Rule is a simple statement of that fact.

³ See page 13, 199. If the subject was a pronoun of the *first* or of the *second* person, the verb would be in the *first* or the *second* person; as we shall see when we take up those parts of the verb.

⁴ The ending *ae* is the case-ending of the Genitive: *agricola*; Genitive, *agricolae*.

⁵ Gender is indicated in the vocabularies by *m* for *masculine*, *f.* for *feminine*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

⁶ In learning Latin it is not enough to find English equivalents for Latin words, the pupil must early learn to see the meaning in the Latin itself, without even thinking of the English. The Latin nouns in this

Nauta, ae, m.	sailor, seaman.
Poëta, ae, m.	poet.
Puella, ae, f.	girl, maiden.
Pūgnat,	he is fighting.
Rēgina, ae, f.	queen.
Victōria, ae, f.	Victoria, queen of England.

14. Give the GENDER, NUMBER, PERSON, and CASE of each Noun, and the TENSE, NUMBER, and PERSON of each Verb, and translate the whole into English.

1. Puella¹ lacrimat. 2. Puellae¹ lacrimant. 3. Agricola arābat. 4. Agricolae arābant. 5. Poëta equitābit. 6. Puellae ambulābunt. 7. Victōria rēgnat. 8. Rēgnābit.² 9. Rēgnābat. 10. Victōria dēliberat. 11. Incolae dēliberant. 12. Nauta nāvigābat. 13. Nautae navigābunt. 14. Incolae dēliberābunt. 15. Nautae pūgnābant. 16. Nautae nāvigant. 17. Poëtae nāvigābunt.

15. Translate into Latin.

1. Victoria was reigning. 2. She is reigning. 3. The³ inhabitants were deliberating. 4. They will deliberate. 5. The² girls are riding. 6. They will ride. 7. The sailors were walking. 8. They are walking. 9. The poet was sailing. 10. He will walk. 11. The husbandman is ploughing. 12. Husbandmen plough. 13. The poets are deliberating. 14. The queen will reign. 15. Queens reign.

vocabulary, for instance, must represent to him not *words*, but *living persons*. *Agricola* should suggest to him, not the English word *husbandman*, but the *husbandman himself*, not the *name*, but the *man*.

¹ As the Latin has no article, a noun may, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated (1) without the article: as, *puella*, girl; *puellae*, girls; (2) with the indefinite article *a* or *an*: as, *puella*, a girl; (3) with the definite article *the*: as, *puella*, the girl.

² See page 23, foot-note, 3.

³ The pupil will remember that the English articles, *a*, *an*, and *the*, are not to be rendered into Latin at all.

LESSON VII.

VERBS. — SUBJECT. — DIRECT OBJECT. — RULE V.

16. *Examine carefully the following examples.*

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Rēgina laudat. | <i>The queen praises.</i> |
| 2. Rēgina puellam laudat. | <i>The queen praises THE GIRL.</i> |
| 3. Puella rēginam laudat. | <i>The girl praises THE QUEEN.</i> |

NOTE 1. — In the example *rēgina laudat*, “the queen praises,” the thought is not entirely complete, as we are not told *what* the queen praises, but in the example *rēgina puellam laudat*, “the queen praises (what?) the girl,” the sense is complete. The noun which thus completes the meaning of a verb is called the *Direct Object*.

NOTE 2. — Observe that in English the object follows the verb ; thus in the examples above, the objects, *the girl* and *the queen*, follow the verb, *praises* ; but in Latin the object usually precedes the verb ; thus *puellam* and *rēginam* precede the verb *laudat*.

NOTE 3. — Again compare the second and third examples. Observe that *laudat* is common to both, that *rēgina* in the second becomes *rēginam* in the third, and that *puellam* in the second becomes *puella* in the third. Notice now the *effect* of these simple changes upon the *meaning* of the sentences. You thus learn that when the Romans spoke of a *queen* as the *subject* of an action, they used the form *rēgina*, but when they spoke of a *queen* as the *object* of an action they used *rēginam*. These forms, *rēgina*, *rēginam*, are types or examples of a large class of Latin nouns which in the singular end in *a* when used as subject and in *am* when used as object.

NOTE 4. — Observe that *puellam*, the Direct Object in the second example, and *rēginam*, the Direct Object in the third example, are both in the *Accusative*. This is in accordance with general Latin usage, expressed in the following

RULE V. — Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative.

17. *Vocabulary.*

Amat,	<i>he loves.</i>
Amicitia,	<i>friendship.</i>
Dēlectat,	<i>he delights.</i>

Epistula, ae, f.	letter, epistle.
Filia, ae, f.	daughter.
Jūstitia, ae, f.	justice.
Laudat,	he praises.

18. Translate into English.

1. Rēgīna puellās laudābat.¹ 2. Puellae rēgīnam laudābant. 3. Rēgīna incolās laudat. 4. Incolae rēgīnam laudant. 5. Poētae amīcitiam laudant. 6. Poētae rēgīnam laudābunt. 7. Rēgīna poētās laudābit. 8. Nauta poētām laudābat. 9. Poēta nautam laudābit. 10. Poētae nautās laudant. 11. Poēta dēliberābit. 12. Poētae dēliberābant. 13. Puellae ambulābant. 14. Rēgīna filiam² amat. 15. Filiam amābit.³ 16. Epistula rēgīnam dēlectat.

19. Translate into Latin.

1. The poet praises the queen. 2. He was praising the queen. 3. The poet will praise friendship. 4. The letter delights the girl. 5. The girl praises the letter. 6. The girls were praising the poet. 7. The girls love the queen. 8. The queen loves the girls. 9. The husbandman will

¹ In taking up a Latin sentence, remember that the meaning must be learned in part from the vocabulary, and in part from the endings of the words. In this sentence, for example, we first learn the general meaning of the words from the vocabulary. We then ascertain the number and case of *rēgīna* from its ending. We find that it is in the singular number, and that in form it may be either a *Nominative* or a *Vocative*. As a *Nominative* it would mean that *the queen* is the subject of the action, as that is the only use of the *Nominative* which we have thus far learned; as a *Vocative*, that *the queen* is addressed. We next notice *puellās*. This must be an *Accusative Plural*, and it accordingly represents *the girls* as the object of an action; *puellās*, then, must be the object of the action of which *rēgīna* is the subject. The ending *ābat* in *laudābat* shows that the verb is in the imperfect tense, third person singular, and that it accordingly represents the action as taking place in past time, and as having one person for its subject. We are now prepared to translate the sentence: *The queen was praising the girls.* See *Suggestions*, I. to X., page 261.

² Render *her daughter*. In Latin the possessive pronouns, meaning *his, her, their*, when not emphatic, are seldom expressed.

³ Render *she will love*, thus making the pronoun refer to *rēgīna*.

plough. 10. The husbandmen were ploughing. 11. The poets are deliberating. 12. The husbandman loves his daughter.

LESSON VIII.

SUBJECT. — DIRECT OBJECT. — QUESTIONS.

20. In questions the interrogative particles, *-ne*, *nōnne*, and *num*, are often used in Latin.

1. Questions with *-ne* ask for information: *Rēgatne*,¹ 'is he reigning?'

2. Questions with *nōnne* expect the answer 'yes': *Nōnne rēgnat*, 'is he not reigning?'

3. Questions with *num* expect the answer 'no': *Num rēgnat*, 'is he reigning?'

21. Vocabulary.

Artemisia,	<i>Artemisia</i> , queen of Caria.
Corōna, ae, f.	<i>crown</i> .
Expectat,	<i>he expects, awaits</i> .
Fābula, ae, f.	<i>story, fable</i> .
Jūlia, ae, f.	<i>Julia</i> , a Roman name.
Nōn,	<i>not</i> .
Sapientia, ae, f.	<i>wisdom</i> .

22. Translate into English.

1. Nōnne Artemisia rēgnābat?² 2. Rēgnābat. 3. Nōnne poēta rēgīnam laudābit? 4. Rēgīnam laudābit. 5. Num poēta nāvigābat? 6. Nōn nāvigābat. 7. Nōnne poētae sapientiam laudant? 8. Sapientiam laudant. 9. Ambulantne?³ 10. Nōn ambulant. 11. Equitantne? 12. Equitant.

13. Nōnne rēgīna corōnam amābat? 14. Corōnam amābat. 15. Nōnne fābulae puellās dēlectābant? 16. Puellās dēlectābant. 17. Fābula nautās dēlectat. 18. Fābulae nautam dēlectant. 19. Nautae nāvigābunt.

¹ The particle *-ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

² Observe in 2 and 3 that the auxiliary *is* stands at the beginning of the question in English, and that the subject follows: *is he not reigning?* *is he reigning?* *Does* and *do* often introduce questions in the same way, and in the past tense *was* and *did*: *was he not reigning*, *nōnne rēgnābat?*

³ *Ambulantne* = *ambulant* and the interrogative particle *-ne*.

23. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Does not Julia praise the queen? 2. She praises the queen. 3. Will the girls love Julia? 4. They will love Julia. 5. Is not Victoria reigning? 6. She is reigning. 7. Is the sailor expecting letters? 8. He is not expecting letters. 9. Does the poet love his daughters?

10. He loves his daughters. 11. Will not the letters delight the queen? 12. They will delight the queen. 13. Were not the inhabitants deliberating? 14. They were deliberating. 15. The story will delight the poet.

LESSON IX.

SUBJECT. — DIRECT OBJECT. — QUESTIONS.

24. *Vocabulary.*

Accūsāt,	<i>he accuses.</i>
Armat,	<i>he arms.</i>
Familia, ae, f.	<i>family, servants.</i>
Gallia, ae, f.	<i>Gaul, now France.</i>
Honōrat,	<i>he honors.</i>
Patria, ae, f.	<i>country, one's country.</i>
Probat,	<i>he approves.</i>
Sententia, ae, f.	<i>opinion, sentiment.</i>
Tullia, ae, f.	<i>Tullia, a Roman name.</i>

25. *Translate into English.*

1. Nōnne agricolae patriam amābant? 2. Patriam amābant. 3. Num incolae rēgīnam accūsābunt? 4. Nōn rēgīnam accūsābunt. 5. Rēgīnam amant. 6. Rēgīna nautās armābit. 7. Nōnne familiam armābat? 8. Familiam armābat. 9. Num Artemisia incolās armābat?

10. Nōn incolās armābat. 11. Rēgnābatne? 12. Rēgnābat. 13. Incolae nautās accūsābunt. 14. Nōnne agricolae nautās accūsābant? 15. Nautās accūsābant. 16. Nōnne rēgīna sententiam probābat? 17. Sententiam probābat. 18. Nōnne incolae sententiam probābunt?

26. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was Artemisia reigning? 2. She was not reigning. 3. Victoria was reigning. 4. Do the husbandmen love Gaul? 5. They do¹ not love Gaul. 6. Will not the queen honor the poet? 7. She will honor the poet. 8. The inhabitants honor the queen. 9. Do they not love their country?

10. They love their country. 11. Will the queen approve the opinion? 12. She will approve the opinion. 13. She approves the opinion. 14. Was not Gaul arming its inhabitants? 15. Gaul was arming its inhabitants. 16. Did not Artemisia accuse² her servants? 17. She accused² her servants.

LESSON X.

CERTAIN FORMS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION. —
RULES II. AND XVI.

27. In verbs of the SECOND CONJUGATION, the THIRD PERSON in the *singular* and *plural* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* mood has the following

ENDINGS.

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
<i>Singular,</i>	et,	ēbat,	ēbit.
<i>Plural,</i>	ent,	ēbant,	ēbunt. ³

PARADIGM.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres</i>	monet, <i>he advises</i> ; ⁴	monent, <i>they advise.</i>
<i>Imp</i>	monēbat, <i>he was advising</i> ; ⁵	monēbant, <i>they were advising.</i> ⁵
<i>Fut.</i>	monēbit, <i>he will advise</i> ;	monēbunt, <i>they will advise.</i>

¹ Omit *do* in rendering into Latin, as that language has no separate words for the English auxiliaries, *does*, *do*, *did*.

² Use the imperfect; see page 19, foot-note 5.

³ Observe that these endings all begin with the stem-characteristic *e*.

⁴ Or, *she advises*, *it advises* ; see page 23, foot-note 3.

⁵ Or, *he advised* ; plural, *they advised* ; see page 19, foot-note 5.

28. *Examine the following examples.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Artemisia rēgnat.</i> | <i>Artemisia</i> reigns. |
| 2. <i>Artemisia rēgīna rēgnat.</i> | <i>Artemisia</i> the queen reigns. |
| 3. <i>Poēta Artemisiam laudat.</i> | The poet praises <i>Artemisia</i> . |
| 4. <i>Artemisiam rēgīnam laudat.</i> | He praises <i>Artemisia</i> THE QUEEN. |
| 5. <i>Corōnam laudat.</i> | He praises the crown. |
| 6. <i>Corōnam rēgīnae laudat.</i> | He praises the crown OF THE QUEEN. |

NOTE 1. — A noun or pronoun used to qualify or identify another noun or pronoun, denoting the *same* person or thing, as *rēgīna* in the second example and *rēgīnam* in the fourth, is called an appositive. *Rēgīna*, "the queen," is an appositive, showing the rank or office of *Artemisia*, — *Artemisia* THE QUEEN.

NOTE 2. — Observe that in the second example, where *Artemisia* is in the Nominative, the appositive, *rēgīna* is also in the Nominative, while in the fourth example, where *Artemisiam* is in the Accusative, the appositive is also in the Accusative. This usage is expressed in the following

RULE II. — Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees in CASE with the noun or pronoun which it qualifies.¹

NOTE 3. — Observe that in the sixth of the above examples the genitive *rēgīnae* limits or qualifies *corōnam* by showing whose crown is meant, *the crown OF THE QUEEN*. This usage is expressed in the following

RULE XVI. — Genitive with Nouns.

395. Any noun, not an appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive.¹

397. The PARTITIVE GENITIVE designates the whole of which a part is taken.

Gallōrum fortissimī, the bravest of the Gauls.

¹ The pupil must not fail to notice that the Appositive always denotes the *same* person or thing as the noun or pronoun which it qualifies, while the Genitive always denotes a *different* person or thing. The Appositive follows its noun as in examples 2 and 4 above. The Genitive generally follows its noun as in example 6, but when *emphatic* it is placed before that noun.

LESSON XI.

CERTAIN FORMS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

29. *Vocabulary.*

Dēlet,	<i>he¹ destroys.</i>
Docet,	<i>he teaches.</i>
Habet,	<i>he has.</i>
Luxuria, ae, f.	<i>luxury.</i>
Monet,	<i>he advises.</i>
Pecūnia, ae, f.	<i>money.</i>
Rōma, ae, f.	<i>Rome, the city Rome.</i>
Tacet,	<i>he is silent.</i>
Timet,	<i>he fears.</i>
Videt,	<i>he sees.</i>

30. *Translate into English.*²

1. Poēta filiam docēbat. 2. Filiam docēbit. 3. Nōme

¹ See page 23, foot-notes 3 and 4.

² The pupil has already learned that in the first declension a noun in *a* is always in the Nominative or Vocative singular, and he has observed that in the previous exercises the Nominative is always the subject of a verb. He has now learned a new use for the Nominative, viz. that it may be an Appositive qualifying another Nominative.

Again, he has learned that a noun in *am* is in the Accusative singular and a noun in *ās* in the Accusative plural, and he has observed that in previous exercises the Accusative is the direct object, i.e. the object of some action, but he has now learned a new use for the Accusative, viz. that it may be an Appositive qualifying another Accusative. Hence, in future, in preparing his exercises, he must remember that a *Nominative* may be either the *subject* of a verb or an *Appositive*, and that an *Accusative* may be either the *object* of an action or an *Appositive*, but he will have little difficulty in distinguishing the *Appositive* from the *subject* or *object*, if he remembers that it follows another noun or pronoun in the same case, as in examples 2 and 4 under 28.

The pupil has also learned that a noun may be qualified by another noun denoting a different person or thing, and that the qualifying noun is in the Genitive, as in the sixth and seventh examples under 28, but the Genitive may also be used as an Appositive to another Genitive; hence the pupil must remember when he sees a Genitive that it may either qualify another noun, denoting a different person or thing, or may be an Appositive to another Genitive. See Suggestion VI., page 262.

agricolae¹ filiās docēbunt? 4. Filiās docēbunt. 5. Artemisia rēgīna² tacēbat. 6. Vīctōria rēgīna jūstitiam laudat. 7. Incolae Vīctōriam rēgīnam³ honōrant. 8. Nōnne poēta filiam Jūliam³ docēbit? 9. Filiam Jūliam docēbit. 10. Nōnne poēta Vīctōriam rēgīnam vidēbit? 11. Rēgīnam vidēbit. 12. Poēta pecūniam habet.

13. Nōnne Jūlia, filia poētae,⁴ pecūniam habēbit? 14. Pecūniam habēbit. 15. Num agricolae tacēbant? 16. Nōn tacēbant. 17. Nōnne luxuria Rōmam dēlēbat? 18. Luxuria Rōmam dēlēbat. 19. Tullia, filia rēgīnae, filiam poētae amat. 20. Nōnne Jūlia Tulliam, filiam rēgīnae, amābit?

31. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The queen was advising her daughter. 2. Was not Victoria advising her daughters? 3. Victoria the queen was advising her daughters. 4. Will not the poet praise Victoria the queen? 5. He will praise Victoria the queen. 6. He is praising the daughter of the queen. 7. He praises the daughters of Victoria the queen.

8. Did Artemisia the queen fear the sailors? 9. She did not fear the sailors. 10. Did not the husbandmen fear the queen? 11. They were fearing Artemisia the queen. 12. Will not the girls see the queen? 13. They will see the queen. 14. Will they not see the crown?

LESSON XII.

NOUNS. — SECOND DECLENSION.

32. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

51. Nouns of the second declension end in

er, ir, us, and os —*masculine*; **um, and on**—*neuter*.

¹ In *form* where may *agricolae* be found? In what case is it in this sentence? See Suggestion VII., page 263.

² Which nominative is subject and which appositive?

³ Which accusative is object and which appositive?

⁴ In *form* where may *poētae* be found? In what case is it here?

Nouns in *er*, *ir*, *us*, and *um* are declined as follows:

Servus, *slave*. *Puer*, *boy*. *Ager*, *field*. *Templum*, *temple*.

SINGULAR.			
<i>Nom.</i> <i>servus</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>templum</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>servi</i>	<i>pueri</i>	<i>agri</i>	<i>templi</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>servo</i>	<i>puero</i>	<i>agro</i>	<i>templō</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>servum</i>	<i>puerum</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>templum</i>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>serve</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>templum</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>servo</i>	<i>puero</i>	<i>agro</i>	<i>templō</i>

PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i> <i>servi</i>	<i>pueri</i>	<i>agri</i>	<i>templi</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>servōrum</i>	<i>puerōrum</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>	<i>templōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>servis</i>	<i>pueris</i>	<i>agris</i>	<i>templis</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>servos</i>	<i>pueros</i>	<i>agros</i>	<i>templi</i>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>servi</i>	<i>pueri</i>	<i>agri</i>	<i>templi</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>servis</i>	<i>pueris</i>	<i>agris</i>	<i>templis</i>

1. STEM. — In nouns of the second declension, the stem ends in *o*.

2. In the PARADIGMS, observe —

1) That the stems are *servo*, *puero*, *agro*, and *templo*.

2) That the characteristic *o* becomes *u* in the endings *us* and *um*, and *e* in *serve*; that it disappears by contraction in the endings *a*, *i*, and *is* (for *o-a*, *o-i*, and *o-is*), and is dropped in the forms *puer* and *ager*.

3) That the case-endings, including the characteristic *o*,¹ are as follows: —

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
MASC.	NEUT.	MASC.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>us</i> ²	<i>um</i>	<i>Nom.</i> <i>i</i>	<i>a</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>i</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>Gen.</i> <i>ōrum</i>	<i>ōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>ō</i>	<i>ō</i>	<i>Dat.</i> <i>is</i>	<i>is</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>um</i>	<i>um</i>	<i>Acc.</i> <i>os</i>	<i>a</i>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>e</i>	<i>um</i>	<i>Voc.</i> <i>i</i>	<i>a</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>ō</i>	<i>ō</i>	<i>Abl.</i> <i>is</i>	<i>is</i>

3. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE. — Like *SERVUS*: *dominus*, master. Like *PUER*: *gener*, son-in-law. Like *AGER*: *magister*, master. Like *TEMPLUM*: *bellum*, war.

¹ For the characteristic, and for the distinction between *case-endings* and *case-suffixes*, see 11 with foot-note.

² The endings of the Nominative and Vocative Singular are wanting in nouns in *er*. Thus *puer* is for *puerus*.

5. Nouns in **ius** generally contract **ii** in the Genitive Singular and **ie** in the Vocative Singular into **i** without change of accent ; *Claudī* for *Claudii*, of Claudius, *filī* for *filii*, of a son ; *Mercūrī* for *Mercurie*, Mercury, *filī* for *filie*, son.

8. LOCATIVE. — Names of towns, and a few other words, have a Locative Singular in **i**, denoting the *place in which* (page 23, 4). *Corinthī*, at Corinth ; *humī*, on the ground.

33. Vocabulary.

Ager, agrī, <i>m.</i>	<i>field.</i>
Crassus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Crassus, a Roman name.</i>
Discipulus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>pupil, learner.</i>
Dominus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>master, owner.</i>
Fillus, i, <i>m.</i> ¹	<i>son.</i>
Liber, librī, <i>m.</i>	<i>book.</i>
Liberat.	<i>he liberates, liberates.</i>
Puer, puerī, <i>m.</i>	<i>boy.</i>
Servus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>slave.</i>
Templum, i, <i>n.</i>	<i>temple.</i>
Tyrannus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>tyrant.</i>

34. Translate into English.²

1. Fīlia tyrannī tacēbat. 2. Fīliae tyrannī tacent. 3. Servus agrum arat. 4. Servī agrum arābunt. 5. Servī rēgīnae agrōs arābant. 6. Rēgīna servōs laudābit. 7. Nōne puer librum habet? 8. Librum habet. 9. Nōne puerī librōs habēbunt? 10. Librōs habēbunt. 11. Discipulus librōs habēbat.³ 12. Nōne discipulī librōs habēbant?

13. Librōs habēbant. 14. Tullia, filia rēgīnae, discipulōs laudābat. 15. Discipulī Tulliam, fīliam rēgīnae, laudant. 16. Crassus agrōs habēbat. 17. Nōne servōs habēbat? 18. Servōs habēbat. 19. Nōne servōs liberābat? 20. Servōs liberābat. 21. Poēta servum habet. 22. Nōne servum liberābit? 23. Servum liberābit.

¹ *Filī* for *filii*; see 32, 5.

² It is important that the pupil should early learn to recognize Latin words by their *sounds* as well as by their *forms*. Many teachers, therefore, frequently read the Latin to their classes, and require them to translate with closed books. ³ *Had* = *was having*; see page 19, foot-note 5.

35. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The story delights the boy. 2. Stories delight boys. 3. The stories will delight the boys. 4. The boy was expecting a letter. 5. The boys were expecting letters. 6. The queen praises her daughter. 7. The queen will praise the daughter of the tyrant.

8. Is not the husbandman ploughing the field? 9. He is ploughing the field. 10. The husbandman will plough the fields. 11. Did not the slave love his master? 12. He loved his master Crassus. 13. Will not the boys see the temple? 14. They will see the temple.

LESSON XIII.

SECOND DECLENSION.

36. *Vocabulary.*

Amicus, i, m.	friend.
Dōnum, i, n.	gift, present.
Fortūna, ae, f.	fortune.
Gener, generi, m.	son-in-law.
Nātūra, ae, f.	nature.
Pisistratus, i, m.	Pisistratus, tyrant of Athens.
Socer, soceri, m.	father-in-law.
Terret,	he terrifies, frightens.
Verbum, i, n.	word.

37. *Translate into English.*

1. Verba tyrannī rēgīnam terrēbant. 2. Verba Pisistratī tyrannī rēgīnam terrēbant. 3. Servus puerum terret. 4. Servi puerōs terrēbunt. 5. Verba servi puerum terrent. 6. Socer tyrannī tacēbat. 7. Puerī servōs rēgīnae timent. 8. Puer librum habet. 9. Puer librōs habēbit. 10. Puerī librōs habēbunt. 11. Rēgīna tyrannum timēbat. 12. Tyrannum timēbit. 13. Pisistratum timēbant.

14. Pisistratum tyrannum timēbant. 15. Puer amicum habēbat. 16. Nōne amicum amābat? 17. Amicum amā-

bat. 18. Amīcōs habēbit. 19. Puerī amīcōs habent. 20. Tullia amīcōs exspectābat. 21. Servīne¹ dominum exspectābunt? 22. Dominum exspectābunt. 23. Nōne epistula Crassī rēgīnam dēlectābat? 24. Rēgīnam dēlectābat. 25. Rēgīna sapientiam, dōnum nātūrae, habet.

38. Translate into Latin.

1. Will the boy see the crown of the tyrant? 2. He will see the crown. 3. Did not the gift delight Tullia? 4. It delighted Tullia, the daughter of the queen?² 5. Did not Tullia praise the gifts? 6. She praised the gifts. 7. Did not the letter of Tullia delight her father-in-law? 8. It delighted her father-in-law.

9. Did not the tyrant terrify the son-in-law of the queen? 10. He terrified the son-in-law of the queen. 11. The slave was ploughing the field. 12. The slaves are ploughing the field. 13. The slaves will plough the fields. 14. The son-in-law has the letter. 15. He will have the letters. 16. The tyrant will see the letter. 17. He will see the letter of the queen.

LESSON XIV.

ADJECTIVES. — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. —
RULE XXXIV.

39. Lesson from the Grammar.

146. The Adjective is the part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bonus*, good; *māgnus*, great.

NOTE. — The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies: *bonus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum templum*, a good temple.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension, and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

¹ *Servine* = *servi* with the interrogative particle *ne*.

² In what case should the Latin word for *daughter* be put? The word for *of the queen*? See 28, Rule II. and Rule XVI.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS : A AND O STEMS.

148. Bonus, *good*.¹

	SINGULAR.	
	MASC.	FEM.
	NEUT.	
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona
		bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	boni	bonae
		boni
<i>Dat.</i>	bono	bonae
		bono
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam
		bonum
<i>Voc.</i>	bone	bona
		bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bono	bona
		bono
	PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i>	boni	bonae
		bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonorum	bonarum
		bonorum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonis	bonis
		bonis
<i>Acc.</i>	bonos	bonas
		bona
<i>Voc.</i>	boni	bonae
		bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonis	bonis
		bonis

Servus Bonus, *a good slave*.²

	SINGULAR.	
<i>Nom.</i>	servus bonus,	<i>a good slave.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	servi boni,	<i>of a good slave.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	servo bono,	<i>for a good slave.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	servum bonum,	<i>a good slave.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	serve bone,	<i>O good slave.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	servo bono,	<i>from a good slave.</i>

	PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i>	servi boni,	<i>good slaves,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	servorum bonorum,	<i>of good slaves.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	servis bonis,	<i>for good slaves.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	servos bonos,	<i>good slaves.</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	servi boni,	<i>O good slaves.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	servis bonis,	<i>from good slaves.</i>

¹ Bonus is declined in the Masc. like *servus* of Decl. II., (32, 51,) in the Fem. like *mēnsa* of Decl. I., (11, 48), and in the Neut. like *templum* of Decl. II., (32, 51). The stems are *bono* in the Masc. and Neut., and *bonā* in the Fem.

² In English the adjective usually precedes its noun, but in Latin it sometimes precedes and sometimes follows, though when not *emphatic* it more frequently follows.

40. *Examine the following examples.*

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Servus bonus. | <i>A good slave.</i> |
| 2. Servi boni. | <i>Of a good slave.</i> |
| 3. Servis bonis. | <i>For good slaves.</i> |
| 4. Vērae amicitiae. ¹ | <i>TRUE friendships.</i> |
| 5. Templum pulchrum. | <i>A beautiful temple.</i> |

NOTE. — In these examples, observe that the adjectives are all in the same *Gender, Number, and Case* as their nouns. This usage is expressed in the following

RULE XXXIV. — Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An adjective agrees with its noun in **GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE.**

LESSON XV.

ADJECTIVES. — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. —

RULE XXXIV. — EXERCISES.

41. *Certain Forms of the Verb Sum, I am.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres. est, he, she, or it is ;</i>	<i>sunt, they are.</i>
<i>Imp. erat, he, she, or it was ;</i>	<i>erant, they were.</i>
<i>Fut. erit, he, she, or it will be ;</i>	<i>erunt, they will be.</i>

42. *Vocabulary.*

Aureus, a, um,	<i>golden, of gold.</i>
Bonus, a, um,	<i>good.</i>
Fidus, a, um,	<i>faithful.</i>
Glōria, ae, f.	<i>glory.</i>
Māgnus, a, um,	<i>great, large.</i>
Multus, a, um,	<i>much ; plural, many.</i>
Novus, a, um,	<i>new.</i>
Sanctus, a, um,	<i>sacred.</i>
Superbus, a, um,	<i>proud, haughty..</i>

43. *Translate into English.*

1. Nōne corōna aurea² rēgīnam dēlectat? 2. Rēgīnam bonam dēlectat. 3. Corōna aurea est. 4. Corōnae sunt

¹ Vērae is emphatic: See page 38, foot-note 2.

² On the position of the adjective in Latin, see page 38, foot-note 2.

aureae.¹ 5. Nōne rēgīna bona corōnam laudābat. 6. Corōnam auream laudābat. 7. Puellae rēgīnam bonam amant. 8. Puellae bonae rēgīnam amant. 9. Puellae bonae rēgīnam bonam amābunt.

10. Discipulus novum² librum habet. 11. Discipulī librōs novōs habēbunt. 12. Nōne discipulī multōs librōs habent? 13. Nōn habent. 14. Librōs multōs habēbunt. 15. Poēta glōriam habet. 16. Poētae glōriam māgnam habēbunt. 17. Poēta māgnus glōriam māgnam habēbat. 18. Glōria est māgna. 19. Templum erat sanctum.

44. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Tullia has many³ books. 2. Are the books new?⁴ 3. They are not new. 4. Has not the poet a faithful friend?⁴ 5. He has many friends. 6. Are the friends faithful? 7. They are faithful. 8. The good queen has many friends. 9. The slave loves his good master. 10. Do not good masters have good slaves?

11. They have good slaves. 12. Tullia was praising the great poet. 13. The great poet will praise the good queen. 14. Great poets have great glory. 15. The haughty tyrant terrified the poet. 16. Tullia feared the haughty tyrant. 17. Tullia loves faithful friends. 18. The sailor will see the sacred temple.

LESSON XVI.

ADJECTIVES. — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

45. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

¹ While in general the verb in Latin occupies the last place in the sentence, *est* and *sunt* often stand between the subject and the predicate adjective, as in this sentence. Some freedom of arrangement is, however, allowed. Thus *Corōnae sunt aureae* might be *corōnae aureae sunt*, and *corōna aurea est*, above, might be *corōna est aurea*.

² *Novum* is *emphatic*.

³ Put the adjective in the right form to agree with its noun.

⁴ In translating English into Latin, the pupil is expected, in the arrangement of words, to imitate the order followed in the Latin Exercises.

149. *Liber, free.*¹

	MASC.	SINGULAR.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>liber</i>	<i>libera</i>	<i>libera</i>	<i>liberum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>liberī</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>liberī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>liberō</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>liberō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>liberum</i>	<i>liberam</i>	<i>liberam</i>	<i>liberum</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>liber</i>	<i>libera</i>	<i>libera</i>	<i>liberum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>liberō</i>	<i>liberā</i>	<i>liberā</i>	<i>liberō</i>
PLURAL.				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>liberī</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>libera</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>liberōrum</i>	<i>liberārum</i>	<i>liberārum</i>	<i>liberōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>liberōs</i>	<i>liberās</i>	<i>liberās</i>	<i>libera</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>liberī</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>libera</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>

150. *Aeger, sick.*

	MASC.	SINGULAR.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>aeger</i>	<i>aegra</i>	<i>aegra</i>	<i>aegrum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aegrō</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegrō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aegrum</i>	<i>aegram</i>	<i>aegram</i>	<i>aegrum</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>aeger</i>	<i>aegra</i>	<i>aegra</i>	<i>aegrum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aegrō</i>	<i>aegrā</i>	<i>aegrā</i>	<i>aegrō</i>
PLURAL.				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aegrōrum</i>	<i>aegrārum</i>	<i>aegrārum</i>	<i>aegrōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aegrōs</i>	<i>aegrās</i>	<i>aegrās</i>	<i>aegra</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegrae</i>	<i>aegra</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>

151. IRREGULARITIES. — Nine adjectives have in the singular **ius** in the Genitive and **i** in the Dative:

Alius, a, ud, another; *nūllus, a, um*, no one; *sōlus*, alone; *tōtus*, whole; *ūllus*, any; *ūnus*,² one; *alter, -tera, -terum*, the other; *uter, -tra, -trum*, which (of two); *neuter, -tra, -trum*, neither.

¹ In the Masculine *liber* is declined like *puer* (32, 51), *aeger*, like *ager* (32, 51).

² For declension see page 78.

LESSON XVII.

ADJECTIVES. — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.
EXERCISES.46. *Vocabulary.*

Aeger, aegra, aegrum,	<i>ill, sick.</i>
Beātus, a, um,	<i>happy, blessed.</i>
Ēgregius, a, um,	<i>excellent, distinguished.</i>
Grātus, a, um,	<i>acceptable, pleasing.</i>
Hōra, ae, f.	<i>hour.</i>
Longus, a, um,	<i>long, lasting.</i>
Pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,	<i>beautiful.</i>
Vērus, a, um,	<i>true.</i>
Victōria, ae, f.	<i>victory.</i>
Vita, ae, f.	<i>life.</i>

47. *Translate into English.*

1. Agricola agrum pulchrum habet. 2. Estne beātus? 3. Beātus est. 4. Agricola beātus agrum arābat. 5. Nōne agricolae beātī sunt? 6. Beātī sunt. 7. Puella pulchra pulchram rēginam amat. 8. Puellae pulchrae rēginam bonam amābant. 9. Nōne rēgina bona puellās pulchrās amābit? 10. Puellās pulchrās amābit.

11. Poēta servum ēgregium habēbat. 12. Servus Tulliae ēgregius erat. 13. Dominus superbus ēgregiōs servōs habet. 14. Suntne hōrae longae? 15. Nōn longae sunt. 16. Estne vīta longa? 17. Nōn est longa. 18. Puer erat aeger. 19. Puerī erant aegrī. 20. Suntne puellae aegrae? 21. Nōn sunt aegrae. 22. Vīta agricolae est beāta.

48. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The present is beautiful. 2. Is it acceptable? 3. It is acceptable. 4. Presents are acceptable. 5. Beautiful presents are acceptable. 6. Victory will be acceptable. 7. The glory of the victory will be great. 8. Is the story true? 9. It is not true. 10. Many stories are true. 11. Is the slave of the poet ill? 12. He is not ill.

13. Julia, the beautiful daughter of the poet, is ill. 14. Tullia was praising the beautiful daughter of the poet. 15. The temple is beautiful. 16. Many temples are beautiful. 17. Tullia will see the beautiful temples. 18. Will not the pupils have beautiful books? 19. They will have beautiful books. 20. Friends will be faithful.

LESSON XVIII.

THIRD DECLENSION — CONSONANT AND **I** NOUNS.

49. Lesson from the Grammar.

55. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, ō, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, and x.

56. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes:

I. Nouns whose stem ends in a *Consonant*.

II. Nouns whose stem ends in **I**.

CLASS I. — CONSONANT STEMS.

57. STEMS ENDING IN A LABIAL: **B** OR **P**.

Princeps, m., *a leader, chief.*

SINGULAR.			CASE-SUFFIXES.
Nom.	princeps,	<i>a leader,</i>	s
Gen.	principis,	<i>of a leader,</i>	is
Dat.	principi,	<i>to, for a leader,</i>	i
Acc.	principem,	<i>a leader,</i>	em
Voc.	princeps,	<i>O leader,</i>	s
Abl.	principe,	<i>from, with, by a leader,</i>	e
PLURAL.			
Nom.	principes,	<i>leaders,</i>	es
Gen.	principum,	<i>of leaders,</i>	um
Dat.	principibus,	<i>to, for leaders,</i>	ibus
Acc.	principes,	<i>leaders,</i>	es
Voc.	principes,	<i>O leaders,</i>	es
Abl.	principibus,	<i>from, with, by leaders.</i>	ibus

1. STEM AND CASE-SUFFIXES. — In this Paradigm observe —

1) That the stem is *princep*, modified before an additional syllable to *prīncip*; see p. 2, 22, and 49, 57, 2.

2) That the case-suffixes appear distinct and separate from the stem;¹ see 11, 46, with foot-note.

2. VARIABLE VOWEL. — In the final syllable of disyllabic consonant stems, short *e* or *i* generally takes the form of *e* in the Nominative and Vocative Singular, and that of *i* in all the other cases. Thus *prīnceps*, *prīncipis*, and *jūdex*, *jūdicis* (53, 59), alike have *e* in the Nominative and Vocative Singular, and *i* in all the other cases.

58. STEMS ENDING IN A DENTAL: D OR T.

Lapis, m., *stone*.

Ætās, f., *age*.

Miles, m., *soldier*.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	lapis	ætās	miles
<i>Gen.</i>	lapidis	ætātis	militis
<i>Dat.</i>	lapidi	ætāti	militi
<i>Acc.</i>	lapidem	ætātem	militem
<i>Voc.</i>	lapis	ætās	miles
<i>Abl.</i>	lapide	ætāte	milite

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	lapidēs	ætātēs	milites
<i>Gen.</i>	lapidum	ætātum	milium
<i>Dat.</i>	lapidibus	ætātibus	milibus
<i>Acc.</i>	lapidēs	ætātēs	milites
<i>Voc.</i>	lapidēs	ætātēs	milites
<i>Abl.</i>	lapidibus	ætātibus	milibus

Nepōs, m., *grandson*.

Virtūs, f., *virtue*.

Caput, n., *head*.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	nepōs	virtūs	caput
<i>Gen.</i>	nepōtis	virtūtis	capitis
<i>Dat.</i>	nepōti	virtūti	capiti
<i>Acc.</i>	nepōtem	virtūtem	caput
<i>Voc.</i>	nepōs	virtūs	caput
<i>Abl.</i>	nepōte	virtūte	capite

¹ Thus, *princep-s*, *princip-is*, etc. In the first and second declensions, on the contrary, the suffix can not be separated from the final vowel of the stem in such forms as *mēnsis*, *puerī*, *agris*, etc.

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	nepōtēs	virtūtēs	capita
<i>Gen.</i>	nepōtum	virtutum	capitum
<i>Dat.</i>	nepōtibus	virtutibus	capitibus
<i>Acc.</i>	nepōtēs	virtūtēs	capita
<i>Voc.</i>	nepōtēs	virtūtēs	capita
<i>Abl.</i>	nepōtibus	virtutibus	capitibus

1. STEMS AND CASE-SUFFIXES. — In these Paradigms observe —

- 1) That the stems are *lapid*, *aetāt*, *milit*, *nepōt*, *virtūt*, and *caput*.
- 2) That *miles* has the variable vowel, *e*, *i*, and *caput*, *u*, *i*.
- 3) That the dental *d* or *t* is dropped before *s*: *lapis* for *lapids*, *aetūs* for *aetātis*, *miles* for *mīlets*, *virtūs* for *virtūtis*.

4) That the case-suffixes, except in the *neuter*, *caput*, 'head,' are the same as those given above; see 49, 57.

5) That the *neuter*, *caput*, has no case-suffix in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular, *a* in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, and the suffixes of masculine and feminine nouns in the other cases.

LESSON XIX.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS I.

50. Vocabulary.

Caput, capitis, <i>n</i> .	head.
Comes, comitis, <i>m. and f.</i>	companion.
Hospes, hospitis, <i>m.</i>	guest, host.
Lapis, lapidis, <i>m.</i>	stone.
Miles, militis, <i>m.</i>	soldier.
Nepōs, nepōtis, <i>m.</i>	grandson.
Princeps, principis, <i>m.</i>	leader, chief, chieftain.
Virtūs, virtutis, <i>f.</i>	virtue, valor, bravery.

51. Translate into English.

1. Nōne militēs pūgnābunt?
2. Pūgnābunt.
3. Nōne sunt fidī?
4. Sunt fidī.
5. Princeps nepōtem laudat.
6. Nōne militem laudat?
7. Militem laudat.
8. Estne superbus?
9. Superbus est.
10. Militēs principem laudant.
11. Virtutem principis laudant.

12. Virtūs militum. 13. Virtūte militum. 14. Virtūtem militum timet. 15. Tyrannus virtūtem militum timēbat. 16. Rēgīna virtūtem militum laudat. 17. Fīlia rēgīnae militēs laudābit. 18. Militēs fīliam rēgīnae laudant. 19. Pisistratum tyrannum accūsāt. 20. Pisistratum tyrannum accūsābant. 21. Miles dōnum pulchrum videt. 22. Militēs dōna pulchra vident. 23. Tyrannus principēs timēbat.

52. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The chief praises his companion. 2. Has he many companions? 3. He has many companions. 4. Did the chiefs approve the opinion? 5. They approved the opinion. 6. The chief praised his grandson. 7. The queen praises her guest. 8. She has many guests. 9. The boy has a large head. 10. The chief praises the valor of his soldiers.

11. The companions of Tullia, the queen. 12. For the companions of Tullia, the queen. 13. They accuse Tullia, the queen. 14. They were accusing the companions of Tullia, the queen. 15. They fear the tyrant. 16. They will fear the grandson of the tyrant. 17. The friends of the queen praise the chief. 18. The friend of the queen was praising the good chiefs.

LESSON XX.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS I. — RULE XII.

53. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

59. STEMS ENDING IN A GUTTURAL: **C** OR **G**.

Rēx, M., <i>king.</i>	Jūdex, M. & F., <i>judge.</i>	Rādix, F., <i>root.</i>	Dux, M. & F., <i>leader.</i>
SINGULAR.			
<i>Nom.</i> rēx	jūdex	rādix	dux
<i>Gen.</i> rēgis	jūdicis	rādīcis	ducis
<i>Dat.</i> rēgī	jūdicī	rādīcī	ducī
<i>Acc.</i> rēgem	jūdicem	rādīcem	ducem
<i>Voc.</i> rēx	jūdex	rādix	dux
<i>Abl.</i> rēge	jūdice	rādīce	duce

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i> rēgēs	jūdicēs	rādicēs	ducēs
<i>Gen.</i> rēgum	jūdicum	rādicum	ducum
<i>Dat.</i> rēgibus	jūdicibus	rādicibus	ducibus
<i>Acc.</i> rēgēs	jūdicēs	rādicēs	ducēs
<i>Voc.</i> rēgēs	jūdicēs	rādicēs	ducēs
<i>Abl.</i> rēgibus	jūdicibus	rādicibus	ducibus

1. STEMS AND CASE-SUFFIXES. — In the Paradigms observe —

1) That the stems are *rēg*, *jūdic*, *rādic*, and *duc*; *jūdic* with the variable vowel, *i*, *e*; see 49, 57, 2.

2) That the case-suffixes are those given in 49, 57.

3) That *s* in the Nominative and Vocative Singular unites with *e* or *g* of the stem, and forms *x*; see p. 3, 30.

54. Examine the following examples.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Imperiō pāret.</i> | <i>He is obedient TO (obeys) AUTHORITY.</i> |
| 2. <i>Hōc mihi placet.</i> | <i>This is pleasing TO (pleases) ME.</i> |
| 3. <i>Nōbis vita data est.</i> | <i>Life has been given TO US.</i> |
| 4. <i>Lēgēs civitātī scripsit.</i> | <i>He wrote laws FOR THE STATE.</i> |

NOTE.—In these examples *imperiō*, 'to authority,' *mihi*, 'to me,' *nōbis*, 'to us,' and *civitātī*, 'for the state,' are examples of what is called the *Indirect Object*. The first is the *Indirect Object* of *pāret*, the second of *placet*, the third of *data est*, and the fourth of *scripsit*. If the verb is transitive (p. 12, 193), as in the last example, an *Accusative* of the *Direct Object* (16, 371) may be used in addition to the *Indirect Object*. Observe that in these examples the *Indirect Objects* are all in the *Dative Case*. This is in accordance with the following

RULE XII. — Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Dative. It is used —

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs:

Serviant populō, *they are devoted TO THE PEOPLE.*¹ Cic. *Imperiō pārebant*, *they were obedient TO (obeyed) AUTHORITY.* Caes. *Temporē*

¹ *Populo*, 'to the people,' is in the Dative, and is the *Indirect Object* of *serviant*, 'they serve' or 'are devoted;' *plēbi*, 'to the common people,' is the *Indirect Object* of the transitive verb *dedit*, 'he gave,' which also takes the *Direct Object* *agrōs*, 'fields,' 'lands.'

cēdit, he yields to the time. Cic. *Labōri student, they devote themselves to labor.* Caes. *Mundus deo pāret, the world obeys God.* Cic. *Nōbis vita data est, life has been granted to us.* Cic.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the DIRECT OBJECT:

Agrōs plēbī¹ dedit, he gave lands to the common people. Cic. *Tibī grātiās agō, I give thanks to you.* Cic. *Pōns iter hostibus dedit, the bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. *Lēgēs civitatibus suis scripsērunt, they prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

LESSON XXI.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS I. — EXERCISES.

55. Vocabulary.

<i>Dīvīnus, a, um,</i>	<i>divine.</i>	
<i>Dōnat,</i>	<i>he presents.</i>	
<i>Hūmānus, a, um,</i>	<i>human.</i>	
<i>Iniquus, a, um,</i>	<i>unjust.</i>	
<i>Jūdex, jūdīcis, m. and f.</i>	<i>judge.</i>	[Central Italy.
<i>Latinus, ī, m.</i>	<i>Latinus,</i>	King of the Laurentians in
<i>Lāvinia, ae, f.</i>	<i>Lavinia,</i>	daughter of King Latinus.
<i>Lēx, lēgis, f.</i>	<i>law.</i>	
<i>Nūntiat,</i>	<i>he announces.</i>	
<i>Pāret,</i>	<i>he obeys.</i>	
<i>Placet,</i>	<i>he pleases.</i>	
<i>Rēx, rēgis, m.</i>	<i>king.</i>	
<i>Superbus, a, um,</i>	<i>proud.</i>	

56. Translate into English.

1. *Militēs princīpī pārēbant.* 2. *Lēgī pārent.* 3. *Lēgibus pārent.* 4. *Rēgem bonum laudant.* 5. *Rēx jūdīcēs bonōs laudat.* 6. *Mīles victōriam nūntiat.* 7. *Rēgī victōriam nūntiat.* 8. *Jūdex erat inīquus.* 9. *Rēgīna rēgī librum pulchrum dōnābit.* 10. *Prīnceps sapientiam rēgis laudābat.* 11. *Rēx bonus lēgibus pārēbat.* 12. *Rēgēs bonī lēgibus pārēbunt.*

¹ See foot-note, page 47.

² In what case? See 54, Rule XII.

13. Lēx divīna rēgī bonō placet. 14. Lēgēs bonae jūdicī placent. 15. Jūdex bonus rēgem superbum timet. 16. Rēgem superbum timēbit. 17. Rēgēs superbōs timēbunt. 18. Rēgīna jūdicem bonum laudābat. 19. Jūdex rēgem bonum laudābit. 20. Rēgīna bona jūdicem inīquum timēbat. 21. Jūdex puerō librum dōnat. 22. Fīlia rēgīnae puellīs librōs dōnābit.

57. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The judge praises the law. 2. Does he obey the law? 3. The king will present a beautiful gift to the judge. 4. The soldiers praise the judge. 5. The poet praises the king.¹ 6. The good poet was praising the daughter of the king. 7. The poets praise Lavinia, the daughter of Latinus, the king. 8. They were praising the virtues of the good king. 9. The queen was praising the bravery of the soldier. 10. The poets will praise the bravery of the soldiers. 11. The soldiers will obey the laws.¹ 12. The king will present a golden crown¹ to the queen.¹

LESSON XXII.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS I.

58. *Lesson from the Grammar.*60. STEMS ENDING IN **L, M, N, OR R.**

Sōl, m., <i>sun.</i>	Cōsul, m., <i>consul.</i>	Passer, m., <i>sparrow.</i>	Pater, m., <i>father.</i>
SINGULAR.			
Nom. sōl	cōsul	passer	pater
Gen. sōlis	cōsulis	passeris	patris
Dat. sōli	cōsuli	passeri	patri
Acc. sōlem	cōsulem	passerem	patrem
Voc. sōl	cōsul	passer	pater
Abl. sōle	cōsule	passere	patre

¹ In what case will you put the Latin word for *king*? 16, Rule V.; the Latin words for *laws*, *crown*, *to the queen*? 54, 384, I. and II.

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>sōlēs</i> ¹	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>passerēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>		<i>cōsulūm</i>	<i>passerūm</i>	<i>patrūm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>sōlibus</i>	<i>cōsulibus</i>	<i>passeribus</i>	<i>patribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>sōlēs</i>	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>passerēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>sōlēs</i>	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>passerēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>sōlibus</i>	<i>cōsulibus</i>	<i>passeribus</i>	<i>patribus</i>
	<i>Pāstor, M.,</i> <i>shepherd.</i>	<i>Leō, M.,</i> <i>lion.</i>	<i>Virgō, F.,</i> <i>maiden.</i>	<i>Carmen, N.,</i> <i>song.</i>

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>pāstor</i>	<i>leō</i>	<i>virgō</i>	<i>carmen</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>pāstōris</i>	<i>leōnis</i>	<i>virginis</i>	<i>carminis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>pāstōri</i>	<i>leōni</i>	<i>virgini</i>	<i>carmini</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>pāstōrem</i>	<i>leōnem</i>	<i>virginem</i>	<i>carmen</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>pāstor</i>	<i>leō</i>	<i>virgō</i>	<i>carmen</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>pāstōre</i>	<i>leōne</i>	<i>virgine</i>	<i>carmine</i>

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>pāstōrēs</i>	<i>leōnēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>carmina</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>pāstōrum</i>	<i>leōnum</i>	<i>virginum</i>	<i>carminum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>pāstōribus</i>	<i>leōnibus</i>	<i>virginibus</i>	<i>carminibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>pāstōrēs</i>	<i>leōnēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>carmina</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>pāstōrēs</i>	<i>leōnēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>carmina</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>pāstōribus</i>	<i>leōnibus</i>	<i>virginibus</i>	<i>carminibus</i>

1. STEMS AND CASE-SUFFIXES. — In the Paradigms observe —

- 1) The stems are *sōl*, *cōsul*, *passer*, *patr*, *pāstōr*, *leōn*, *virgon*, *carmen*.
- 2) *Virgō* (virgon) has the variable vowel, *o*, *i*, and *carmen*, *e*, *i*.
- 3) In the Nominative and Vocative Singular *s*, the case-suffix, is omitted, the stem *pāstōr* shortens *o*, while *leōn* and *virgon* drop *n*.

61. STEMS ENDING IN S.

<i>Flōs, M.,</i> <i>flower.</i>	<i>Jūs, N.,</i> <i>right.</i>	<i>Opus, N.,</i> <i>work.</i>	<i>Corpus, N.,</i> <i>body.</i>
------------------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------------	------------------------------------

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>flōs</i>	<i>jūs</i>	<i>opus</i>	<i>corpus</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>flōris</i>	<i>jūris</i>	<i>operis</i>	<i>corporis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>flōri</i>	<i>jūri</i>	<i>operi</i>	<i>corpori</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>flōrem</i>	<i>jūs</i>	<i>opus</i>	<i>corpus</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>flōs</i>	<i>jūs</i>	<i>opus</i>	<i>corpus</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>flōre</i>	<i>jūre</i>	<i>opere</i>	<i>corpore</i>

¹ Many monosyllables want the Genitive Plural.

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>flōrēs</i>	<i>jūra</i>	<i>opera</i>	<i>corpora</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>flōrum</i>	<i>jūrum</i>	<i>operum</i>	<i>corporum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>flōribus</i>	<i>jūribus</i>	<i>operibus</i>	<i>corporibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>flōrēs</i>	<i>jūra</i>	<i>opera</i>	<i>corpora</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>flōrēs</i>	<i>jūra</i>	<i>opera</i>	<i>corpora</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>flōribus</i>	<i>jūribus</i>	<i>operibus</i>	<i>corporibus</i>

1. STEMS AND CASE-SUFFIXES. — In the Paradigms observe —

- 1) That the stems are *flōs*, *jūs*, *opos*, and *corpos*.
- 2) That *opus* has the variable vowel, *e*, *u*, and *corpus*, *o*, *u*.
- 3) That *s* of the stem becomes *r* between two vowels: *flōs*, *flōris* (for *flōsis*).
- 4) That the Nominative and Vocative Singular omit the case-suffix; see 58, 60, 1, 3).

LESSON XXIII.

THIRD DECLENSION. — RULE I. — EXERCISES.

59. *Examine the following examples.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Servius <i>rēx</i> . | <i>Servius</i> THE KING. |
| 2. Servius <i>rēx erat</i> . | <i>Servius</i> was KING. |
| 3. Artemisia, Mausōli <i>uxor</i> . | <i>Artemisia</i> , THE WIFE of <i>Mausolus</i> . |
| 4. Artemisia Mausōli <i>uxor erat</i> . | <i>Artemisia</i> was THE WIFE of <i>Mausolus</i> . |

NOTE 1. — In the first example *rēx* is an Appositive; see 28, Rule II. In the second example, however, *rēx* is predicated or affirmed of *Servius*, — *Servius* was king, — and is called a Predicate Noun. *Rēx erat* is the Predicate of the sentence of which *Servius* is the subject. In the third example *uxor* is an Appositive, while in the fourth it is a Predicate Noun, predicated of *Artemisia*.

NOTE 2. — In the second and fourth examples observe that *rēx* and *uxor* are in the same case as the nouns of which they are predicated, i.e. in the Nominative. This usage is expressed in the following

RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.¹

362. A noun predicated of another noun denoting the same person or thing agrees with it in CASE:

¹ Compare this Rule with Rule II.; see 28.

*Brūtus cūstōs*¹ *libertātis* fuit, *Brutus* was the GUARDIAN of liberty.
 Liv. *Servius rēx* est dēclārātus, *Servius* was declared KING. Liv.
Orestem sē esse dixit, he said that he was ORESTES. Cic.

60. Vocabulary.

<i>Bellum</i> , i, n.	war.
<i>Brūtus</i> , i, m.	<i>Brutus</i> , a Roman name.
<i>Cāria</i> , ae, f.	<i>Caria</i> , a country in Asia Minor.
<i>Catō</i> , ōnis, m.	<i>Cato</i> , a Roman name.
<i>Causa</i> , ae, f.	cause.
<i>Cicerō</i> , ōnis, m.	<i>Cicero</i> , a Roman orator and states-
<i>Exsul</i> , ulis, m. and f.	exile. [man.]
<i>Frāter</i> , frātris, m.	brother.
<i>Herodotus</i> , i, m.	<i>Herodotus</i> , a Greek historian.
<i>Historia</i> , ae, f.	history.
<i>Imperātor</i> , ōris, m.	general, commander.
<i>Libertās</i> , ātis, f.	liberty, freedom.
<i>Mausōlus</i> , i, m.	<i>Mausolus</i> , King of Caria.
<i>Numa</i> , ae, m.	<i>Numa</i> , second of the legendary kings
<i>Ōrātor</i> , ōris, m.	orator. [of Rome.]
<i>Uxor</i> , ōris, f.	wife.
<i>Victor</i> , ōris, m.	conqueror.
<i>Vindex</i> , vindicis, m. and f.	defender.

61. Translate into English.

1. *Cicerō exsul* erat. 2. *Nōne cōsul bellum* timēbat?
 3. *Bellum* timēbat. 4. *Numa* erat bonus *rēx*. 5. *Cicerō*
cōsul victōrem laudat. 6. *Numa rēx patriam* amābat. 7.
Ōrātor Numam laudat. 8. *Cicerō cōsul* erat. 9. *Vindex*
libertātis.² 10. *Brūtus*, *vindex libertātis*. 11. *Brūtus* est
*vindex*³ *libertātis*. 12. *Poēta imperātōrem* laudat. 13.

¹ In these examples *cūstōs*, *rēx*, and *Orestem* are all predicate nouns, and agree in case respectively with *Brūtus*, *Servius*, and *sē*.

² *Libertātis* is in the Genitive, depending upon *vindex*, according to 28, Rule XVI. The Genitive generally follows its noun, as in this instance, but sometimes, especially when emphatic, it precedes, as in *belli causa* below.

³ *Vindex* in 10 is an Appositive, according to 28, Rule II., but in 11 it is a Predicate Noun, according to 59, Rule I.

Tullia bellī causa erat. 14. Tullia, rēgis filia.¹ 15. Herodotus, pater historiae. 16. Catō, māgnus imperātor. 17. Catō māgnus imperātor erat.

18. Jūstitia, rēgīna virtūtum. 19. Jūstitia est rēgīna virtūtum. 20. Artemīsia rēgis² uxor erat. 21. Artemīsia Mausōlī, Cariae rēgis,³ uxor erat. 22. Virtūs est comes sapientiae. 23. Virtūtēs sunt comītēs sapientiae. 24. Jūdex virtutem rēgis laudat. 25. Virtūtēs rēgis bonī laudābat. 26. Poētae virtūtēs Numae, rēgis bonī, laudābunt. 27. Rēx bonus⁴ est. 28. Pater jūdiciis rēgem bonum laudābit. 29. Tulliam, rēgis filiam,⁵ accūsābant.

62. Translate into Latin.

1. Cicero was an orator. 2. He was a great orator. 3. Mausolus was king. 4. Was he not king of Caria? 5. He was king of Caria. 6. Poets will praise the great commander. 7. They praise the father of history. 8. Does not the consul praise his brother? 9. He praises his brother.

10. The soldiers fear the king. 11. Latinus was the king.⁶ 12. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus. 13. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus, the king.⁷ 14. The daughter of the king was praising the faithful slave. 15. The orator will praise the wisdom of the judge. 16. Cicero, the orator, praises the bravery of the conqueror. 17. Cicero, the consul, praises the bravery of the soldiers. 18. The judge praises the wisdom of Cicero, the consul.

¹ *Filia* governs *rēgis*, according to Rule XVI., but is itself in apposition with *Tullia*, according to Rule II. The *appositive* generally follows its noun.

² Remember that the Genitive sometimes precedes the governing word, especially when it is emphatic.

³ What is the construction of *rēgis*? See 28, Rule II.

⁴ See 40, Rule XXXIV.

⁵ Explain the case of *filiam*. See 28 and 16, Rules II. and V.

⁶ A Predicate Noun. See 59, Rule I.

⁷ In what case will you put the Latin word? See 28, Rule II.

LESSON XXIV.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CLASS II. — **I** STEMS.

63. Lesson from the Grammar.

CLASS II. — **I** STEMS.62. STEMS ENDING IN **I**. — *Nouns in is and ĕs*, not increasing in the Genitive.¹

Tussis, F., cough.	Turris, F., tower.	Ignis, M., fire.	Hostis, M. & F., enemy.	Nūbēs, F., cloud.
-----------------------	-----------------------	---------------------	----------------------------	----------------------

SINGULAR.

Nom.	tussis	turris	ignis	hostis	nūbēs
Gen.	tussis	turris	ignis	hostis	nūbis
Dat.	tussi	turri	igni	hosti	nūbi
Acc.	tussim	turrim, em	ignem	hostem	nūbem
Voc.	tussis	turris	ignis	hostis	nūbēs
Abl.	tussi	turri, e	igni, e	hoste	nūbe

PLURAL.

Nom.	tussēs	turrēs	ignēs	hostēs	nūbēs
Gen.	tussium	turrium	ignium	hostium	nūbium
Dat.	tussibus	turribus	ignibus	hostibus	nūbibus
Acc.	tussēs, is	turrēs, is	ignēs, is	hostēs, is	nūbēs, is
Voc.	tussēs	turrēs	ignēs	hostēs	nūbēs
Abl.	tussibus	turribus	ignibus	hostibus	nūbibus

I. PARADIGMS. — Observe —

1. That the stems are *tussi*, *turri*, *igni*, *hosti*, and *nūbi*.2. That the case-endings, including the characteristic *i*, which disappears in certain cases, are as follows:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. is, ĕs	ēs
Gen. is	ium
Dat. i	ibus
Acc. im, em	ēs, is
Voc. is	ēs
Abl. i, e	ibus

¹ That is, having as many syllables in the Nominative Singular as in the Genitive Singular.

63. STEMS ENDING IN **I**.—*Neuters in e, al, and ar.*Mare, *sea*.Animal, *animal*.Calcar, *spur*.

SINGULAR.			CASE-ENDINGS.
<i>Nom.</i> mare	animal	calcar	e— ¹
<i>Gen.</i> maris	animālis	calcāris	is
<i>Dat.</i> marī	animālī	calcārī	ī
<i>Acc.</i> mare	animal	calcar	e—
<i>Voc.</i> mare	animal	calcar	e—
<i>Abl.</i> marī	animālī	calcārī	ī
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i> maria	animālia	calcāria	ia
<i>Gen.</i> marium	animālium	calcārium	ium
<i>Dat.</i> maribus	animālibus	calcāribus	ibus
<i>Acc.</i> maria	animālia	calcāria	ia
<i>Voc.</i> maria	animālia	calcāria	ia
<i>Abl.</i> maribus	animālibus	calcāribus	ibus

1. PARADIGMS. — Observe—

1) That the stem-ending *i* is changed to *e* in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of *mare*, and dropped in the same cases of *animal* (for *animāle*) and *calcar* (for *calcāre*).

2) That the case-endings include the characteristic *i*.

64. STEMS ENDING IN **I**.—*Nouns in s and x generally preceded by a consonant.*

	Clīens, M. & F., <i>client.</i>	Urbs, F., <i>city.</i>	Arx, F., <i>citadel.</i>	Mūs, ² M., <i>mouse.</i>
SINGULAR.				
<i>Nom.</i>	clīens	urbs	arx	mūs
<i>Gen.</i>	clīentis ³	urbis	arcis	mūris
<i>Dat.</i>	clīentī	urbī	arci	mūrī
<i>Acc.</i>	clīentem	urbem	arcem	mūrem
<i>Voc.</i>	clīens	urbs	arx	mūs
<i>Abl.</i>	clīente	urbe	arce	mūre

¹ The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting.

² *Clīens* is for *clīentis*, *urbs* for *urbis*, *arx* for *arcis*, and *mūs* for *mūsis*. *Mūs*, originally an *s*-stem, Greek *mūs*, became an *i*-stem in Latin by assuming *i*.

³ The vowel *e* is here short before *nt*, but long before *ns*; see p. 9, 16, note 2. Indeed, it seems probable that *nt* and *nd* shorten a preceding vowel, as *ns* lengthens it.

PLURAL.				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>clientēs</i>	<i>urbēs</i>	<i>arcēs</i>	<i>mūrēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>clientium</i>	<i>urbium</i>	<i>arcium</i>	<i>mūrium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>clientibus</i>	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>arcibus</i>	<i>mūribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>clientēs, is</i>	<i>urbēs, is</i>	<i>arcēs, is</i>	<i>mūrēs, is</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>clientēs</i>	<i>urbēs</i>	<i>arcēs</i>	<i>mūrēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>clientibus</i>	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>arcibus</i>	<i>mūribus</i>

I. PARADIGMS. — Observe —

- 1) That the stems are *clienti*, *urbi*, *arci*, and *mūri*.
- 2) That these nouns are declined in the singular precisely like consonant-stems, and in the plural precisely like all other masculine and feminine *i*-stems.

65. SUMMARY OF I-STEMS. — To I-stems belong —

1. All nouns in **is** and **ēs** which do not increase¹ in the Genitive; see 63, 62.
2. Neuters in **e**, **al** (for *ālis*), and **ar** (for *āris*); see 63, 63.
3. Many nouns in **s** and **x** — especially (1) nouns in **ns** and **rs**, and (2) monosyllables in **s** and **x** preceded by a consonant; see 63, 64.

66, 4. LOCATIVE. — Many names of towns have a Locative Singular in **i** or **e** denoting the place in which (11, 46, 4). *Karthāginī* or *Karthāgine*, at Carthage, *Tīburi* or *Tibure*, at Tibur.

LESSON XXV.

GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSION. — RULE XXXIII. — EXERCISES.

64. Lesson from the Grammar.

GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSION.

99. Nouns in the third declension ending in

ŏ, or, **ōs**, **er**, and in **ēs** and **es**

increasing in the Genitive,¹ are masculine: *sermō*, discourse; *dolor*, pain; *mōs*, custom; *agger*, mound; *pēs*, Genitive *pedis*, foot.

¹ That is, have no more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative.

105. Nouns of the third declension ending in

ās, as, is, ys, x, in ēs

not increasing in the Genitive, and in **s** preceded by a consonant, are feminine: *aetās*, age; *nāvis*, ship; *chlamys*, cloak; *pāx*, peace; *nūbēs*, cloud; *urbs*, city.

111. Nouns of the third declension ending in

a, e, ī, y, c, l, n, t, ār, ar, ur, ūs, and us

are neuter: ¹ *poēma*, poem; *mare*, sea; *lāc*, milk; *animal*, animal; *carmen*, song; *caput*, head; *corpus*, body.

65. Examine the following examples.

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Apud concilium. | In the presence of THE COUNCIL. |
| 2. Post castra. | Behind THE CAMP. |
| 3. Ab urbe. | From THE CITY. |
| 4. Prō castris. | Before THE CAMP. |

NOTE. — Observe that in the first and second of these examples, the nouns after the prepositions *apud* and *post* are in the Accusative, and that in the third and fourth the nouns after *ab* and *prō* are in the Ablative. This general usage is expressed in the following

RULE XXXIII. — Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with prepositions: ²

¹ Nouns whose gender is determined by Signification (1. 42) may be exceptions to these rules for gender as determined by Endings.

² The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relation of objects to each other: *apud iudicem dixit*, 'he spoke in the presence of the judge'; *prō castris*, 'before the camp.' Here *apud* and *prō* are prepositions. In the Vocabulary, each preposition, as it occurs, will be marked as such; and the case which may be used with it will be specified. The following examples illustrate the use of prepositions: *in Asiam profūgit*, he fled into Asia; *in Italiā fuit*, he was in Italy; *sub montem*, toward the mountain; *sub monte*, at the foot of the mountain; *ad urbem*, to the city; *apud concilium*, in the presence of the council; *contrā naturam*, contrary to nature; *ab urbe*, from the city; *ex Asiā*, out of Asia.

Ad amicum scripsi, *I have written to a friend.* Cic. In cūriam, *into the senate-house.* Liv. In Italiā,¹ *in Italy.* Nep. Prō castris, *before the camp.* Caes.

66. Vocabulary.

Aedificat,	he builds.
Ante, <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	before.
Apud, <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	in the presence of, among, in ; of an author, in the works of.
Caesar, aris, m.	Caesar, the celebrated Roman statesman and general.
Civis, civis, m. ²	citizen.
Civitās, ātis, f.	state.
Contrā, <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	against, contrary to.
Habitat,	he resides, lives, dwells.
Hostis, is, m. and f.	enemy.
In, <i>prep. w. acc. and abl.</i>	into, in.
Lūx, lūcis, f.	light.
Multus, a, um,	much, many.
Nāvis, is, f. ³	ship.
Oppūgnat,	he assaults, attacks, storms.
Patria, ae, f.	native country.
Prō, <i>prep. w. abl.</i>	for, before.
Pūgnat,	he fights.
Rōmulus, ī, m.	Romulus, the legendary founder
Superat,	he conquers. [of Rome.

67. Translate into English.

1. Cīvēs rēgem laudant. 2. Rēx cīvēs laudat. 3. Puer leōnem timēbit. 4. Leō puerum terret. 5. Urbs est māgna. 6. Estne pulchra? 7. Est pulchra. 8. Rēx hostēs superābit. 9. Caesar multās navēs habēbat. 10. Apud Herodotum sunt fābulae. 11. Apud Herodotum, patrem historiae, sunt multae fābulae. 12. Militēs prō patriā pūgnābant. 13.

¹ Here the Ablative *Italiā* is used with *in*, though, in the second example, the Accusative *cūriam* is used with the same preposition. The rule is, that the Latin preposition *in* is used with the Accusative when it means *into*, and that it is used with the Ablative when it means *in*.

² Decline *civis* like *ignis*; *nāvis* like *turris*.

³ See Rule XXXIII., 432.

Militēs prō libertāte pūgnant. 14. Cīvis bonus lēgibus patriae pāret.

15. Cōsul in urbe habitābat. 16. Hostēs urbem oppūgnābant. 17. Rēx urbēs multās oppūgnābit. 18. Caesar hostēs superābat. 19. Cōsul virtūtem hostium timēbat. 20. Militēs cōsulibus pārēbunt. 21. Caesar turrīm oppūgnābat. 22. Rēx turrēs oppūgnābit. 23. Hostēs arcem oppūgnābunt. 24. Hostēs nāvēs multās habent. 25. Caesarī pūgnam nūntiant. 26. Cīvēs bonī lēgibus pārent. 27. Cōsulēs virtūtem hostium timent.

68. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The consul was attacking the tower. 2. He had (*was having*) many soldiers. 3. The king had a beautiful ship. 4. The consul had many ships. 5. The ships of the consul were large. 6. The commander destroyed the city. 7. He destroyed the city contrary to the law.¹ 8. Caesar conquers the king. 9. The citizens praise the law. 10. They praise the laws. 11. They praise the laws of the state. 12. The judge will obey the laws. 13. The citizens will obey the laws of the state. 14. The consul was building a large ship.

15. The citizens will build many ships. 16. The king has a good ship. 17. The soldiers were fighting for liberty. 18. The consul will attack the city. 19. He will conquer the enemy. 20. The conqueror is in the city. 21. The father of the king resides in the city. 22. The father of the good queen will reside in the city. 23. Good citizens will fight for their country. 24. The soldiers of the good king were assaulting many cities of the enemy.

¹ See 65, Rule XXXIII. The words *contrary to* are to be rendered by a single Latin preposition. We have already learned that the English prepositions *of*, *to*, *by*, *with*, etc., may generally be rendered into Latin without prepositions by simply using the proper case; but many prepositions, as *before*, *between*, *behind*, *around*, *contrary to*, must be rendered by corresponding prepositions.

LESSON XXVI.

CERTAIN FORMS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

69. In verbs of the THIRD CONJUGATION, the THIRD PERSON in the *singular* and *plural* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* mood has the following

ENDINGS.		
PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
<i>Singular, it</i>	<i>ēbat</i>	<i>et</i>
<i>Plural, unt</i>	<i>ēbant</i>	<i>ent</i>

PARADIGM.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres. regit, he rules ;</i>	<i>regunt, they rule.</i>
<i>Imp. regēbat, he was ruling ;</i>	<i>regēbant, they were ruling.</i>
<i>Fut. reget, he will rule ;</i>	<i>regent, they will rule.</i>

70. Examples. — Adverbs.

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Miles pugnat. | <i>The soldier fights.</i> |
| 2. Miles fortiter pugnat. | <i>The soldier fights BRAVELY.</i> |
| 3. Miles nōn pugnat. | <i>The soldier does NOT fight.</i> |

NOTE. — In these examples *fortiter* (bravely), and *nōn* (not) are adverbs modifying *pugnat*. The use of adverbs is expressed in the following

RULE LXI. — Use of Adverbs.

551. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS :

*Sapientēs feliciter*¹ *vivunt, the wise live happily.* Cic. *Facile doctissimus, unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. *Haud aliter, not otherwise.* Verg.

¹ The Adverb is, therefore, the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. *Feliciter*, 'happily,' is an adverb qualifying the verb *vivunt*, 'live' (live happily). *Facile*, 'easily,' 'unquestionably,' is an adverb qualifying the adjective *doctissimus*, 'the most learned' (easily, i.e. unquestionably the most learned). *Haud*, 'not,' is an adverb qualifying the adverb *aliter*, 'otherwise' (not otherwise). The adverb in Latin usually stands directly before the word which it qualifies, as in these examples.

71. Adverbs, unlike Nouns and Adjectives, from which they are largely derived, are *indeclinable*. They have a variety of endings, of which we now notice *e*, *o*, and *ter*: *modestē*, 'modestly'; *saepe*, 'often'; *tūtō*, 'safely'; *fortiter*, 'bravely.'

72. Vocabulary.

Ad, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>to.</i>
Breviter, <i>adv.</i>	<i>briefly.</i>
Dē, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>about, concerning, in regard to.</i>
Dicit,	<i>he says, speaks.</i>
Diligenter, <i>adv.</i>	<i>attentively, diligently.</i>
Dūcit,	<i>he leads.</i>
Fēliciter, <i>adv.</i>	<i>happily.</i>
Fortiter, <i>adv.</i>	<i>bravely.</i>
Lēgātus, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>ambassador; lieutenant.</i>
Legit,	<i>he reads.</i>
Mittit,	<i>he sends.</i>
Modestē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>modestly.</i>
Nōn, <i>adv.</i>	<i>not.</i>
Numerus, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>number.</i>
Ōrātiō, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>oration, speech.</i>
Regit,	<i>he rules.</i>
Saepe, <i>adv.</i>	<i>often.</i>
Scribit,	<i>he writes.</i>
Simpliciter, <i>adv.</i>	<i>simply.</i>
Vērum, <i>i, n.</i>	<i>truth.</i>
Vivit,	<i>he lives.</i>

73. Translate into English.

1. Dicit, dicēbant, dicet. 2. Legunt, legēbat, legent. 3. Dicunt, scribunt. 4. Dicēbat, scribēbat. 5. Dicent, scribent. 6. Dūcit, dūcēbat, dūcet. 7. Regunt, regēbat, regent. 8. Cōsul modestē dicēbat. 9. Puerī modestē dicunt. 10. Rēx breviter dicet. 11. Cōsulēs breviter dicunt. 12. Jūdex fēliciter vivit. 13. Cīvēs fēliciter vivēbant. 14. Pāstōrēs simpliciter vivunt.

15. Jūdex librum legēbat. 16. Jūdicēs ōrātiōnēs Cicerōnis legēbant. 17. Jūdicēs bonī ōrātiōnēs Cicerōnis cōsulis

diligenter legēbant. 18. Epistulās cōsulis diligenter legent. 19. Hostēs lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt. 20. Hostēs lēgātōs ad rēgem mittent. 21. Militēs fortiter pūgnābant. 22. Cōsul amīcōs multōs habēbat. 23. Cōsul māgnūm amīcōrum numerum habēbat.

74. Translate into Latin.

1. He leads, he was leading, he will lead. 2. He rules, he was ruling, he will rule. 3. They lead, they rule. 4. They were leading, they were ruling. 5. They will lead, they will rule. 6. The judge will speak the truth. 7. They speak the truth. 8. They will speak modestly. 9. Cicero was writing to a friend. 10. The boys will write often. 11. Cicero was writing about friendship.

12. The king is writing a book. 13. He will write many books. 14. The boy is writing about virtue. 15. The boys will write about the victory. 16. The king lives happily. 17. The father of the good queen was living happily. 18. He was reading a good book. 19. The boys will read good books. 20. Caesar sends an ambassador to the enemy. 21. The king will send ambassadors to the enemy.

LESSON XXVII.

CERTAIN FORMS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION. — PERFECT TENSE.

75. In verbs of the FOURTH CONJUGATION, the THIRD PERSON in the *singular* and *plural* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* mood has the following

ENDINGS.

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
<i>Singular,</i>	it	iēbat	iet
<i>Plural,</i>	iunt	iēbant	ient

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Pres. audit, *he hears;*audiunt, *they hear.**Imp.* audiēbat, *he was hearing;*audiēbant, *they were hearing.**Fut.* audiet, *he will hear;*audient, *they will hear.*

76. In verbs of the FOUR CONJUGATIONS, the THIRD PERSON in the *singular* and *plural* of the *perfect* tense of the *indicative* mood has the following

ENDINGS.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Conf. I. āvit

āvērunt

Conf. II. uit

uērunt

Conf. III. sit

sērunt

Conf. IV. ivit

ivērunt

PARADIGM.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

I. amāvī¹t, *he has loved;*amāvērunt, *they have loved.¹*II. monuī¹t, *he has advised;*monuērunt, *they have advised.*III. rēxī²t, *he has ruled;*rēxērunt,² *they have ruled.*IV. audivī¹t, *he has heard;*audivērunt, *they have heard.*

77. In the verb *Sum*, the THIRD PERSON in the *singular* and *plural* of the *perfect* tense of the *indicative* mood has the following forms:

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

fuit, *he has been, he was;*fuērunt, *they have been, they were.*

78. Examples. — Ablative.

1. Virtute rēgnum tenuit. *He obtained the kingdom BY MERIT.*
2. Oppidum vallō munivit. *He fortified the town BY MEANS OF A RAMPART.*

NOTE. — Observe in these examples that *virtute*, 'by merit,' and *vallō*, 'by means of a rampart,' are both in the *Ablative*. This Latin idiom is expressed in the following

¹ Or *he loved, they loved.* ² *Rēxit—rēg-sit, rēxerunt=rēg-sērunt; p. 3, 30.*

RULE XXV.—Ablative of Means.

420. INSTRUMENT and MEANS are denoted by the Ablative:

Cornibus tauri se tütantur, bulls defend themselves WITH THEIR HORNS. Cic. *Glöriä dücitur*, he is led BY GLORY. Cic. *Sol omnia lüce collustrat*, the sun illumines all things with its light. Cic. *Lacte vivunt*, they live upon milk. Caes. *Tellüs saucia vomeribus*, the earth turned (wounded) with the ploughshare. Ovid.

LESSON XXVIII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION AND PERFECT TENSE.—
EXERCISES.

79. Vocabulary.

<i>Altus</i> , a, um,	high.
<i>Artë</i> , adv.	closely, soundly.
<i>Castra</i> , örüm, n. pl.	camp.
<i>Cüstödit</i> , 4, ¹	he guards.
<i>Discipulus</i> , i, m.	learner, pupil.
<i>Dormit</i> , 4,	he sleeps.
<i>Erudit</i> , 4,	he instructs.
<i>Fossa</i> , ae, f.	ditch, moat.
<i>Fugitivus</i> , i, m.	runaway, deserter. [to France.
<i>Gallia</i> , ae, f.	Gaul, a country nearly corresponding
<i>Helvétii</i> , örüm, m. pl.	the Helvetii or Helvetians, a people of
<i>Legiö</i> , önis, f.	legion. [Switzerland.
<i>Münit</i> , 4,	he fortifies.
<i>Mürus</i> , i, m.	wall.
<i>Posteä</i> , adv.	afterward.
<i>Püгна</i> , ae, f.	fight, battle.
<i>Römānus</i> , i, m.	Roman.
<i>Sermö</i> , önis, m.	discourse, conversation.
<i>Vallum</i> , i, n.	rampart.
<i>Vöx</i> , vöcis, f.	voice.

¹ As the ending of the third person singular of the present indicative is the same in the fourth conjugation as in the third, verbs of the fourth conjugation for the present will be distinguished in the vocabularies by the numeral 4.

80. *Translate into English.*

1. Audiunt, audiēbat, audient, audīvit. 2. Ērudit, ērudīebant, ērudiet, ērudīvērunt. 3. Mūnit, cūstōdit, cūstōdient, mūnient. 4. Puerī dormiēbant. 5. Puer artē dormiēbat. 6. Pāstōrēs artē dormiunt. 7. Militēs artē dormīvērunt. 8. Militēs arcem mūniēbant. 9. Caesar castra mūnīvit. 10. Legiōnēs castra mūniēbant. 11. Hostēs fortiter pūgnāvērunt. 12. Hostēs urbem oppūgnāvērunt. 13. Jūdex bonus tyrannum timuit. 14. Cīvēs Pīstratum tyrannum timuērunt.

15. Hostēs urbem mūrō mūniēbant. 16. Cōsul urbem mūrō altō mūnīvit. 17. Rōmānī Helvētiōs superāvērunt. 18. Militēs castra fossā mūniēbant. 19. Caesar castra vallō mūnīvit. 20. Fugitivī hostibus pūgnam nūntiāvērunt. 21. Rōmānī postea hostēs superāvērunt. 22. Caesar in Galliā fuit. 23. Hostēs nāvēs multās habuērunt. 24. Cicerō cōsul epistulās multās scribit. 25. Cōsul vōcēs militum audīvit. 26. Puerī sermōnem dē amīcitiā audient.

81. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He hears, he guards. 2. They hear, they guard. 3. He was hearing, they were sleeping. 4. He was sleeping, they were hearing. 5. He will hear, they will hear. 6. They have slept, they have heard. 7. The boys heard the oration. 8. The pupils heard the conversation. 9. They did not hear the oration. 10. The citizens are fortifying the city. 11. They will guard the beautiful city. 12. The soldiers will guard the city. 13. They will guard the temple.

14. The shepherd was sleeping soundly. 15. The shepherds will sleep soundly. 16. Caesar heard the voice of the soldier. 17. Caesar hears the voices of the soldiers. 18. The soldier heard the voice of Caesar. 19. They heard the conversation in regard to the consul. 20. Caesar was fortifying the camp with a rampart. 21. The soldiers will fortify the camp with a moat.

LESSON XXIX.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

82. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

152. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes :

I. Those which have in the Nominative Singular three different forms—one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms—the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form—the same for all genders.

153. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS in this declension have the stem in **i**, and are declined as follows :

Ācer, sharp.¹			
	SINGULAR.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer ²	ācris	ācre
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Voc.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
PLURAL.			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrēs, is	ācrēs, is	ācria
<i>Voc.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

¹ ĀCER is declined like *ignis* in the Masc. and Fem., and like *mare* (63, 63) in the Neut., except in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. Masc., and in the Abl. Sing.

² These forms in *er* are like those in *er* of Decl. II. in dropping the ending in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., and in developing final *r* into *er* : ācer for ācris, stem ācri.

154. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS are declined as follows :

*Tristis, sad.*¹

*Tristior, sadder.*¹

SINGULAR.

	M. AND F.	NEUT.		M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	<i>tristis</i>	<i>triste</i>		<i>tristior</i>	<i>tristius</i>
Gen.	<i>tristis</i>	<i>tristis</i>		<i>tristiōris</i>	<i>tristiōris</i>
Dat.	<i>tristi</i>	<i>tristi</i>		<i>tristiōri</i>	<i>tristiōri</i>
Acc.	<i>tristem</i>	<i>triste</i>		<i>tristiōrem</i>	<i>tristius</i>
Voc.	<i>tristis</i>	<i>triste</i>		<i>tristior</i>	<i>tristius</i>
Abl.	<i>tristi</i>	<i>tristi</i>		<i>tristiōre (i)</i> ²	<i>tristiōre (i)</i>
PLURAL.					
Nom.	<i>tristēs</i>	<i>tristia</i>		<i>tristiōrēs</i>	<i>tristiōra</i>
Gen.	<i>tristium</i>	<i>tristium</i>		<i>tristiōrum</i>	<i>tristiōrum</i>
Dat.	<i>tristibus</i>	<i>tristibus</i>		<i>tristiōribus</i>	<i>tristiōribus</i>
Acc.	<i>tristēs, is</i>	<i>tristia</i>		<i>tristiōrēs (is)</i>	<i>tristiōra</i>
Voc.	<i>tristēs</i>	<i>tristia</i>		<i>tristiōrēs</i>	<i>tristiōra</i>
Abl.	<i>tristibus</i>	<i>tristibus</i>		<i>tristiōribus</i>	<i>tristiōribus</i>

83. Vocabulary.

Ācer, ācris, ācre,	sharp, severe.
Aetās, ātis, f.	age.
Cōpia, ae, f.	abundance, supply.
Crūdēlis, e,	cruel.
Fertilis, e,	fertile.
Fortis, e,	brave.
Gallus, i, m.	Gaul.
Germānus, i, m.	German.
Incolit,	he inhabits.
Inūtilis, e,	useless.
Nāvālis, e,	naval.
Occupat,	he seizes, takes possession of.
Omnis, e,	all.
Pābulum, i, n.	fodder.
Per, prep. w. acc.	through, on account of, by means
Post, prep. with acc.	after. [of, by, during, for.
Singulāris, e,	remarkable, singular.
Timor, ōris, m.	fear.
Ūtilis, e,	useful.

¹ *Tristis* and *triste* are declined like *ācris* and *ācre*. *Tristior* is the comparative of *tristis*.

² Enclosed endings are rare.

84. *Translate into English.*

1. Civis est fortis. 2. Cīvēs fortēs erunt. 3. Rēx est beātus. 4. Estne fortis? 5. Fortis est. 6. Librī sunt ūtilēs. 7. Gallia fertilis erat. 8. Cīvēs fortiter pūgnant. 9. Fertilēs agrōs habent. 10. Verba sunt ūtilia. 11. Lēx ācris est. 12. Lēgēs ācrēs sunt. 13. Miles est fortis. 14. Militēs sunt fortēs. 15. Cōsul virtūtem militis fortis laudat. 16. Cōsul est ōrātor.

17. Catō māgnus imperātor est. 18. Timor omnēs militēs occupāvit. 19. Timor omnēs hostēs occupābit. 20. Gallī fortēs sunt. 21. Caesar Gallōs fortēs superāvit. 22. Germānī agrōs fertilēs incolunt. 23. Pābulī cōpia in agrīs fertilibus erat. 24. Lēgēs sunt ūtilēs. 25. Cīvēs boni lēgibus ūtilibus pārent. 26. Jūdicēs per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs erant. 27. Timor omnēs cīvēs occupābit. 28. Agrī Gallōrum fertilēs erant. 29. Miles verba ducis fortis audit.

85. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will the brave leader obey the words of the consul? 2. He will obey the words of the consul. 3. Is he a good commander? 4. He is a good commander. 5. He is brave. 6. Will not the books be useful? 7. They will be useful. 8. The leaders of the soldiers are brave. 9. The brother of the consul is a brave soldier. 10. The brother of the king was a severe judge. 11. The brother of the orator will be a severe judge.

12. The brave soldiers were guarding the camp. 13. The soldiers will be brave. 14. They will all be brave. 15. Caesar praised the brave soldiers. 16. The soldiers will hear the words of the brave leader. 17. The field is fertile. 18. The fields are fertile. 19. Fear is taking possession of all the citizens. 20. There will be an abundance of fodder in the fields of the Germans.

¹ Genitive according to Rule XVI.

LESSON XXX.

ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

86. Lesson from the Grammar.

155. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING generally end in *s* or *x*, but sometimes in *l* or *r*.

156. Audāx, *audacious*.¹

Fēlix, *happy*.¹

		SINGULAR.	
M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> audāx	audāx	fēlix	fēlix
<i>Gen.</i> audācis	audācis	fēlicis	fēlicis
<i>Dat.</i> audāci	audāci	fēlici	fēlici
<i>Acc.</i> audācem	audāx	fēlicem	fēlix
<i>Voc.</i> audāx	audāx	fēlix	fēlix
<i>Abl.</i> audāci (e)	audāci (e)	fēlici (e)	fēlici (e)
		PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i> audācēs	audācia	fēlicēs	fēlicia
<i>Gen.</i> audācium	audācium	fēlicium	fēlicium
<i>Dat.</i> audācibus	audācibus	fēlicibus	fēlicibus
<i>Acc.</i> audācēs (is)	audācia	fēlicēs (is)	fēlicia
<i>Voc.</i> audācēs	audācia	fēlicēs	fēlicia
<i>Abl.</i> audācibus	audācibus	fēlicibus	fēlicibus

157. Amāns, *loving*.

Prūdēns, *prudent*.

		SINGULAR.	
M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> amāns	amāns	prūdēns	prūdēns
<i>Gen.</i> amantis	amantis ²	prudentis	prudentis ²
<i>Dat.</i> amanti	amanti	prudenti	prudenti
<i>Acc.</i> amantem	amāns	prudentem	prūdēns
<i>Voc.</i> amāns	amāns	prūdēns	prūdēns
<i>Abl.</i> amante (i)	amante (i)	prudenti (e)	prudenti (e)

¹ Observe that *i* in the Ablative Singular, and *ia*, *ium*, and *is* in the Plural, are the regular case-endings for *i*-stems. See 63.

² According to Ritschl, Schmitz, and others, the *e* which is long in *prūdēns* before *ns* is short in all other forms of the word, i.e. before *nt*. In the same manner the *a* which is long in *amāns*, is according to Ritschl short in *amantis*, *amanti*, etc.

PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i> amantēs	amantia	prudentēs	prudentia
<i>Gen.</i> amantium	amantium	prudentium	prudentium
<i>Dat.</i> amantibus	amantibus	prudentibus	prudentibus
<i>Acc.</i> amantēs (Is)	amantia	prudentēs (Is)	prudentia
<i>Voc.</i> amantēs	amantia	prudentēs	prudentia
<i>Abl.</i> amantibus	amantibus	prudentibus	prudentibus

NOTE. — The participle *amāns* differs in declension from the adjective *prūdēns* only in the Ablative Singular, where the participle usually has the ending *e*, and the adjective, *ī*.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms, called the Positive degree, the Comparative, and the Superlative: *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*,¹ high, higher, highest. These forms denote different degrees of the quality expressed by the adjective.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison:

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON, by endings.

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON, by adverbs.

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
ior	ior	ius	issimus	issima	issimum

Altus, *altior*, *altissimus*: *high*, *higher*, *highest*.

Levis, *levior*, *levissimus*: *light*, *lighter*, *lightest*.

1. VOWEL STEMS lose their final vowel: *alto*, *altior*, *altissimus*.

¹ Each of these forms of the adjective is declined. Thus *altus* and *altissimus* are declined like *bonus*, 39, 148: *altus*, *a*, *um*; *altī*, *ae*, *ī*, etc.; *altissimus*, *a*, *um*; *altissimī*, *ae*, *ī*, etc. *Altior* is declined like *tristior*, 82, 154; *altior*, *altius*; *altioris*, etc.

165. The following are compared irregularly:

bonus,	melior,	optimus,	<i>good, better, best.</i>
magnus,	māior,	māximus,	<i>great, greater, greatest.</i>
parvus,	minor,	minimus,	<i>small, smaller, smallest.</i>

166. POSITIVE WANTING.

citerior,	citimus,	<i>nearer,</i>	prior,	primus,	<i>former,</i>
dēterior,	dēterrīmus,	<i>worse,</i>	propior,	prōximus,	<i>nearer,</i>
interior,	intimus,	<i>inner,</i>	ulterior,	ūltimus,	<i>farther.</i>
ōcior,	ōcissimus,	<i>swifter,</i>			

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs, *magis*, more, and *māximē*, most, to the positive:

Arduus, magis arduus, māximē arduus.

Arduous, more arduous, most arduous.

LESSON XXXI.

THIRD DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES. — COMPARISON. — EXERCISES.

87. Examples. — Comparison.

1. Aurum gravius est *quam* argentum. *Gold is heavier THAN SILVER.*
2. Aurum argentō gravius est. *Gold is heavier THAN SILVER.*

NOTE. — Observe (1) that in the first example, the Latin construction is the same as the English, and that the two nouns compared, *aurum* and *argentum*, are in the same case, i.e. in the Nominative, and (2) that in the second example *quam* is omitted, and that the second noun is put in the *Ablative*. This Latin idiom is expressed in the following

RULE XXIII. — Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without *QUAM* are followed by the *Ablative*:

Nihil est amābilius virtūte,¹ *nothing is more lovely THAN VIRTUE.*
 Cic. Quid est melius bonitāte,¹ *what is better THAN GOODNESS?* Cic.
 Scimus sōlem majōrem esse terrā,¹ *we know that the sun is larger than the earth.* Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them:

Hibernia minor quam Britannia existimātur, *Ireland is considered smaller than BRITAIN.* Caes. Agris quam urbi terribilior, *more terrible to the country than TO THE CITY.* Liv.

NOTE. — Conjunctions are mere connectives, and are without inflection. Quam is a conjunction.

88. Comparison of Adverbs.

Most adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison. The comparative is the accusative neuter singular of the adjective, and the superlative changes the ending **us** of the adjective into long **ē**:

altus,	altior,	altissimus,	loftly.
altē,	altius,	altissimē,	loftily.
prūdēns,	prūdentior,	prūdentissimus,	prudent.
prūdenter,	prūdentius,	prūdentissimē,	prudently.

89. Vocabulary.

Aquilēia, ae, f.	Aquileia, a town in north-eastern Italy.
Ariovistus, i, m.	Ariovistus, a German king.
Aurum, i, n.	gold.
Belgae, ārum, m. pl.	the Belgae, or Belgians, a people of
Circum, prep. w. acc.	around, in the vicinity of. [Gaul.
Clārus, a, um,	clear, illustrious.
Cōnsilium, ii, n.	counsel, plan.
Divitiacus, i, m.	Divitiacus, a chieftain of the Aedui in
Duplex, duplicis,	double. [Gaul.
Fēlix, fēlicis,	happy, fortunate.
Hannibal, alis, m.	Hannibal, a Carthaginian general.
Hiemat,	he winters, passes the winter.
Homō, hominis, m. and f.	man, human being, person.

¹ Virtūte = quam virtūs; bonitāte = quam bonitās; terrā = quam terram (sc. esse).

Infelix, infelicis,	unhappy, unfortunate.
Labiēnus, i, m.	Labiēnus, an officer in Caesar's army in
Potēns, potentis,	powerful. [Gaul.
Pretiōsus, a, um,	precious, valuable.
Quam, conj.	than.
Sapiēns, sapientis,	wise.

90. *Translate into English.*

1. Orātor est clārus. 2. Estne clārissimus? 3. Est clārissimus. 4. Orātōrēs fuērunt clārī. 5. Orātōrēs clārīōrēs¹ sunt. 6. Ōrātōrēs clārissimī erunt. 7. Cōsul fēlix erat. 8. Cōsulēs fēlicēs sunt. 9. Caesar rēgem infēlicem superāvit. 10. Caesar Ariovistum rēgem superāvit. 11. Caesar Ariovistum, infēlicem Germānōrum rēgem, superāvit. 12. Legiō circum Aquilēiam hiemābit. 13. Hannibal infēlix erat. 14. Jūdex sapiēns est. 15. Omnēs cīvēs jūdicem sapientem laudant. 16. Sapientēs hominēs cīvitatē regunt.

17. Caesar Labiēnum laudāvit. 18. Jūdex sapientior erat quam rēx. 19. Turris altior est quam mūrus. 20. Cōsiliū clārius est quam lūx. 21. Cōsiliū lūce clārius est. 22. Cōsilia omnia lūce sunt clārīōra. 23. Belgae fortissimī sunt. 24. Gallōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae. 25. Militēs nōn pūgnābunt. 26. Hostēs castra altissimō mūrō mūnīvērunt.

91. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Gold is valuable. 2. Wisdom is more valuable. 3. The king is unfortunate. 4. Is not the consul ill? 5. The consul is ill. 6. Life is precious. 7. Is not gold useful? 8. It is useful. 9. Cato was wise. 10. The Gauls were brave. 11. The Romans were braver than the Gauls. 12. The Gauls were unfortunate. 13. The Romans conquered the unfortunate Gauls. 14. King Divitiacus was very powerful. He

¹ Declined like *tristior*, 82, 154. Comparatives and superlatives, as well as positives, must agree with their nouns, according to 40 Rule XXXIV.

was the most powerful of all the chiefs. He was the most powerful of all the Gauls.

15. Virtue is more valuable than gold. 16. Wisdom is more useful than gold. 17. Virtue is better than wisdom. 18. The soldiers are braver than the general. 19. The wall will be double. 20. The enemy will fortify the city with a double wall. 21. The wall was very high. 22. The Gauls were fortifying the city with a very high wall.

LESSON XXXII.

NOUNS. — FOURTH DECLENSION. — FIFTH DECLENSION.

92. Lesson from the Grammar.

FOURTH DECLENSION: U NOUNS.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

us—*masculine*; **ū**—*neuter*.

They are declined as follows :

Fructus, *fruit*. **Cornū**, *horn*.

	SINGULAR.	CASE-ENDINGS.	
<i>Nom.</i> fruct us	corn ū	us	ū
<i>Gen.</i> fruct ūs	corn ūs	ūs	ūs
<i>Dat.</i> fruct uī , ū ¹	corn ū	uī, ū ¹	ū
<i>Acc.</i> fruct um	corn ū	um	ū
<i>Voc.</i> fruct us	corn ū	us	ū
<i>Abl.</i> fruct ū	corn ū	ū	ū
	PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i> fruct ūs	corn ua	ūs	ua
<i>Gen.</i> fruct uum	corn uum	uum	uum
<i>Dat.</i> fruct ibus	corn ibus	ibus (ubus) ²	ibus (ubus)
<i>Acc.</i> fruct ūs	corn ua	ūs	ua
<i>Voc.</i> fruct ūs	corn ua	ūs	ua
<i>Abl.</i> fruct ibus	corn ibus	ibus (ubus)	ibus (ubus)

¹ Thus *uī* is contracted into *ū*: *fructuī*, *fructū*.

² The enclosed endings occur in a few words.

1. The STEM in nouns of the fourth declension ends in **u**: *fructu*, *cornu*.

2. The CASE-ENDINGS here given contain the characteristic **u**, weakened to *i* in *ibus*, but retained in *ubus*; see p. 2, 22.

FIFTH DECLENSION: **E** NOUNS.

120. Nouns of the fifth declension end in **ēs**—*feminine*, and are declined as follows:

	Diēs, <i>day</i> . ¹	Rēs, <i>thing</i> .	
			SINGULAR.
			CASE-ENDINGS.
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēi or diē	rēi or rē	ēi, ē
<i>Dat.</i>	diēi or diē	rēi or rē	ēi, ē
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	rem	em
<i>Voc.</i>	diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	rē	ē
			PLURAL.
			CASE-ENDINGS.
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diērum	rērum	ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēbus	rēbus	ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diēbus	rēbus	ēbus

1. The STEM of nouns of the fifth declension ends in **ē**: *diē*, *rē*.

2. The CASE-ENDINGS here given contain the characteristic **ē**, which appears in all the cases. It is shortened (1) generally in the ending *ēi* when preceded by a consonant, and (2) regularly in the ending *em*.

93. Examples. — Time.

1. Urbem hōc tempore mūniunt. They are AT THIS TIME fortifying the city.

2. Sextō annō. IN THE SIXTH YEAR.

NOTE. — Observe that *hōc tempore*, 'at this time,' and *sextō annō* 'in the sixth year' are both in the *Ablative*. This Latin idiom is expressed in the following

¹ By exception, *diēs* is usually masculine in the singular, and always in the plural.

RULE XXXI. — Time.

429. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octogēsimō annō est mortuus, he died IN HIS EIGHTIETH YEAR.
Cic. Vēre convēnere, they assembled IN THE SPRING. Liv.

94. Vocabulary.

<i>Acies, aciēi, f.</i>	<i>edge, line of battle.</i>
<i>Adventus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>approach, arrival.</i>
<i>Avis, is, f.</i>	<i>bird.</i>
<i>Cantus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>singing.</i>
<i>Comparat,</i>	<i>he prepares, raises.</i>
<i>Cōspectus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>sight, view.</i>
<i>Exercitus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>army.</i>
<i>Impetus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>attack, charge. [forms the line of battle.</i>
<i>Īnstruit,</i>	<i>he constructs, draws up; aciem ĩnstruit, he</i>
<i>Magistrātus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>magistrate, magistracy. [ibus, in hand.</i>
<i>Manus, ūs, f.¹</i>	<i>hand, a band of soldiers, a force; in man-</i>
<i>Militāris, e,</i>	<i>military; rēs militāris, military affairs.</i>
<i>Occāsus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>setting; sōlis occāsus, sunset.</i>
<i>Portus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>port, harbor.</i>
<i>Posterus, a, um,</i>	<i>following, next.</i>
<i>Redūcit,</i>	<i>he leads back.</i>
<i>Spēs, spēi, f.</i>	<i>hope.</i>
<i>Tenet,</i>	<i>he holds.</i>
<i>Ūsus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>use, usage, experience.</i>

95. Translate into English.

1. Rēx exercitum comparābat. 2. Aciem ĩnstruēbat. 3. Tenetne portum?² 4. Portum tenēbit. 5. Impetum timēbat. 6. Opus est māgnum. 7. Timor exercitum occupābat. 8. Portus est bonus. 9. Labiēnus in exercitū³ Caesaris fuit. 10. Hannibal exercitum māgnum in Italiam dūxit. 11. Caesar exercitūs māgnōs comparāvit. 12. In cōspēctū hostium erat.

¹ Feminine by exception.

² *Tenetne* = *tenet* and interrogative particle *-ne*.

³ See page 58, foot-note 1.

13. Puer cantum avis audiēbat. 14. Puerī cantūs avium audient. 15. Cōsul hostium exercitum nōn timēbat. 16. Cicerō cōsul opus māgnū in manibus habēbat. 17. Hostēs portum tenēbant. 18. Caesar aciem instruet. 19. Posterō diē aciem instruēbat. 20. Posterō diē in cōspectū hostium aciem instruēbat. 21. Postea exercitum in castra redūxit. 22. Ariovistus sōlis occāsū exercitum in castra redūxit. 23. Hostēs adventum Caesaris expectābant. 24. Timor omnem exercitum occupāvit.

96. *Translate into Latin.*

1. At sunset fear seized the army. 2. The next day Caesar conquered the king. 3. The consul will hold the harbor. 4. He has a large army. 5. Will he fortify the harbor? 6. He is fortifying the harbor. 7. Does he expect an attack? 8. He expects an attack. 9. The commander fears the attack of the enemy. 10. The soldiers will fight in sight of the commander. 11. The pupil is writing about the army. 12. The girl hears the singing of the bird.

13. Fear will take possession of the army. 14. Caesar led a large army into Gaul. 15. Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, had a large army in Gaul. 16. The consul will hold the harbor. 17. He was awaiting the approach of Ariovistus, the king of the Germans. 18. The consul has large experience in military affairs. 19. The soldiers of Ariovistus did not have large experience in military affairs.

LESSON XXXIII.

NUMERALS.

97. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS :¹ *ūnus*, one ; *duo*, two.
2. ORDINAL NUMBERS :¹ *primus*, first ; *secundus*, second.
3. DISTRIBUTIVES :¹ *singulī*, one by one ; *binī*, two by two.

174. PARTIAL TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES :

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
1. <i>ūnus</i> , <i>ūna</i> , <i>ūnum</i> , <i>one</i>	<i>primus</i> , <i>first</i>	<i>singulī</i> , <i>one by one</i>
2. <i>duo</i> , <i>duae</i> , <i>duo</i> , <i>two</i>	<i>secundus</i> , <i>second</i>	<i>binī</i> , <i>two by two</i> ²
3. <i>trēs</i> , <i>tria</i> , <i>three</i>	<i>tertius</i> , <i>third</i>	<i>ternī</i> (<i>trinī</i>), <i>three by three</i>
4. <i>quattuor</i> , <i>four</i>	<i>quārtus</i> , <i>fourth</i>	<i>quaternī</i> , <i>four by four</i>
5. <i>quinque</i> , <i>five</i>	<i>quintus</i> , <i>fifth</i>	<i>quinī</i> , <i>five by five</i>
6. <i>sex</i> , <i>six</i>	<i>sextus</i> , <i>sixth</i>	<i>senī</i> , <i>six by six</i>
7. <i>septem</i> , <i>seven</i>	<i>septimus</i> , <i>seventh</i>	<i>septēnī</i> , <i>seven by seven</i>
8. <i>octo</i> , <i>eight</i>	<i>octāvus</i> , <i>eighth</i>	<i>octōnī</i> , <i>eight by eight</i>
9. <i>novem</i> , <i>nine</i>	<i>nonus</i> , <i>ninth</i>	<i>novēnī</i> , <i>nine by nine</i>
10. <i>decem</i> , <i>ten</i>	<i>decimus</i> , <i>tenth</i>	<i>denī</i> , <i>ten by ten</i>

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

175. *Ūnus*, *Duo*, and *Trēs* are declined as follows :*Ūnus*, *one*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnae</i>	<i>ūna</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnōrum</i>	<i>ūnārum</i>	<i>ūnōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnis</i>	<i>ūnis</i>	<i>ūnis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnam</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnōs</i>	<i>ūnās</i>	<i>ūna</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ūne</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnae</i>	<i>ūna</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnis</i>	<i>ūnis</i>	<i>ūnis</i>

Duo, *two*.*Trēs*, *three*.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i> , <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>tria</i> , <i>n.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i> ³	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>duōs</i> , <i>duo</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i> , <i>trīs</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>

¹ Cardinals denote simply the number of objects. Ordinals denote the place of an object in a series. Distributives denote the number of objects taken at a time.

² Or *two each*, *two apiece*.

³ Instead of *duōrum* and *duārum*, *duūm* is sometimes used.

NOTE 1. — The plural of *ūnus* in the sense of *alone* may be used with any noun: *ūnī Ubīī*, the Ubīī alone; but in the sense of *one*, it is used only with nouns plural in form, but singular in sense: *ūna castra*, one camp; *ūnae litterae*, one letter.

176. The Cardinals from *quattuor*, 'four,' to *centum*, 'one hundred,' are indeclinable.

177. Hundreds are declined like the plural of *bonus*; *ducentī*, *ae*, *a*, 'two hundred.'

179. Ordinals are declined like *bonus*, and distributives like the plural of *bonus*.

98. Examples. — Duration of Time.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Caecus <i>annōs</i> multōs fuit. | <i>He was blind many YEARS.</i> |
| 2. Trīgintā <i>annōs</i> vixit. | <i>He lived thirty YEARS.</i> |
| 3. Fossa quīdecim <i>pedēs</i> lāta. | <i>A moat fifteen FEET broad.</i> |

NOTE. — In these examples observe that *annōs*, 'years,' and *pedēs*, 'feet,' are in the *Accusative*. This Latin idiom¹ is expressed in the following

RULE IX. — Accusative of Time and Space.

379. DURATION OF TIME and EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the *Accusative*:

Rōmulus septem et trīgintā rēgnāvit *annōs*, *Romulus reigned thirty-seven YEARS.* Liv. Quīque milia passuum ambulāre, *to walk five MILES.* Cic. *Pedēs* octōgintā distare, *to be eighty FEET distant.* Caes. Nix quattuor *pedēs* alta, *snow four FEET deep.* Liv.

99. Vocabulary.

Ā, ab, prep. w. abl.	from, by.
Annus, i, m.	year.
Celtae, ārum, m. pl.	Celts, a people of Gaul.
Circiter, adv., and prep. w. acc.	about.
Cōscribit,	he enrolls.
Cyrus, i, m.	Cyrus, King of Persia.
Dionysius, ii, m.	Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse.
Duodecim, indeclinable,	twelve.

¹ The English uses the *Objective* case in the same way.

Duodēquadrāgintā, <i>indeclinable</i> , thirty-eight.	
Meridiēs, ēi, <i>m.</i> ¹	midday, noon.
Oppidum, i, <i>n.</i>	town.
Pars, partis, <i>f.</i>	part.
Suessiōnēs, um, <i>m. pl.</i>	Suessiones, a Gallic tribe.
Sustinet,	he sustains, withstands, resists.
Trigintā, <i>indeclinable</i> ,	thirty.
Ūndecimus, a, um,	eleventh.
Usque, <i>adv.</i>	until, even; usque ad, even to,
Vēr, vēris, <i>n.</i>	spring. [until.
Vicus, i, <i>m.</i>	village.

100. Translate into English.

1. Galli trēs hōrās pūgnābant. 2. Nōne fortiter pūgnant? 3. Fortiter pūgnant. 4. Circiter merīdiem exercitum in eastrā redūcet. 5. Belgae ūnam Galliae partem incolunt. 6. Celtae tertiam Galliae partem incolunt. 7. Caesar duās legiōnēs in Italiā cōnscribit. 8. Trēs legiōnēs circum Aquilēiam hiemābant. 9. Duās legiōnēs in Galliā cōscripsit.² 10. Legiōnis nōnae militēs fortiter pūgnāvērunt. 11. Duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, fortiter pūgnābant.

12. Legiōnis decimae militēs impetum hostium fortiter sustinēbant. 13. Legiōnis octāvae militēs in cōspectū imperātōris impetum hostium fortiter sustinuerunt. 14. Legiōnēs sex castra mūniēbant. 15. Militēs ab hōrā quārtā usque ad sōlis occāsum fortiter pūgnāvērunt. 16. Suessiōnēs oppida duodecim habent. 17. Cȳrus trīgintā annōs rēgnāvit. 18. Dionȳsius duodēquadrāgintā annōs tyrannus fuit.

101. Translate into Latin.

1. Numa reigned many years. 2. Did not the Gauls fight bravely? 3. They fought bravely. 4. The boy has thirty books. 5. He will present three to his brother. 6. The legions will attack the tower at sunset. 7. At that time the tenth legion was in Gaul. 8. The soldiers of the

¹ Masculine by exception.

² Cōscripsit = cōscrib-sit; see 76.

tenth legion were brave. 9. They were the bravest of all. 10. Two legions will guard the camp. 11. Five legions will fortify the camp with a rampart.

12. The soldiers were fortifying one part of the village with a very high wall. 13. The commander was awaiting the arrival of two legions. 14. The two consuls enrolled six legions. 15. The soldiers of two legions did not have large experience in military affairs. 16. The enemy fought bravely for ten hours. 17. They held the harbor for five days.

LESSON XXXIV.

PRONOUNS.

102. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

182. In construction, Pronouns¹ are used either as Substantives: *ego*, I, *tū*, thou; or as Adjectives: *meus*, my, *tuus*, your.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:

1. Personal Pronouns: *tū*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hic*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *quī*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quis*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *aliquis*, some one.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns,² so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are:

¹ But in their signification and use, Pronouns differ widely from ordinary substantives and adjectives, as they never *name* any object, action, or quality, but simply *point out* its relation to the speaker, or to some other person or thing.

² Also called *Substantive Pronouns*, because they are always used *substantively*.

Ego, *I.* Tū, *thou.* Sai, *of himself, etc.*¹

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	ego	tū	
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	tui	sui ¹
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi or mi	tibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	tē	sē
<i>Voc.</i>		tū	
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	tē	sē

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	nōs	vōs	
<i>Gen.</i>	{ nostrum nostrī	{ vestrum } vestri	sui
<i>Dat.</i>	nōbis	vōbis	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	nōs	vōs	sē
<i>Voc.</i>		vōs	
<i>Abl.</i>	nōbis	vōbis	sē

2. Sui, *of himself, etc.*, is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

4. REDUPLICATED FORMS. — Sēsē, tētē, mēmē, for sē, tē, mē.

6. CUM, when used with the *ablative* of a Personal Pronoun, is appended to it: mēcum, tēcum.

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives*:²

meus, a, um, <i>my</i> ;	noster, tra, trum, <i>our</i> ;
tuus, a, um, <i>thy, your</i> ;	vester, tra, trum, <i>your</i> ;
suus, a, um, <i>his, hers, its</i> ;	suus, a, um, <i>their</i> .

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are declined as follows:

¹ *Of himself, herself, itself.* The Nominative is not used.

² Possessives are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions; but *meus* has in the Vocative Singular Masculine generally *mī*, sometimes *meus*, and in the Genitive Plural sometimes *meum* instead of *meōrum*.

I. *Hic, this, this one, he.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	hic	haec	hœc	hi	hae	haec
Gen.	hujus	hujus	hujus	horum	harum	horum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	his	his	his
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hœc ¹	hos	has	haec
Abl.	hœc	hæc	hœc	his	his	his

II. *Iste, that, that of yours, that one, he.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
Gen.	istius	istius	istius	istorum	istarum	istorum
Dat.	istī	istī	istī	istis	istis	istis
Acc.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

III. *Ille, that, that one, he, is declined like iste.*IV. *Is, he, this, that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
Gen.	ejus	ejus	ejus	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

V. *Ipse, self, he.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorum
Dat.	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

¹ The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

VI. *Idem, the same.*¹

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> idem	eadem	idem	{ eidem iidem	eadem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i> ejusdem	ejusdem	ejusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i> eidem	eidem	eidem	{ eisdem iisdem	eisdem	eisdem
<i>Acc.</i> eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i> eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{ eisdem iisdem	eisdem	eisdem

LESSON XXXV.

PRONOUNS. — EXERCISES.

103. *Vocabulary.*

Aequitās, ātis, <i>f.</i>	kindness, calmness, fairness.
Commemorat,	he mentions, speaks.
Commemorātiō, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	remembrance, mentioning, mention.
Cum, <i>prep. w. abl.</i>	with.
Diligentia, ae, <i>f.</i>	diligence, carefulness.
Doctus, a, um,	learned.
Hīc, haec, hōc,	this, this one, the latter, he, she, it.
Hūmānitās, ātis, <i>f.</i>	culture, refinement.
Ille, illa, illud,	that, that one, the former, he, she, it.
Impedimenta, ōrum, <i>n. pl.</i>	baggage.
Integritās, ātis, <i>f.</i>	integrity, uprightness.
Iste, ista, istud,	that of yours, that, that one, he, she, it.
Longus, a, um,	long.
Portat,	he carries, brings.
Que, <i>conj. enclitic,</i> ²	and.
Semper, <i>adv.</i>	always.
Sui,	[of her, of it. of himself, of herself, of itself, of him,

¹ *Idem*, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *isdem* to *idem*, and *iddem* to *idem*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem*.

² That is, it is always appended to some other word: *virtūs-que*, 'and virtue.' *Que* connects words that are closely related in thought or use. For conjunctions, see 88, 417, note.

Suus, a, um,	his, her, hers, its, their, theirs, his own, her own, its own, one's own.
Temperantia, ae, f.	temperance, self-control.
Tum, adv.	then.
Vocat,	he calls, summons, invites.

104. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar Divitiacum ad sē vocāvit. 2. Exercitus noster in Galliā hiemābat. 3. Hostēs suam urbem vallō mūniēbant. 4. Galli hanc urbem vallō fossāque mūniēbant. 5. Militēs omnia impedīmenta sēcum portant. 6. Pater tuus epistulam longam ad tē scribet. 7. Amīcus tuus trēs epistulās ad mē scripsit. 8. Omnēs bonī vōs semper amābunt.

9. Omnēs tē laudant; omnēs dē tuā hūmānitāte commemorant; omnēs aequitātem tuam, temperantiam, integritātemque laudant. 10. Mē commemorātiō tuae virtūtis dēlectāvit. 11. Omnēs bonī omnem ā nōbīs diligentiam virtūtemque expectant. 12. Sapientēs hominēs illam cīvilitātem regēbant. 13. Doctī hominēs istam cīvilitātem regunt. 14. Doctī et sapientēs hominēs hanc cīvilitātem regent. 15. Cicerō suā manū epistulam scripsit (for *scrib -sit*).

105. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The boy praises himself. 2. Many boys praise themselves. 3. Wise men do not praise themselves. 4. Your father loves you. 5. Does he praise me? 6. He praises you. 7. This book is beautiful. 8. These books are new. 9. The queen wrote this letter. 10. That legion was wintering in Italy. 11. Those legions will winter in Gaul. 12. The citizens praise you. 13. All the citizens will praise you.

14. Wise men will always praise your wisdom. 15. Good men will praise your virtue. 16. Good men will always praise your virtue and wisdom. 17. Your father wrote this letter with his own hand. 18. He has written to me. 19. The consul had five legions with him. 20. He was then in Italy. 21. The enemy are fortifying their city with a very high wall.

LESSON XXXVI.

PRONOUNS. — RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, INDEFINITE.

106. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *quī*, 'who,' so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i> cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i> cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i> quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i> quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

1. *Quī* = *quō*, *quā*, 'with which,' 'wherewith,' is a *Locative* or *Ablative* of the relative *quī*.

2. *Cum*, when used with the *Ablative* of the relative, is generally appended to it: *quibuscum*.

V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. The Interrogative Pronouns *quis* and *quī*, with their compounds, are used in asking questions. They are declined as follows:

I. *Quis, who, which, what?*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i> cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i> cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i> quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i> quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

II. *Quī, which, what?* is declined like the *relative quī*.

1. *QUIS* is generally used substantively, and *QUI*, adjectively. The forms *quis* and *quem* are sometimes feminine.

2. *Quī*, how? in what way? is a *Locative* or *Ablative* of the interrogative *quis*.

VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are *quis* and *quī*, with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, 'any one,' and *quī*, 'any one,' 'any,' are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *quī*. But —

1. After *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*, the Feminine Singular and Neuter Plural have *quae* or *qua*: *sī quae*, *sī qua*.

2. From *quis* and *quī* are formed —

<i>aliquis</i> ,	<i>aliqua</i> ,	<i>aliquid</i> or <i>aliquod</i> ,	<i>some, some one.</i>
<i>quidam</i> ,	<i>quaedam</i> ,	<i>quiddam</i> or <i>quoddam</i> , ¹	<i>certain, certain one.</i>

351. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question:

Quis loquitur, who speaks? Ter. *Quis nōn paupertātem extimēscit, who does not fear poverty?* Cic. *Qualis est orātiō, what kind of an oration is it?* Cic. *Quot sunt, how many are there?* Plaut. *Ubi sunt, where are they?* Cic. *Visne fortunam experīri meam, do you wish to try my fortune?* Cic. *Nōne nobilitārī volunt, do they not wish to be renowned?* Cic. *Num igitur peccāmus, are we then at fault?* Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word — either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles: *-ne*, *nōne*, *num*; see examples above.

NOTE 1. — Questions with *-ne* ask for information; *Scribitne*, 'is he writing?'

NOTE 2. — Questions with *nōne* expect the answer *yes*: *Nōne scribit*, 'is he not writing?'

NOTE 3. — Questions with *num* expect the answer *no*: *Num scribit*, 'is he writing?'

2. The particle *-ne* is always appended to some other word, generally to the emphatic word of the sentence, i.e. to the word upon which the question especially turns; appended to *nōn*, 'not,' it forms *nōne*:

Visne experīri, do you wish to try? Cic. *Tūne id veritus es, did you fear this?* Cic. *Omnisne pecūnia solūta est, has ALL the money*

¹ *Quidam* changes *m* to *n* before *d*: *quendam* for *quemdam*.

been paid? Cic. *Unquamne vidisti, have you EVER seen?* Cic. *Nōne volunt, do they NOT wish?* Cic.

352. ANSWERS.—Instead of replying to a question of fact with a simple particle meaning *yes* or *no*, the Latin usually repeats the verb or some emphatic word, often with *prorsus*, *vērō*, ‘certainly,’ ‘truly,’ and the like, or if negative, with *nōn*, ‘not.’

Dixitne causam, did he state the cause? *Dixit, he stated it.* Cic. *Possumusne tūti esse, can we be safe?* *Nōn possumus, we can not.* Cic.

353. DOUBLE OR DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS offer a *choice* or *alternative*, and generally take one of the following forms:

1. The first clause has *utrum* or *-ne*, and the second *an*:

Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, is that your fault or ours Cic. *Rōmamne veniō an hic maneō, do I go to Rome, or do I remain here?* Cic.

2. The first clause omits the particle, and the second has *an* or *anne*:

Ēloquar an sileam, shall I utter it, or keep silence? Verg.

LESSON XXXVII.

PRONOUNS. — RULE XXXV. — EXERCISES.

107. Examples. — Agreement.

Rēx quem omnēs laudant.	The king WHOM all praise.
Rēgina quam omnēs laudant.	The queen WHOM all praise.
Ilī quōs omnēs laudant.	Those WHOM all praise.
Ego quī dicō.	I WHO speak.

NOTE. — In these examples the pronoun *quem* refers to *rēx*, called its antecedent, *quam* to its antecedent *rēgina*, *quōs* to its antecedent *ilī*, and *quī* to its antecedent *ego*. Observe that the pronoun in each instance is in the same gender and number¹ as its antecedent. Thus

¹ The case of the pronoun is determined by the construction of the clause in which it stands, and not by the case of its antecedent. Thus in these examples, though the antecedents are all in the Nominative, the pronouns *quem*, *quam*, and *quōs* are all in the Accusative as Direct Objects.

quem is in the masculine singular, because *rēx* is in that gender and number; *quam* in the feminine singular like *rēgina*; and *quōs* in the masculine plural like *ii*. The pronoun has also the same person as its antecedent. Thus *quem*, *quam*, and *quōs* are all in the third person, like their antecedents *rēx*, *rēgina*, and *ii*, while *qui* is in the first person, like its antecedent *ego*. This agreement of pronouns with their antecedents applies not only to relatives, but to all pronouns when used as substantives,¹ and is expressed in the following

RULE XXXV.—Agreement of Pronouns.

445. A pronoun agrees with its antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON :

Animal *quod* sanguinem habet, an animal WHICH has blood. Cic.
Ego, qui tē cōfirmō, I WHO encourage you. Cic. Vis est in virtutibus, eās excitā, there is strength in virtues, arouse THEM. Cic.

108. Vocabulary.

<i>Agit,</i>	<i>he leads, drives, does, acts, performs, treats, pleads; grātiās</i>
<i>Arma, ōrum, n. pl.</i>	<i>arms. [agit, he returns thanks.</i>
<i>Britannia, ae, f.</i>	<i>Britain.</i>
<i>Cis, prep. w. acc.</i>	<i>on this side of.</i>
<i>Constanter, adv.</i>	<i>consistently, uniformly.</i>
<i>Cotidiē, adv.</i>	<i>daily.</i>
<i>Dēbet,</i>	<i>he owes; he ought.</i>
<i>Doctrīna, ae, f.</i>	<i>learning.</i>
<i>Ex, ē, prep. w. abl.</i>	<i>out of, from, of.</i>
<i>Ferē, adv.</i>	<i>almost.</i>
<i>Grātia, ae, f.</i>	<i>gratitude, favor; grātiæ, pl.,</i>
<i>Locus, i, m., pl. loca, ōrum, n.</i>	<i>place. [thanks.</i>
<i>Nāvigat,</i>	<i>he navigates, sails.</i>
<i>Platō, ōnis, m.</i>	<i>Plato, a celebrated Greek philosopher.</i>
<i>Quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam,</i>	<i>a certain, certain one.</i>
<i>Reliquus, a, um,</i>	<i>remaining, the other, the rest of.</i>
<i>Rhēnus, i, m.</i>	<i>the Rhine.</i>
<i>Suprā, adv.</i>	<i>above.</i>
<i>Tempus, oris, n.</i>	<i>time.</i>
<i>Venetī, ōrum, m. pl.</i>	<i>the Veneti, a tribe of western Gaul.</i>

¹ Pronouns when used as adjectives agree like other adjectives, with the nouns to which they belong, according to 40, Rule XXXIV.

109. *Translate into English.*¹

1. Gallī ea loca incolunt. 2. Gallī fortēs sunt. 3. Gallī, quī² ea loca incolunt, fortēs sunt. 4. Germānī, quī cis Rhēnum incolunt, in armīs sunt. 5. Hostēs urbem,³ dē quā² suprā scrīpsit Caesar, vallō fossāque mūnībant. 6. Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs erant. 7. Hī cōstanter omnēs idem⁴ nūntiant. 8. Venetī nāvēs habent multās, quibus⁵ in Britanniam nāvigant. 9. Iī quī vōbīs omnia dēbent, vōs semper amābunt. 10. Cīvēs nōbīs grātiās cotīdiē agunt.

11. Ille⁶ princeps doctrinae, Platō, virtūtem et sapientiam laudat. 12. Iī quī hanc civitātem regunt, sapientēs sunt. 13. Quid dixit? Hōc dixit. 14. Num haec dixērunt? Nōn dixērunt.⁷ 15. Omnēs ferē Belgae in armīs fuērunt. 16. Cicerō in illō ipsō⁸ librō dē amicitīā scrīpsit.

110. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who was the king? 2. Was not⁹ Romulus king? He was.¹⁰ 3. Who was the leader of the Romans? Was not

¹ In preparing the longer and more difficult sentences in this and in the subsequent exercises, it is recommended that the pupil should follow the Suggestions which are inserted in this volume, page 200, and which are intended to aid him in discerning the *process* by which he may most readily and surely reach the meaning of a Latin sentence.

² For *Gender* and *Number*, see 107, Rule XXXV.

³ In reading this sentence in the Latin slowly and attentively, in accordance with Suggestion IV., which words do you recognize? What *parts of speech* do you find? What *cases, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons*? What does each *case, mood, tense, number, and person* show you?

⁴ Direct Object of *nūntiant*.

⁵ *Ablative of Means*. See 78, Rule XXV.

⁶ *Ille* is often thus used of what is WELL KNOWN, FAMOUS.

⁷ Observe that the auxiliaries *does, do, did*, are often used in interrogative and negative sentences in English, but that no corresponding auxiliaries are used in Latin. Thus, *nōne dicit*, does he say? *nōn dicit*, he does not say. Remember this difference in rendering into Latin, as in 110, 4 and 5, *Did not Cicero*, etc.?

⁸ *Illō ipsō*, that very; *ipse* is sometimes best rendered VERY.

⁹ What *Interrogative* will you use? See 106, 351, 1, notes.

¹⁰ See 106, 352.

Caesar the leader of the Romans? Caesar was the leader of the Romans. 4. Did not Cicero write this book? He wrote it. 5. Did he write the book that¹ the pupils are reading? He did not write it. Caesar, who conquered the Gauls, wrote that book. 6. Cicero, who wrote these books, was at that time a very renowned orator.

7. The enemy, about whom Caesar wrote above, were Gauls. 8. The Belgae, who were at that time in arms, were the bravest of the Gauls. 9. What did Plato praise? Did he not praise learning and wisdom? He always praised virtue. 10. Who has written in regard to friendship? Cicero, the consul, wrote a book in regard to friendship.

LESSON XXXVIII.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE, AND PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE, IN CONJUGATIONS I. AND II., AND IN THE VERB *Sum*. — RULE XXXVII.

111. Lesson from the Grammar.

196. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD² expresses not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception*. It is best translated —

1. Sometimes by the English auxiliaries, *let, may, might, should, would*:

Amēmus patriam, LET US LOVE our country. *Sint beātī*, MAY THEY BE happy. *Quaerat quispiam*, some one MAY INQUIRE. *Hōc nēmō dixerit*, no one WOULD SAY this. *Ego cēseam*, I SHOULD THINK, or I AM INCLINED TO THINK.

2. Sometimes by the English *Indicative*, especially by the Future forms with *shall* and *will*:

Hūc cēdāmus, SHALL WE YIELD to this one? *Quid diēs ferat incertum est*, what a day WILL BRING FORTH is uncertain. *Quaesivit sī liceret*, he inquired whether IT WAS LAWFUL.

¹ For the Gender, Number and Case of the Latin Pronoun, see 107, Rule XXXV., and 16, Rule V.

² For the Imperative Mood, see p. 13, 196, III.

92 INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, IMPERATIVE.

3. Sometimes by the *Imperative*, especially in prohibitions:

Nē trānsierīs Hibērum, DO NOT CROSS the *Ebro*.

4. Sometimes by the English *Infinitive*:¹

Contendit ut vincat, he strives TO CONQUER. *Missi sunt qui cōsulerent Apollinem*, they were sent TO CONSULT *Apollo*.

112. Examples. — Indicative Mood.

1. *Galli ea loca incolunt.* The Gauls INHABIT those places.

2. *Hostēs urbem mūniēbant.* The enemy WERE FORTIFYING the city.

NOTE. — Observe in these examples that the verbs *incolunt*, 'inhabit,' and *mūniēbant*, 'were fortifying,' relate to *facts*. They are in the *Indicative Mood*, in accordance with the Latin usage,² expressed in the following

RULE XXXVII. — Indicative.

474. The Indicative is used in treating of facts:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, God made (built) the world. *Cic. Nōne expulsus est patriā*, was he not banished from his country? *Cic. Hōc fēcī dum licuit*, I did this as long as it was permitted. *Cic.*

113. Certain Forms of the Subjunctive and Imperative.

I. In the Verb *Sum*, *I am*.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PRESENT.	PLURAL.
sim,	<i>may I be,</i>	simus,	<i>let us be,</i>
sis,	<i>mayst thou be,</i>	sitis,	<i>be ye, may you be,</i>
sit,	<i>let him be, may he be;</i>	sint,	<i>let them be.</i>

¹ Observe, however, that the Infinitive here is not the translation of the Subjunctive alone, but of the Subjunctive with its subject and connective: *ut vincat*, to conquer (lit., *that he may conquer*); *quī cōsulerent*, to consult (lit., *who should or would consult*).

² All the verbs in the preceding Lessons are in the *Indicative Mood*, and are illustrations of this usage.

IMPERFECT.

essem,	<i>I should be,</i>	essēmus,	<i>we should be,</i>
essēs,	<i>thou wouldst be,</i>	essētis,	<i>you would be,</i>
esset,	<i>he would be ;</i>	essent,	<i>they would be.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. es,</i>	<i>be thou,</i>	este,	<i>be ye.</i>
------------------	-----------------	--------------	---------------

II. In the First Conjugation.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.

PRESENT.

PLURAL.

amem,	<i>may I love,</i>	amēmus,	<i>let us love,</i>
amēs,	<i>may you love,</i>	amētis,	<i>may you love,</i>
amet,	<i>let him love ;</i>	ament,	<i>let them love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

amārem,	<i>I should love,</i>	amārēmus,	<i>we should love,</i>
amārēs,	<i>you would love,</i>	amārētis,	<i>you would love,</i>
amāret,	<i>he would love ;</i>	amārent,	<i>they would love.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. amā,</i>	<i>love thou ;</i>	amāte,	<i>love ye.</i>
-------------------	--------------------	---------------	-----------------

III. In the Second Conjugation.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I advise, let him advise.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

moncam	moncāmus
moncās	moncātis
moncant	moncant

IMPERFECT.

I should advise, he would advise.

monērem	monērēmus
monērēs	monērētis
monēret	monērent

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. monē,</i>	<i>advise thou ;</i>	monēte,	<i>advise ye.</i>
--------------------	----------------------	----------------	-------------------

LESSON XXXIX.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE ACTIVE IN CONJUGATIONS I. AND II., AND IN THE VERB *Sum*. — RULES XXXVIII. AND XL. — EXERCISES.

114. *Examples. — Subjunctive and Imperative.*

1. <i>Amēmus patriam.</i>	LET US LOVE <i>our country.</i>
2. <i>Nē audeant.</i>	LET THEM <i>not DARE.</i>
3. <i>Sint beāti.</i>	MAY THEY BE <i>happy.</i>
4. <i>Iustitiam cole.</i>	PRACTISE <i>justice.</i>
5. <i>Perge, Catilina.</i>	GO, <i>Catiline.</i>

NOTE 1. — In the first three of these examples, observe that the verbs *amēmus*, *audeant*, and *sint* all express or imply a *desire* or *wish* on the part of the speaker. These verbs are all in the Subjunctive, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XXXVIII. — Subjunctive of Desire, Command.

483. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action NOT AS REAL, but AS DESIRED :

Valeant civēs, MAY the citizens BE WELL. Cic. *Amēmus patriam*, LET US LOVE *our country.* Cic. *Ā nobis diligātur*, LET HIM BE LOVED *by us.* Cic. *Scribere nē pigrēre*, DO NOT NEGLECT *to write.* Cic.

1. The *Subjunctive of Desire* is often accompanied by *utinam*, and sometimes, especially in the poets, by *ut*, *sī*, *ō sī* :

Utinam cōnāta efficere possim, may I be able to accomplish my endeavors. Cic. *Ut illum dī perdant*, would that the gods would destroy him. Ter.

2. FORCE OF TENSES. — The Present and Perfect imply that the wish may be fulfilled; the Imperfect and Pluperfect, that it cannot be fulfilled:

Sint beāti, may they be happy. Cic. *Nē trānsierīs Hiberum*, do not cross the *Ebro*. Liv. *Utinam possem, utinam potuissem*, would that I were able, would that I had been able. Cic.

3. NEGATIVES. — With the *Subjunctive of Desire*, the negative is *nē*, rarely *nōn*; with a connective, *nēve*, *neu*, rarely *neque* :

Nē audeant, *let them not dare*. Cic. Nōn recēdāmus, *let us not recede*. Cic. Nēve minor neu sit prōductior, *let it be neither shorter nor longer*. Hor.

NOTE 2. — In the fourth and fifth of the examples at the head of this lesson, observe that the verbs *cole* and *perge* both denote a command. They are in the *Imperative*, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XL. — Imperative.

487. The Imperative is used in COMMANDS, EXHORTATIONS, and ENTREATIES :

Jūstitiam cole, *practise justice*. Cic. Tū nē cēde malis, *do not yield to misfortunes*. Verg. Si quid in tē peccāvi, ignōsce, *if I have sinned against you, pardon me*. Cic.

1. The PRESENT IMPERATIVE corresponds to the Imperative in English :

Jūstitiam cole, *practise justice*. Cic. Perge, Catilīna, *go, Catiline*. Cic.

115. Vocabulary.

Animus, ī, m.	<i>mind, heart, soul.</i>
Castellum, ī, n.	<i>redoubt.</i>
Casticus, ī, m.	<i>Casticus, a chief of the Sequani.</i>
Cōfirmat,	<i>he strengthens, assures, establishes.</i>
Conjūrat,	<i>he conspires.</i>
Ferūx, ācis,	<i>productive, fertile.</i>
Frūmentārius, a, um,	<i>pertaining to grain ; rēs frūmentāria,</i>
Juvat,	<i>he aids, helps, assists. [grain, supplies.</i>
Lātus, a, um,	<i>broad, wide, extensive.</i>
Liber, libera, liberum,	<i>free.</i>
Mēns, mentis, f.	<i>mind, intellect.</i>
Parātus, a, um,	<i>prepared, ready.</i>
Pāx, pācis, f.	<i>peace.</i>
Perturbat,	<i>he disturbs.</i>
Propior, propius,	<i>nearer ; sup. prōximus, a, um, nearest,</i>
Quis, quae, quid or quod,	<i>[next, adjacent. 86, 106.</i>
indef. pron.	<i>one, any one, anything.</i>
Rēgnum, ī, n.	<i>kingdom, regal power.</i>
Suspiciō, ōnis, f.	<i>suspicion.</i>
Utinam, interj.	<i>O that !</i>
Vita*,	<i>he avoids, shuns.</i>

116. *Translate into English.*

1. Patriam amēmus. 2. Prō patriā pūgnēmus. 3. In cōspectū imperātōris fortiter pūgnēmus. 4. Militēs in cōspectū imperātōris fortiter pūgnent. 5. Militēs fortēs sint; fortēs simus. 6. Lēgibus¹ pāreāmus. 7. Cīvēs omnēs lēgibus pāreant. 8. Patriam amāte; lēgibus pārēte. 9. Illam urbem oppūgnāte. 10. Hanc urbem oppūgnēmus. 11. Nē² Helvētiōs juvēmus. 12. Nē quis Helvētiōs juvet. 13. Suspiciōnem vitēmus. 14. Timōris suspiciōnem vitēs. 15. Omnēs suspiciōnēs vitā. 16. In³ reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vitēmus. 17. Militēs castellum oppūgnent.

18. Cum hīs cīvitatibus⁴ amicitiam cōfirmēmus. 19. Cum prōximis cīvitatibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāte. 20. In hōc locō adventum hostium expectēmus. 21. Hostēs in hōc locō adventum Caesaris expectent. 22. Utinam parātus ad⁵ omnia pericula sis.⁶ 23. Utinam militēs omnēs fortēs essent.⁶ 24. Casticus rēgnum in cīvitate suā occupet. 25. Hostium impetum sustineāmus. 26. Utinam timor hostium mentēs animōsque perturbet. 27. Lātōs ferācēsque agrōs occupēmus. 28. Rem frūmentāriam comparēmus. 29. Libera sit Gallia. 30. Nē contrā patriam conjūrēmus.

117. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Let us praise the brave soldiers. 2. May they all fight bravely for themselves and for their country. 3. Let not fear take possession of our army. 4. Let not fear disturb our minds. 5. Let us await the arrival of our army. 6. Let the soldiers obey the commander. 7. Let them not fear the enemy. 8. Let us not fear the enemy. 9. Let us await them in this place.

¹ For *Case*, see 54, Rule XII.

² For the use of *nē* rather than *nōn*, see 114, 483, 3.

³ Literally *into*; render *FOR*.

⁴ In accordance with Suggestion XI., for what form will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *cīvitatibus*?

⁵ Literally *to*; render *FOR*. ⁶ For the force of *Tenses*, see 114, 483, 2.

10. Let us aid our friends. 11. Do not aid the enemy.
 12. May all the citizens love their country. 13. May they
 obey all the laws. 14. Let us establish friendship with the
 Romans. 15. Let the Romans establish peace with the
 Gauls. 16. Let not the soldiers conspire against the king.

LESSON XL.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE, AND
 PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE, IN CONJUGATIONS III.
 AND IV.—RULES XLI. AND XLII.

118. *Certain Forms of the Subjunctive and Imperative.*

I. In the Third Conjugation.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I rule, let him rule.

SINGULAR.

regam

regās

regat

PLURAL.

regāmus

regātis

regant

IMPERFECT.

I should rule, he would rule.

regerem

regerēs

regeret

regerēmus

regerētis

regerent

IMPERATIVE.

Prea rege, rule thou ;

| regite, rule ye.

II. In the Fourth Conjugation.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I hear, let him hear.

SINGULAR.

audiam

audias

audiat

PLURAL.

audiamus

audiātis

audiant

IMPERFECT.

I should hear, he would hear.

audīrem

audīrēs

audīret

audīrēmus

audīrētis

audīrent

IMPERATIVE.

Prae, audī, hear thou;

| audīte, hear ye.

119. Examples. — Sequence of Tenses. — Subjunctive of Purpose.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Nititur ut vincat. | <i>He strives TO CONQUER.</i> |
| 2. Nitēbatur ut vinceret. | <i>He was striving TO CONQUER.</i> |
| 3. Mittuntur qui (= ut il) cōnsulant Apollinem. | <i>They are sent TO CONSULT (who may consult) Apollo.</i> |
| 4. Missi sunt qui cōnsulerent Apollinem. | <i>They were sent TO CONSULT Apollo.</i> |

NOTE 1. — In these examples observe that after a present tense, as *nititur*, *mittuntur*, the verb of the subordinate clause¹ is also *Present*, as *vincat*, *cōnsulant*,² while after a past tense, as *nitēbatur*, *missi sunt*, the verb in the subordinate clause is in the *Imperfect*, as *vinceret*, *cōnsulerent*.² This adjustment of the tense in the subordinate clause to the tense in the Principal clause¹ is in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XLI. — Sequence of Tenses.

491. Principal tenses depend upon principal tenses; historical upon historical:³

Nititur ut vincat, *he strives to conquer*.⁴ Cic. *Nēmō erit qui cēseat*, *there will be no one who will think*.⁴ Cic. *Quaesierās nōne*

¹ For *Principal* and *Subordinate* Clauses, see p. 11, 348, foot note.

² If the verb in the *Subordinate* Clause denotes *completed* action, it must be in the *Perfect* after a *Present* tense, and in the *Pluperfect* after a *Past* tense. See 492, 2, and 493, 2.

³ For *Principal* and *Historical* Tenses, see p. 13, 198.

⁴ The *Present* Subjunctive generally denotes *present* time in relation to the principal verb. Accordingly, *vincat* depending upon the *present*, *nititur*, denotes *present* time, while *cēseat* depending upon the *future*, *erit*, denotes *future* time.

putārem, you had asked whether I did not think. Cic. Ut honōre dignus essem laborāvī, I strove to be worthy of honor. Cic.

492. In accordance with this rule, the Subjunctive dependent upon a principal tense, *present, future, future perfect*, is put —

1. In the PRESENT, to denote *incomplete action* :

Quaeritur cūr dissentiant, the question is asked, why they disagree. Cic. Nēmō erit quī cēseat, there will be no one who will think. Cic.

2. In the PERFECT, to denote *completed action* :

Quaerāmus quae vitia fuerint, let us inquire what faults there were. Cic. Rogitābit mē ubī fuerim, he will ask me where I have been. Ter.

493. The Subjunctive dependent upon an historical tense, *imperfect, historical perfect, pluperfect*, is put —

1. In the IMPERFECT, to denote *incomplete action* :

Timēbam nē ēvenirent ea, I was fearing that those things would take place (i.e. at some future time). Cic. Quaesierās nōne putārem, you had inquired whether I did not think (i.e. at that time). Cic.

2. In the PLUPERFECT, to denote *completed action* :

Themistoclēs, cum Graeciam liberāset, expulsus est, Themistocles was banished, though he had liberated Greece. Cic.

NOTE 2. — In the examples given above, observe that the verbs in the Subordinate clauses, *vincat, vinceret, cōsulant, cōsulerent*, all express the *purpose* of the leading action. *He strives (for what purpose?) that he may conquer or to conquer. They are sent (for what purpose?) that they may consult Apollo or to consult Apollo.* These verbs are all in the *Subjunctive*, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XLII. — Purpose.

497. The Subjunctive is used to denote PURPOSE:

I. With the relative *quī*, and with relative adverbs, as *ubī, unde*, etc. :

Missi sunt quī (=ut ii) cōsulerent Apollinem, they were sent to CONSULT Apollo (who should, or that they should). Nep. Missi sunt dēlecti quī Thermopylās occupārent, picked men were sent to TAKE POSSESSION OF Thermopylae. Nep. Domum, ubī habitāret, lēgit, he selected a house where he might dwell (that he might dwell in it). Cic.

II. With **ut, nē, quō, quōminus**:

Enītur ut vincat, *he strives that HE MAY CONQUER.* Cic. Pūnit nē peccētur, *he punishes that crime MAY not BE COMMITTED.* Sen. Lēgum idcirco servī sumus, ut liberī esse possimus, *we are servants of the law for this reason, that we may be free.* Cic. Medicō dare quō sit studiōsior, *to give to the physician, that (by this means) he may be more attentive.* Cic. Nōn recūsāvit quōminus poenam subiret, *he did not refuse to submit to punishment.* Nep.

498. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE readily pass into *Object Clauses*,¹ but they still retain the Subjunctive.

Optō ut id audiātis, *I desire (pray) that you may hear this.* Cic. Servis Imperat ut filiam dēfendant, *he commands his servants to defend his daughter.* Cic. Contendit ut vincat, *he strives to conquer.* Cic.

LESSON XLI.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND IMPERATIVE ACTIVE IN CONJUGATIONS III. AND IV. — EXERCISES.

120. Vocabulary.

Addūcit,	<i>he leads to.</i>
Cōgnōscit,	<i>he ascertains.</i>
Colloquium, ii, n.	<i>conversation, conference, interview.</i>
Dēdūcit,	<i>he leads forth, conducts.</i>
Equitātus, ūs, m.	<i>cavalry.</i>
Imperat, w. dative.	<i>he orders, gives orders to.</i>
Implōrat,	<i>he implores.</i>
Intellegit,	<i>he understands.</i>
Mulier, eris, f.	<i>woman.</i>
Nūntius, ii, m.	<i>messenger; tidings.</i>
Obses, idis, m. and f.	<i>hostage.</i>
Pedes, itis, m.	<i>foot-soldier; pl. foot-soldiers, infantry.</i>
Pedius, ii, m.	<i>Pedius, a lieutenant in Caesar's army.</i>
Populus, ī, m.	<i>people.</i>

¹ An Object Clause is one which has become virtually the object of a verb. Thus, in '*optō ut id audiātis*,' the clause *ut id audiātis* has become the object of *optō*, 'I desire.'

Postulat,	he demands.
Reddit,	he gives back, returns.
Remanet,	he remains.
Rogat,	he asks.
Rōmānus, a, um,	Roman.
Trādit,	he gives up, surrenders.

121. *Translate into English.*

1. Mīlitēs timōris suspīciōnem vītent. 2. Mīlitēs ut timōris suspīciōnem vītent¹ in aciē remanent. 3. Ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent remanēbant. 4. Suam urbem vallō fossāque mūniant. 5. Hunc locum altissimō² mūrō mūnite. 6. Helvētiī prōximās cīvitātēs rogant ut sē juvent.³ 7. Rogābant ut sē juvārent.³ 8. Noster equitātus hostium impetum sustineat. 9. Caesar equitātum, quī sustinēret⁴ hostium impetum, mīsit.⁴ 10. Haec intellegātis. 11. Haec ut intellegātis, audite Rōmānōs mīlitēs. 12. Cum populō Rōmānō pācem cōfirment.

13. Castra vallō mūnite. 14. Militibus imperāvit ut castra vallō mūnīrent.⁵ 15. Lēgātī haec dīcant. 16. Gallī lēgātōs mittent quī haec dīcant. 17. Haec cōgnōscite. 18. Gallis imperābat ut haec cōgnōscerent. 19. Mulierēs patrēs suōs implōrābant nē sē Rōmānīs trāderent. 20. Caesar nē quem peditem ad colloquium addūcat. 21. Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret.⁶ 22. Caesar postulāvit ut Ariovistus obsidēs redderet. 23. Caesar duās legiōnēs cōscripsit, et Pedium mīsit quī eas in Galliam dēdūceret.⁷

¹ *Subjunctive of Purpose.* See 119, Rule XLII.

² In accordance with Suggestion XI., for what form will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *altissimō*? See 86, 162.

³ Why *juvent* in one case, and *juvārent* in the other? See 119, 492 and 493.

⁴ See Suggestion XVII., 3; *mīsit*, sent, the perfect of *mittit*.

⁵ *Ut . . . mūnīrent*, an *Object Clause*. See 119, 498.

⁶ *Nē . . . addūceret*. See 119, 498.

⁷ For *Mood*, see 119, 497, I.; for *Translation*, see Suggestion XVII., 3.

122. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Let us fortify this city with a high wall.¹ 2. Fortify your cities with moats and walls. 3. He implores you to fortify² the city with a very high wall. 4. Let us hear the words of the lieutenant. 5. The soldiers will remain to hear³ the words of the lieutenant. 6. Let the soldiers remain to hear the words of the king. 7. The soldiers remained⁴ to hear the words of Caesar. 8. Let us lead the army back into camp. 9. Let us enrol three legions in Gaul. 10. The commander will send five legions to withstand⁴ the attacks of the enemy.

11. He sent three legions to withstand the attack of the enemy. 12. Let him not announce our plans to the enemy. 13. Will he not send a messenger to announce these things to Caesar? 14. Listen to me (*hear me*) that you may understand these things. 15. Caesar demanded that the Germans should not remain in Gaul.⁵ 16. The soldiers remained in the city that they might fortify it. 17. He asked us to help you. 18. They demand that you listen to our words. 19. Ariovistus demanded that Caesar should not help the Gauls. 20. They asked Caesar not to give them up to the Germans.

LESSON XLII.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE. —
RULE XLIII.

123. *Examples. — Subjunctive in Clauses of Result.*

1. Nōn is sum quī (= ut ego) *I am not such a one AS TO USE*
his ūlar. *these things.*
2. Ita vīxit ut esset cārissimus. *He so lived that HE WAS most dear.*

¹ In Latin, use the *Ablative of Means*. See 78, Rule XXV.

² Use *ut* with the *Subjunctive*.

³ Or *were remaining*; use the *imperfect*.

⁴ Use the *Relative* with the *Subjunctive*.

⁵ That . . . in Gaul, an *Object Clause*; see 119, 498.

NOTE. — In these examples observe that the Subordinate verbs, *ūtar*, *esset*, express the *Result* of what is stated in the principal clause. They are in the *Subjunctive* in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XLIII. — Result.

500. The Subjunctive is used to denote RESULT:

I. With the relative **quī**, and with relative adverbs, as **ubī**, **unde**, **cūr**, etc.:

Nōn is *sum* *quī* (= *ut ego*) *hīs ūtar*,¹ *I am not such a one as TO USE these things.* Cic. *Innocentia est adfectiō tālis animī, quae* (= *ut ea*) *noceat nēmīnī*,¹ *innocence is such a state of mind as INJURES no one.* Cic.

II. With **ut**, **ut nōn**, **quān**:

Ita vixit ut Athēniēnsibus esset cārissimus, *he so lived that HE WAS very dear to the Athenians.* Nep. *Ita laudō, ut nōn pertimēscam*, *I so praise as not TO FEAR.*² Cic.

501. CLAUSES OF RESULT readily pass into *Substantive Clauses*, but they still retain the Subjunctive. Thus the Subjunctive is used —

I. In SUBJECT CLAUSES:

Fit ut quisque delectētur, *it happens that every one is delighted.* Cic. *Sequitur ut falsum sit*, *it follows that it is false.* Cic.

II. In OBJECT CLAUSES:

Sol efficit ut omnia floreant, *the sun causes all things to bloom* (i. e., produces that result). Cic.

503. The Subjunctive is used in RELATIVE CLAUSES to characterize an *Indefinite* or *General Antecedent*:

Quid est quod tē delectāre possit, *what is there which can delight you?* Cic. *Sunt qui putent*, *there are some who think.* Cic. *Nēmō est qui nōn cupiat*, *there is no one who does not desire.* Cic.

¹ *Is quī*, literally, *he who* = 'such that I.' *Tālis quae*, literally, *such which* = 'such that it.'

² Or that *I do not fear.*

124. Vocabulary.

Barbarus, a, um,	barbarous, rude.
Commovet,	he moves, disturbs.
Compellit,	he drives.
Complūrēs, plūra or plūria,	very many, many, several.
Condōnat,	he condones, pardons, forgives.
Cōnfligit,	he contends, fights.
Contendit, 134, foot-note 2.	he hastens, goes in haste.
Continet,	he restrains, retains, confines, keeps
Eques, itis, m.	horseman; pl. horsemen, cavalry.
Finis, is, m. and f. ¹	end, limit; finēs, pl. m. boundaries;
Injūria, ae, f.	injury, wrong. [territory.
Ita, adv.	so, in such a way.
Littera, ae, f.	letter, letter of the alphabet; litterae.
	pl., letters; a letter, epistle.
Periculum, i, n.	peril, danger.
Prohibet,	he prohibits, checks, prevents, keeps.
Scit, 4,	he knows.
Silva, ae, f.	wood, forest.
Tam, adv.	so, to such an extent.
Tantus, a, um,	so great.
Tempestās, ātis, f.	weather; tempest, storm.

125. Translate into English.

1. Militēs omnēs fortissimē pūgnābant. 2. Tanta militum virtūs fuit ut omnēs fortissimē pūgnārent. 3. Timor māgnus omnem exercitum occupāvit. 4. Timor māgnus mentēs militum omnium perturbābat. 5. Omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāvit. 6. Tantus timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. 7. Caesar nōn is fuit quī hostēs timēret.² 8. Erant tempestātēs quae nostrōs³ in castris continērent. 9. Tempestātēs hostem ā pūgnā prohibuērunt. 10. Erant complūrēs diēs⁴ tempestātēs quae hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent.

11. Ariovistus nōn tam barbarus fuit ut haec nōn scīret.
12. Hī nūntiī Caesarem ita commovent ut castra vallō fos-

¹ Decline like *ignis*, page 54.

² See 123, 500.

³ Lit., *our, ours*; render *our men*; a *Possessive* used *substantively*.

⁴ *Accusative of Duration of Time*. See 98, Rule IX.

sāque mūniat. 13. Hī nūntiī litteraeque Caesarem ita commovent ut in finēs Belgārum contendat. 14. Equitēs hostium cum equitātū nostrō ita cōflīgunt ut nostrī¹ eōs in silvās compellant. 15. Tanta Divitiaci apud Caesarem grātia fuit ut injūriam condōnāret. 16. Utinam in reliquum tempus timōris suspiciōnem vitētis. 17. Imperātor sex legiōnēs mīsit quae hanc urbem oppūgnārent. 18. Utinam hae civitatēs in armīs essent. 19. Utinam omnēs militēs nostrī fortiter pūgnārent.

126. Translate into Latin.

1. Our soldiers fought so bravely that they conquered² the enemy. 2. The courage of our soldiers is so great that they always fight bravely, and withstand all the attacks of the enemy. 3. They are not so barbarous as not to help (*that they do not help*) their friends. 4. He is not one who (*that one who*) would announce our counsels to the enemy. 5. So great fear took possession of the commander that he led the army back into camp. 6. So great fear took possession of the Gauls that they fortified their camp with a moat and a rampart.

7. The fear of the enemy was so great that they gave up the hostages. 8. The soldiers of the tenth legion were so brave that they did not fear the enemy. 9. Our soldiers are so brave that they are prepared for³ all dangers. 10. Fear so disturbs your minds that you do not listen to (*hear*) me. 11. For⁴ the future let us avoid all suspicions. 12. For the future our soldiers will fight so bravely that they will avoid suspicion of fear. 13. Would that all our citizens were in arms. 14. The enemy sent a large army to assault our city.

¹ See foot-note 2, page 104.

² What *Mood* will you use in Latin? See 123, Rule XLIII.

³ Use *ad*. See 116, foot-note on *ad*.

⁴ Use *in*. See 116, foot-note on *in*.

LESSON XLIII.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE. —
RULE LV.127. *Examples. — Indirect Questions.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Quaeris cūr dissentiant. | <i>You ask WHY THEY DISAGREE.</i> |
| 2. Quaesivit salvusne esset clipeus. | <i>He asked WHETHER HIS SHIELD WAS SAFE.</i> |

NOTE. — In these examples observe that the Subordinate clauses *cūr dissentiant*, 'why they disagree,'¹ and *salusne esset clipeus*, 'whether the (his) shield was safe,'¹ involve questions without directly asking them. Such clauses are called *Indirect Questions*. The verbs in these *Indirect Questions* are in the Subjunctive, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE LV. — Moods in Indirect Clauses.

529. The Subjunctive is used —

I. In indirect questions:

Quaeritur, cūr doctissimi hominēs dissentiant, *it is a question, why the most learned men disagree.* Cic. Quaesierās, nōne putārem, *you had asked whether I did not think.* Cic. Quālis sit animus, animus nescit, *the soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic. Quid diēs ferat incertum est, *what a day will bring forth is uncertain.* Cic.

II. Often in clauses dependent upon an Infinitive or upon another Subjunctive:

Nihil indignius est quam eum quī culpā careat supplicio nōn carere, *nothing is more shameful than that he who is FREE from fault should not be exempt from punishment.* Cic. Vereor nē, dum minuire velim labōrem, augeam, *I fear that while I wish to diminish the labor, I shall increase it.* Cic.

3. Indirect double questions are generally introduced by the same interrogative particles as are direct double questions (106, 353).

¹ The Indirect question, *cūr dissentiant*, involves the Direct question, *Cūr dissentiunt?* 'why do they disagree?' *Salvusne esset clipeus* involves the Direct question: *Salvusne est clipeus?* 'is the shield safe?'

Thus they generally take *utrum* or *-ne* in the first member, and *an* in the second:

Quaeritur virtūs suamne propter dignitatem an propter fructūs aliquōs expetatur, it is asked whether virtue is sought for its own worth, or for certain advantages. Cic.

128. Vocabulary.

Arar, aris, ¹ m.	the Arar, a river in southeastern Gaul,
Atque, conj.	and. [the modern Saône.
Captivus, i, m.	captive.
Conducit,	he leads together, brings together.
Dēcertat,	he contends, struggles, fights.
Fluit,	it flows.
Gerit,	he carries on, does, wages.
Igitur, conj.	therefore.
Interior, ² us,	interior, inner.
Jūdicat,	he judges.
Ob, prep. w. acc.	on account of, for.
Officium, ii, n.	duty.
Proelium, ii, n.	battle, engagement.
Pudor, ōris, m.	shame, respect.
Quaerit,	he inquires, asks, seeks.
Quantus, a, um,	how great.
Quot, indeclinable,	how many.
Rēmī, ōrum, m. pl.	The Remi, a tribe of northern Gaul.
Uter, tra, trum, 45, 151.	which (of two). [ence.
Valet,	he avails, prevails, has force or influ-

129. Translate into English.

1. Quae civitatēs in armīs sunt? Ab his lēgātīs quaerit quae civitatēs in armīs sint.³ 2. Quae civitatēs quantaeque⁴ in armīs sunt? Ab his quaerēbat quae civitatēs quantaeque in armīs essent. 3. Quid dicit Ariovistus? Quid dicat Ariovistus cōgnōscite. His lēgātīs imperāvit ut, quid diceret

¹ Accusative *Ararem* or *Ararim*, Ablative *Arare* or *Arari*.

² See 86, 166.

³ Quae . . . sint, an Indirect Question. What would be the Direct Question? For Translation, see Suggestion XVII., 2.

⁴ Quantaeque, composed of *quantae* and the conjunction *que*, 'and.'

Ariovistus, cōgnōscerent. 4. In utram partem¹ fluit Arar? In utram partem fluat Arar jūdicēmus.

5. Quam ob rem¹ Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertat? Caesar ex captivīs quaerēbat quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret. 6. Omnem exercitum in ūnum locum condūcāmus. 7. Nōne pudor apud vōs valet? Num apud vōs timor valet? Utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an timor valet? Intellegāmus utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an timor valeat. 8. Quid gerunt Belgae? 9. Quid gerēbant Belgae? Imperātor sciēbat quid gererent Belgae. 10. Trēs legiōnēs igitur in interiōrem Galliam mittat.

130. Translate into Latin.

1. For what reason are the Gauls fortifying their cities? Let us ascertain for what reason the Gauls are fortifying² their camp. 2. Let us inquire of³ the ambassadors how many Germans there are in Gaul. 3. Caesar knew how many Germans there were in Gaul. 4. Let us inquire of the captives how many states of Gaul are in arms. 5. Did Caesar know⁴ how many states of Gaul were in arms? He knew⁴ which states were in arms. 6. Inquire in which direction the Rhine flows.

7. Caesar knew how large the states of Gaul were. Did he then know how brave the Belgians were? He knew who were the bravest of all the Gauls. 8. The Gauls did⁵ not understand who their enemies were. So great fear took possession of the Gauls that they did not understand who their enemies were.⁶ 9. He inquired of the captives into what place Ariovistus was leading his army.⁵

¹ *Partem*, lit. *part*; render *direction*; *rem*, lit. *thing*; render *reason*.

² What *Mood* will you use in Latin? See 127, 529, I.

³ Or *from*; render by *ab*. This preposition has the form *ab* before vowels and *h*; the form *ā* or *ab* before the other letters.

⁴ What *Tense* will you use? See 129, 9.

⁵ *Did not understand*, continued action like *sciēbat* in 129, 9; *inquired*, i. e., repeatedly = *was inquiring*, as in 129, 2.

⁶ For *Moods*, see 123, Rule XLIII., and 127, Rule LV.

LESSON XLIV.

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE. — RULE LVI.

131. The *Present Infinitive*¹ of the verb *Sum* is *esse*, 'to be.' In the four conjugations, the *Present Infinitive Active* has the following

ENDINGS.

CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
āre,	ēre,	ere,	īre.

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE.

<i>First conjugation,</i>	<i>amāre, to love.</i>
<i>Second conjugation,</i>	<i>monēre, to advise.</i>
<i>Third conjugation,</i>	<i>regere, to rule.</i>
<i>Fourth conjugation,</i>	<i>audīre, to hear.</i>
<i>Verb sum,</i>	<i>esse, to be.</i>

132. Examples. — Infinitive.

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1. Haec vitāre cupit. | <i>He desires TO AVOID these things.</i> |
| 2. Vincere scit. | <i>He knows how TO CONQUER.</i> |
| 3. Gestunt scire omnia. | <i>They long TO KNOW all things.</i> |

NOTE. — In these examples observe that *vitāre* depends upon the verb *cupit*, 'he desires to avoid,' *vincere* upon *scit*, and *scire* upon *gestunt*. They are all in the infinitive, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE LVI. — Infinitive.

533. Many verbs admit an Infinitive to complete or qualify their meaning:

Audeō dicere, *I dare say* (I venture to say). Cic. Haec vitāre cupimus, *we desire to avoid these things*. Cic. Cōstituit nōn prōgredi, *he decided not to advance*. Caes. Crēdulī esse coepērunt, *they began to be credulous*. Cic. Vincere scīs, *you know how to conquer* (you know to conquer). Liv. Victōriā ūti nescīs, *you do not know how to use victory*. Liv.

¹ For the *Infinitive*, see p. 14, 200, I.

133. In the Irregular verb *Possum*, 'I am able,' a compound of *Sum*,¹ the THIRD PERSON in the *singular* and *plural* of the *present*, *imperfect*, *future*, and *perfect* of the *indicative* has the following forms:

SINGULAR.	PARADIGM.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i> potest, he is able ;		possunt, they are able.
<i>Imp.</i> poterat, he was able ;		poterant, they were able.
<i>Fut.</i> poterit, he will be able ;		poterunt, they will be able.
<i>Perf.</i> potuit, he has been able ;		potuerunt, they have been able.

134. Vocabulary.

Altitudō, inis, <i>f.</i>	height, depth.
Autem, conj., foot-note p. 316.	but.
Citerior, ius, 86, 100,	nearer ; citerior Gallia, Cisalpine Gaul, Gaul south of the Alps.
Cogit,	he drives together, brings together, collects ; he forces, compels.
Comportat,	he brings together, gathers.
Cōstituit, pres. and perfect, ²	he determines, has determined, determined.
Diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, <i>adv.</i>	for a long time.
Dubitat,	he hesitates, doubts.
Expūgnat,	he takes by storm.
Frūmentum, ī, <i>n.</i>	grain.
Ibī, <i>adv.</i>	there.
Ītalia, ae, <i>f.</i>	Italy.
Lātitudō, inis, <i>f.</i>	width, thickness.
Mātūrat, with infinitive,	he hastens. ³
Pēs, pedis, <i>m.</i>	foot.
Potest,	he is able, can.
Propter, prep. w. acc.	on account of.
Renovat,	he renews.
Vastat,	he lays waste.
Venetia, ae, <i>f.</i>	Venetia, the country of the Veneti.
Vērō, <i>adv.</i>	in truth, indeed ; as conj., but.

¹ Compounded of *potis*, 'able,' and *sum*, 'I am.'

² In a few verbs the third person singular has the same form in the perfect as in the present. Thus *cōstituit* in the present tense means *he determines* ; in the perfect, *he has determined*, or *he determined*. *Contendit*, 124, is also either *present* or *perfect*.

³ Thus *dicere mātūrat*, he hastens to write.

135. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar hōc oppidum propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem expūgnāre nōn poterat. 2. Hostēs impetum nostrōrum militum diūtius sustinēre nōn poterant. 3. Gallī adventum Rōmānōrum ibī exspectāre cōstituērunt. 4. Militēs omnia impedimenta sēcum¹ portāre dēbent. 5. Militēs sēsē² diūtius sustinēre nōn poterant. 6. Caesar autem castra in altitudinem pedum³ duodecim vallō mūnīre cōstituit. 7. Imperātor hanc urbem māgnam oppūgnāre nōn dubitāvit.

8. Imperātor hunc locum altissimō mūrō mūnīre dēbet. 9. Venetī cōstituērunt oppida mūnīre, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportāre, nāvēs in Venetiam cōgere. 10. Tum vērō Caesar manūs⁴ māgnās cōgere cōstituit. 11. Gallī multīs dē causīs bellum renovāre cōstituērunt. 12. Rōmānī agrōs nostrōs vastāre nōn dēbent. 13. Imperātor duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā cōscribere mātūrāvit. 14. Hostēs omnem exercitum in ūnum locum condūcere mātūrāvērunt.

136. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are the enemy able to take our city by storm? They can (*are able to*) attack the city, but on account of the valor of the citizens, and the height of the wall, they cannot take it by storm. 2. Caesar hastened to fortify his camp. 3. The soldiers determined to remain and avoid suspicion of fear. 4. The Romans determined to fortify their camp with a rampart. 5. They determined to enrol five legions in Italy. 6. Were the Helvetii able to take their grain with them.⁴ They were not able to take all their grain with them.

¹ Observe that the preposition *cum* is appended to the pronoun *sē*. See 102, 184, 6.

² Reduplicated form of the pronoun. See 102, 184, 4.

³ Construe with *vallō*.

⁴ See 94, and 102, 184, 6.

7. The enemy are so brave that they do not hesitate¹ to renew the war. 8. Ought not the commander to ascertain what states are in arms?² He has not been able to ascertain what states are in arms. 9. The enemy will not be able to sustain the attacks of our soldiers. 10. The citizens did not hesitate to remain in Italy. 11. Let not the commander hesitate to fortify the city with a high wall. 12. The soldiers ought not to hesitate to remain in line, that they may avoid suspicion of fear.

LESSON XLV.

READING AT SIGHT. — DIRECTIONS. — EXERCISE.

137. *Directions for Reading at Sight.*

I. Read at Sight in the Latin, slowly and attentively, the entire passage that is assigned for the exercise. In this reading

1. Remember that the full and exact meaning of an inflected word contains two distinct elements.

1) The *general meaning* of the word, without reference to *case, number, mood, tense*, etc., that is, the meaning of the **STEM**. See 11, 46.

2) The meaning of the endings which mark *case, number, mood, tense*, etc., that is, the meaning of the **SUFFIXES**.

2. Recall as vividly as possible the exact meaning of all the words which you recognize.

3. Notice carefully the *ending* of each word, and thus determine which words are nouns, which verbs, etc.

4. Determine from these endings *case, number, voice, mood, tense*, etc., and endeavor to recall the exact force of each.

¹ What *Mood* will you use in rendering into Latin? See 123, 500, II

² By what *Mood* will you render *arc*? See 127, 529, I.

5. In Complex and Compound Sentences, observe carefully the relation of the clauses to one another, and determine which are *principal*,¹ and which are *subordinate*.¹ Remember that a clause introduced by a conjunction meaning *and*, *or*, *but*, *therefore*, adds a new thought, while a clause introduced by a conjunction meaning *when*, *since*, etc., only explains or modifies some other clause.

II. Having by this first reading acquired a good general idea of the entire passage, read a second time with the same care. If in this reading, any word should appear unfamiliar, endeavor to recall some passage in which you have previously met it. Be not hasty in turning to the passage, but use the knowledge which you already possess. As a last resort, if you fail to recall the word, turn to the vocabulary for it, and make yourself so familiar with it, that you will always recognize it in future.

III. Having by these two readings thoroughly mastered the entire passage, read the Latin aloud two or three times, for the important purpose of appreciating and enjoying the thought in its original form. By this practice the Latin will become, in time, a second vernacular, and you will enjoy reading a fine passage in Latin as you would enjoy reading one in English.

IV. After having thus read and examined the Latin, write a translation² of the passage in good idiomatic English.

138. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*³

Omnēs ferē Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāvērunt. Caesar igitur duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā cōn-

¹ On *Principal* and *Subordinate Clauses*, see p. 11, 348, notes.

² On Translation, see Suggestions XII, to XIX.

³ It is hoped that the pupil will enter upon this exercise with the determination to master it without help from any source. He has already had in previous lessons *every word* and *every construction* contained in it. Tho

scripsit et in interiorem Galliam quā dēdūceret Peditum lēgātum mīsit. Ipse postea ad exercitum contendit et Gallis imperāvit ut quid Belgae gererent cōgnōscerent. Hī cōstanter omnēs nūtiāvērunt: "Belgae manūs magnās cōgunt, et omnem exercitum in ūnum locum condūcunt." Tum vērō Caesar rem frūmentāriam comparāvit et ad finēs Belgārum contendit. Rēmī autem quī nōn in armīs erant, ad eum lēgātōs mīserunt quī cum populō Rōmānō pācem et amīcitiam cōfirmārent, et dicerent: "Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt."

139. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Remi did not conspire against the Roman people. All the rest of the Belgae did not hesitate to conspire against the Romans. 2. Caesar enrolled many legions in Italy and Gaul. He determined to send a lieutenant to conduct¹ two legions into the interior of Gaul. 3. The Remi hastened to establish peace and friendship with the Roman people. They will announce to the Romans what the rest of the Belgae are doing.

4. Caesar determined to hasten to the army and to ascertain what the Gauls were doing. 5. The tidings so disturbed the commander that he hastened² to enrol soldiers and to fortify his camp. 6. Let us prepare supplies of grain and hasten² toward the territory of the enemy. 7. Caesar ordered Peditus, the lieutenant, to conduct the legions into Gaul. 8. The Belgae determined to collect large bands of men. 9. The commander determined to send five legions to withstand¹ the attack of the enemy.

important point is, not that he should translate it absolutely at sight, but that he should master it entirely by means of his own resources. These exercises in Reading at Sight are intended to encourage independent work, to promote self-reliance in study, and to give facility in reading and appreciating Latin.

¹ What *Mood* should be used in rendering into Latin? See 119, 497, I.

² For the choice of words, see 124 and 134.

LESSON XLVI.

VERB *Sum* IN FULL.140. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

CONJUGATION.

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations. These Four Conjugations are distinguished from one another by the stem characteristics or by the endings of the Infinitive, as follows:

	CHARACTERISTICS.	INFINITIVE ENDINGS.
CONJ. I.	ā	ā-re
II.	ē	ē-re
III.	e	e-re
IV.	i	i-re

202. PRINCIPAL PARTS. — The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine are called from their importance, the *Principal Parts* of the verb.

203. The ENTIRE CONJUGATION of any regular verb may be readily formed from the Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.¹

1. SUM, *I am*, is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly, its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset. The Principal Parts are —

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.
Sum, <i>I am</i> ,	esse, <i>to be</i> ,	fuī, <i>I have been</i> .

¹ In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings which distinguish the various forms are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed. In the principal tenses each ending contains the characteristic vowel.

204. Sum, *I am*.—STEMS, *es*, *fu*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRÆS. IND.	PRÆS. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE. ¹
sum,	esse,	fuī,	—

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.		PRESENT TENSE.	PLURAL.
sum, ²	<i>I am,</i>	sumus,	<i>we are,</i>
es,	<i>thou art,</i> ³	estis,	<i>you are,</i>
est,	<i>he is ;</i>	sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

IMPERFECT.

eram,	<i>I was,</i>	erāmus,	<i>we were,</i>
erās,	<i>thou wast,</i> ³	erātis,	<i>you were,</i>
erat,	<i>he was ;</i>	erant,	<i>they were.</i>

FUTURE.

erō, ⁴	<i>I shall be,</i> ⁵	erimus,	<i>we shall be,</i>
eris,	<i>thou wilt be,</i>	eritis,	<i>you will be,</i>
erit,	<i>he will be ;</i>	erunt,	<i>they will be.</i>

PERFECT.

fuī,	<i>I have been,</i> ⁵	fuimus,	<i>we have been,</i>
fuisti,	<i>thou hast been,</i>	fuistis,	<i>you have been,</i>
fuit,	<i>he has been ;</i>	fuērunt,	<i>they have been.</i>
		fuēre,	

PLUPERFECT.

fueram,	<i>I had been,</i>	fuerāmus,	<i>we had been,</i>
fuerās,	<i>thou hadst been,</i>	fuerātis,	<i>you had been,</i>
fuerat,	<i>he had been ;</i>	fuerant,	<i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

fuerō,	<i>I shall have been,</i>	fuerimus,	<i>we shall have been,</i>
fueris,	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>	fueritis,	<i>you will have been,</i>
fuerit,	<i>he will have been ;</i>	fuerint,	<i>they will have been.</i>

¹ The Supine is wanting.² Sum is for *esum*, *eram* for *esam*. Whenever *s* of the stem *es* comes between two vowels, *e* is dropped, as in *sum*, *sunt*, or *s* is changed to *r*, as in *eram*, *erō* ; see p. 3.31. The pupil will observe that the endings which are added to the roots *es* and *fu* are distinguished by the type.³ Or *you are*, and in the Imperfect, *you were* ; *thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse.⁴ In verbs, final *o*, marked **ō**, is generally long.⁵ Or, Future, *I will be* ; Perfect, *I was*.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.		PRESENT.	PLURAL.
sim,	<i>may I be,¹</i>	simus,	<i>let us be,</i>
sis,	<i>mayst thou be,²</i>	sitis,	<i>be ye, may you be,</i>
sit,	<i>let him be, may he be ;</i>	sint,	<i>let them be.</i>

IMPERFECT.

essem,	<i>I should be,¹</i>	essēmus,	<i>we should be,</i>
essēs,	<i>thou wouldst be,</i>	essētis,	<i>you would be,</i>
esset,	<i>he would be ;</i>	essent,	<i>they would be.</i>

PERFECT.

fuerim,	<i>I may have been,¹</i>	fuerimus,	<i>we may have been,</i>
fueris,	<i>thou mayst have been,</i>	fueritis,	<i>you may have been,</i>
fuerit,	<i>he may have been ;</i>	fuerint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

fuissem,	<i>I should have been,</i>	fuissemus,	<i>we should have been,</i>
fuisēs,	<i>thou wouldst have been,</i>	fuisētis,	<i>you would have been,</i>
fuisset,	<i>he would have been ;</i>	fuisent,	<i>they would have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

Prea. es,	<i>be thou,</i>	este,	<i>be ye.</i>
Fut. estō,	<i>thou shalt be,²</i>	estōte,	<i>ye shall be,</i>
estō,	<i>he shall be ;³</i>	suntō,	<i>they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

Prea. esse,	<i>to be.</i>
Perf. fuisse,	<i>to have been.</i>
Fut. futūrus esse,⁴	<i>to be about to be.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

Fut. futūrus,⁴ *about to be.*

1. In the Paradigm all the forms beginning with *e* or *s* are from the stem *es* ; all others from the stem *fu*.⁵

2. RARE FORMS :—*forem, forēs, foret, forent, fore, for essem, esis, esset, essent, futūrus esse ; siem, sis, siet, sient, or fuam, fuās, fual, fuant, for sim, sis, sit, sint.*

¹ On the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196, and remember that it is often best rendered by the Indicative. Thus, *sim* may often be rendered *I am*, and *fuerim*, *I have been*.

² Or *be thou, or may you be.*

³ The *Fut.* may also be rendered like the *Pres.*, or with *let* : *be thou ; let him be.*

⁴ *Futūrus* is declined like *bonus*. So in the Infinitive : *futūrus, a, um esse.*

⁵ *Es* and *fu* are roots as well as stems. As the basis of this paradigm they are properly stems, but as they are not derived from more primitive forms, they are in themselves roots.

LESSON XLVII.

VERB SUM. — RULE XIV. — EXERCISES.

141. *Examples. — Dative with Adjectives.*

Patria omnibus cāra est. Native country is dear TO ALL.

Pāx nobis grāta fuit. Peace was acceptable TO US.

NOTE. — Observe in these examples that *omnibus*, limiting the meaning of *cāra*, 'dear,' and *nobis* that of *grāta*, 'acceptable,' are both in the *Dative*. This Latin usage is expressed in the following

RULE XIV. — Dative with Adjectives.

391. With adjectives the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative :

Patriae solum omnibus cārum est, the soil of their country is dear TO ALL. Cic. *Id aptum est tempori,* this is adapted TO THE TIME. Cic. *Canis similis lupō est,* a dog is similar to a wolf. Cic.

142. *Vocabulary.*

Continenter, <i>adv.</i>	<i>continually, incessantly.</i>
Divicō, ōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>Divico</i> , an Helvetian chieftain.
Flūmen, inis, <i>n.</i>	<i>stream, river.</i>
Lēgātīō, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>embassy.</i>
Longē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>by far, far, long.</i>
Nōbīlis, <i>e.</i>	<i>noble, of high birth.</i>
Omnīnō, <i>adv.</i>	<i>in all, only.</i>
Orgetorix, igis, <i>m.</i>	<i>Orgetorix</i> , an Helvetian chieftain.
Pār, paris, ¹	<i>equal, a match for.</i>
Pōns, pontis, <i>m.</i>	<i>bridge.</i>
Rhodanus, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>the Rhone.</i>
Sēquanus, a, um,	<i>Sequanian, of the Sequani</i> ; see 211.
Testis, is, <i>m. and f.</i> ¹	<i>witness.</i>
Tōtus, ² a, um,	<i>all, the whole of.</i> [Gaul. ³
Ūterior, us, ² <i>adj. comp.</i>	<i>farther</i> ; Gallia ūterior, <i>Transalpine</i>

¹ Decline *testis* like *hostis*; *par* like *audāx*, i. e., with the same case-endings.

² See 45, 151, and 86, 166.

³ That is, Gaul beyond the Alps from Rome, Gaul west of the Alps.

143. *Translate into English.*

1. Belgae, quī Gallōrum¹ omnium fortissimī erant, cum Germānīs continenter bellum gerēbant. 2. Helvētiī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt, cūjus² lēgātīōnis Divicō prīnceps fuit. 3. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorix. 4. Fuerat omnīnō in Galliā ūlteriōre legiō ūna. 5. Ad bellum parātī sīmus. 6. Legiōnēs multās cōnscripsit ut ad bellum parātus esset.³

7. Hūjus rēi populus Rōmānus sit testis. 8. Ager Sēquanus erat optimus tōtīus Galliae. 9. Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, tertiam partem agrī Sēquanī occupāvit. 10. In⁴ eō flūmine pōns erat. 11. Militēs omnēs fortēs esse dēbent. 12. Hostēs parēs esse nostrō exercituī⁵ nōn poterant.

144. *Translate into Latin.*

1. You shall be chief of the embassy which the citizens are sending to the enemy. 2. You are the bravest of all the soldiers. 3. Who will be braver than this soldier? 4. Let us all be brave. 5. Did he not say: "All the Gauls were in arms"? He says: "All the Gauls will be in arms." 6. Caesar was in Italy, but his legions were in Gaul. 7. The Helvetii said: "We are the bravest of the Gauls."

8. The Gauls had always been prepared for war. 9. Shall you be prepared to withstand the attack of the enemy? 10. Let us be brave, that we may be prepared to withstand the attacks of the enemy. 11. Were the Gauls a match for the Romans? They were not a match for the Roman soldiers.

¹ *Gallōrum* is a Partitive Genitive, governed by *fortissimī* used substantively, according to Rule XVI.; see 28, 397.

² *Cūjus* is here an adjective, agreeing with *lēgātīōnis*, according to Rule XXXIV.; see 40.

³ Why in the *Subjunctive*, and why in the *Imperfect*? See 119, Rules XLI. and XLII.

⁴ Render *over*, and observe the difference of idiom between the Latin and the English.

⁵ Why in the *Dative*? See 141, Rule XIV.

LESSON XLVIII.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

145. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Amō* learn the Indicative Mood of the Active voice. See page 124.

LESSON XLIX.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE. — EXERCISES.

146. *Vocabulary.*

Acceptus, a, um,	acceptable.
Aedui, ōrum, m. pl.	the Aedui, Aeduians, a tribe of
Amicus, a, um,	friendly. [central Gaul.
Auxillum, li, n.	aid.
Collocō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to place, station.
Divitiacus, i, m.	Divitiacus, an Aeduan chieftain.
Dumnorix, igis, m.	Dumnorix, an Aeduan chieftain.
Ēducit,	he leads out.
Finitimus, a, um,	neighboring.
Graecia, ae, f.	Greece.
Graviter, adv.	severely.
Hiberna, ōrum, n. pl.	winter quarters.
Jam, adv.	already.
Māximē, sup. adv.	most, very greatly.
Mōns, montis, m.	mountain.
Plēbs, plēbis, f.	the common people, populace.
Profectiō, ōnis, f.	departure, starting.
Senātus, ūs, m.	senate.
Trāns, prep. w. acc.	across, beyond. [Gaul.
Trēveri, ōrum, m. pl.	the Treveri, a tribe of northeastern

147. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar exercitum in hibernis collocāvit. 2. Helvētīi in tertium annum¹ profectionem lēge² cōnfirmant. 3. Cum

¹ In *tertium annum*, lit. 'into the third year'; render *for* or *upon the third year*.

² See 78, Rule XXV.

multis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmaverant. 4. Caesar Aeduorum principes, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, graviter accusavit. 5. Fugitivi hostibus eam rem nuntiaverunt. 6. Omnes auxilium a populo Romano implorabant. 7. Divitiacus Aeduus maxime plebi acceptus erat. 8. Belgae proximi sunt Germanis qui trans Rhenum incolunt. 9. Treveri proximi fluminis Rheno fuerunt.

10. Caesar tres legiones quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant ex hibernis eduxit.¹ 11. Tum in Gallia hiemabamus. 12. Auxilium a Caesare imploraveramus. 13. Num nostra consilia hostibus nuntiavisti? Non vestra consilia hostibus nuntiavi. 14. Principes Aeduorum graviter accusavistis. 15. Pro patria fortiter pugnabimus. 16. Nonne timoris suspicionem vitabis? In reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitabo. 17. Helvetii frumentum secum² portabunt. 18. Helvetii jam agros vastaverant et oppida expugnabant.

148. Translate into Latin.

1. Will this judge be acceptable to you? He will be acceptable to me and to all the citizens. 2. Have you announced this battle to the consul?³ I have announced it to the consul and to the senate. 3. Shall you pass the winter in Italy? We shall pass the winter in Greece. 4. The commander will place his whole army in winter quarters in Gaul, and pass the the winter himself in Italy.

5. We hastened to establish peace and friendship with the neighboring states. 6. Did you not implore aid from your friends? We implored aid from all our friends. 7. You have severely censured the commander himself. 8. The Remi were friendly to the Romans. 9. Of all the Gauls the Helvetii were the nearest to the Germans, with whom⁴ they were continually waging war.

¹ For *eduxit*, the perfect of *educit*.

² See 102, 181, 6,

³ For the proper construction, see 54, Rule XII.

⁴ With whom. See 106, 187, 2.

LESSON L.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE. — REVIEW
OF DECLENSIONS I. AND II. — RULE XXXI.

149. Vocabulary.

Absum, abesse, āfui,	to be absent, distant.
Collis, is, m, like ignis.	hill.
Convocō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to call together, assemble.
Fuga, ae, f.	flight.
Movet,	he moves.
Nox, noctis, f.	night.
Occultō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to hide.
Praesidium, ii, n.	garrison.
Septimus, a, um,	seventh.
Subducit,	he withdraws, leads off.
Tentō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to try.

150. Translate into English.

1. Rōmānī Helvētiōs superābunt. 2. Eō tempore¹ Helvētiī adventum Caesaris expectābant. 3. Aeduī bellī fortunam tentāverunt. 4. Nox fugam hostium nōn occultāvit. 5. Ariovistus eās omnēs cōpiās ūnō proeliō superāvit. 6. Prōximō diē Caesar ē castrīs cōpiās edūxit. 7. Nōne hōc proelium imperātōrī nūtiāvistī? 8. Hōc proelium imperātōrī nūtiābō. 9. Num bellum renovābitis? Multis dē causis² bellum renovābimus.

10. Caesar principēs Aeduōrum convocāvit et graviter eōs accūsāvit. 11. Septimō diē Ariovistī cōpiae ā nobīs nōn longē aberant. 12. Prōximā nocte castra movēbāmus. 13. Imperātōr castra movet ut intellegat³ utrum apud militēs pudor atque officium an timor valeat.³ 14. Caesar hōc

¹ For construction, see 93, Rule XXXI.

² Literally, *from or out of many causes*; render for many reasons.

³ Explain Mood; 119 and 127, Rules XLII. and LV.

oppidum occupāvit et ibi praesidium collocāvit. 15. Suās cōpiās in prōximum collem subdūcit.

151. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Caesar was at that time praising the soldiers of the tenth legion. 2. He had often praised the valor of that legion. 3. On what day did you renew the war? We renewed the war on the tenth day. 4. On which day did the ambassadors announce to you the flight of the enemy? They announced it to us on the same day. 5. Caesar had called together the chiefs of the Aedui, that he might upbraid¹ them. 6. Have you called us together at this time, that you may upbraid us? I have called you together that I may praise your valor, and that I may announce to you the approach of the enemy.

7. For what reason² did you renew the war at that time? We renewed the war that we might conquer the enemy. 8. At that time we were awaiting the arrival of the general. 9. On the next night the Gauls seized the town. 10. We shall conquer in a single battle³ all the forces of the enemy. 11. On the seventh day we shall have placed a garrison in the town, and on the next day we shall try the fortune of war.

LESSON LI.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE IN FULL. —
REVIEW OF DECLENSION III.

152. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Amō*, learn the Active voice in full. See the following page.

¹ For Mood and Tense, see 119, Rules XLI. and XLII.

² For what reason; see note on *multis de causis*, 150.

³ In a single battle; Latin idiom, *BY a single battle*.

FIRST CONJUGATION : A VERBS.

205. ACTIVE VOICE.—Amō, *I love.*VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, *ama*.¹

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRÆS. IND.	PRÆS. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
amō,	amāre,	amāvī,	amātum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.		PRESENT TENSE.		PLURAL.
amō, ¹	<i>I love,</i> ²	amāmus,		<i>we love,</i>
amās,	<i>you love,</i> ³	amātis,		<i>you love,</i>
amat,	<i>he loves ;</i>	amant,		<i>they love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

amābam,	<i>I was loving,</i>	amābāmus,	<i>we were loving,</i>
amābas,	<i>you were loving,</i>	amābātis,	<i>you were loving,</i>
amābat,	<i>he was loving ;</i>	amābant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

FUTURE.

amābō,	<i>I shall love,</i> ⁴	amābimus,	<i>we shall love,</i>
amābis,	<i>you will love,</i>	amābitis,	<i>you will love,</i>
amābit,	<i>he will love ;</i>	amābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

PERFECT.

amāvī,	<i>I have loved,</i> ⁵	amāvimus,	<i>we have loved,</i>
amāvistī,	<i>you have loved,</i>	amāvistis,	<i>you have loved,</i>
amāvit,	<i>he has loved ;</i>	amāverunt, ēre,	<i>they have loved</i>

PLUPERFECT.

amāveram,	<i>I had loved,</i>	amāverāmus,	<i>we had loved,</i>
amāverās,	<i>you had loved,</i>	amāverātis,	<i>you had loved,</i>
amāverat,	<i>he had loved ;</i>	amāverant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

amāverō,	<i>I shall have loved,</i> ⁴	amāverimus,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
amāveris,	<i>you will have loved,</i>	amāveritis,	<i>you will have loved,</i>
amāverit,	<i>he will have loved ;</i>	amāverint,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

¹ The final *ā* of the stem disappears in *amō* for *ama-ō*, *amem*, *amēs*, etc., for *ama-im*, *ama-is*, etc. Also in the Pass. in *amor* for *ama-or*, *amer*, etc., for *ama-ir*, etc. Final *o*, marked *ō*, is generally long.

² Or *I am loving. I do love.* So in the Imperfect, *I loved, I was loving, I did love*

³ Or *thou lovest.* So in the other tenses, *thou wast loving, thou wilt love*, etc.

⁴ Or *I will love.* So in the Future Perfect, *I shall have loved* or *I will have loved.*

⁵ Or *I loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.		PRESENT.	PLURAL.
amem,	<i>may I love,¹</i>	amēmus,	<i>let us love,</i>
amēs,	<i>may you love,</i>	amētis,	<i>may you love,</i>
amet,	<i>let him love ;</i>	ament,	<i>let them love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

amārem,	<i>I should love,</i>	amārēmus,	<i>we should love,</i>
amārēs,	<i>you would love,</i>	amārētis,	<i>you would love,</i>
amāret,	<i>he would love ;</i>	amārent,	<i>they would love.</i>

PERFECT.

amāverim,	<i>I may have loved,²</i>	amāverimus,	<i>we may have loved,</i>
amāveris,	<i>you may have loved,</i>	amāveritis,	<i>you may have loved,</i>
amāverit,	<i>he may have loved ;</i>	amāverint,	<i>they may have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

amāvīsem,	<i>I should have loved,</i>	amāvīssēmus,	<i>we should have loved,</i>
amāvīssēs,	<i>you would have loved,</i>	amāvīssētis,	<i>you would have loved,</i>
amāvīset,	<i>he would have loved ;</i>	amāvīssent,	<i>they would have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> amā,	<i>love thou ;</i>	amāte,	<i>love ye.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> amātō,	<i>thou shalt love,</i>	amātōte,	<i>ye shall love,</i>
amātō,	<i>he shall love ;</i>	amantō,	<i>they shall love.</i>

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> amāre,	<i>to love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> amāvisse,	<i>to have loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> amātūrus³ esse,	<i>to be about to love.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> amāns,⁴	<i>loving.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> amātūrus,³	<i>about to love.</i>

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i> amandī,	<i>of loving,</i>
<i>Dat.</i> amandō,	<i>for loving,</i>
<i>Acc.</i> amandum,	<i>loving,</i>
<i>Abl.</i> amandō,	<i>by loving.</i>

SUPINE.

<i>Acc.</i> amātum,	<i>to love,</i>
<i>Abl.</i> amātū,	<i>to love, be loved</i>

¹ On the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196.² Often best rendered *I have loved*. So in the Pluperfect, *I had loved*.³ Decline like *bonus*, 39, 148.⁴ For declension, see 86, 157.

LESSON LII.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE. — REVIEW OF
DECLENSION III. — RULE VI. — EXERCISES.

153. *Examples. — Two Accusatives.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Platōnem Homērum philo-</i>
<i>sophōrum appellant.</i> | <i>They call</i> PLATO THE HOMER <i>of</i>
<i>philosophers.</i> |
| 2. <i>Urbem Rōmam vocāvit.</i> | <i>He called</i> THE CITY ROME. |

NOTE. — In these examples observe that *appellant*, 'they call,' takes *two Accusatives*, *Platōnem* and *Homērum*, both referring to the same person, and that *vocāvit*, 'he called,' also takes *two Accusatives*, *urbem* and *Rōmam*, both referring to the same city. This Latin usage is expressed in the following

RULE VI. — Two Accusatives — Same Person.

373. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing:

Hamilcarem imperatōrem fecērunt, they made Hamilcar COMMANDER. *Nep. Ancum rēgem populus creāvit, the people elected Ancus* KING. *Liv. Summum cōsiliū appellārunt Senātum, they called their highest council* SENATE. *Cic.*

1. **PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.** — One of the two Accusatives is the *Direct Object*, and the other an essential part of the Predicate. The latter may be called a *Predicate Accusative*; see 59, Rule I.

154. *Vocabulary.*

Allobrogēs, um, m. pl.	<i>the Allobroges, a tribe of southeast-</i> <i>ern Gaul; sing. Allobrox, ogis.</i>
Appellō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to call.</i>
Boii, ōrum, m. pl.	<i>the Boii, a tribe of central Gaul.</i>
Conjūnx, conjugis, m. and f.	<i>spouse, husband, wife.</i>
Cōservō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to preserve.</i>
Filius, ii, ¹ m.	<i>son.</i> [army.
Galba, ae, m.	<i>Galba, a lieutenant in Caesar's</i>

¹ In the singular, the *Genitive* and *Vocative* are generally contracted to *fili*. See 32, 51, 5.

Gēns, gentis, <i>f</i> , like <i>cliēns</i> .	race, tribe, nation.
Liberī, ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i> ¹	children.
Mārcus, <i>i, m.</i>	Marcus, a Roman name.
Nōmen, <i>inis, n.</i>	name.
Nōminō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to name, call.
Nūtrix, <i>icis, f.</i>	nurse.
Octōdūrus, <i>i, m.</i>	Octodurus, a town of the Veragri,
Prōpulsō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to repulse. [now Martigny.
Recūsō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to reject.
Rōma, <i>ae, f.</i>	Rome.
Sicīlia, <i>ae, f.</i>	Sicily. [Gaul.
Veragrī, ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i>	the Veragri, a tribe of eastern
Vergobretus, <i>i, m.</i>	Vergobretus, the title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui.

155. Translate into English.

1. Senātus Rōmānus Aeduōs frātrēs appellāvit. 2. Senātus Ariovistum rēgem et amīcum appellāverat. 3. Senātus patrem Casticī populī² Rōmānī amīcum appellat. 4. Galba in vicō Veragrōrum hiemābat. 5. Gallī hunc vicum Octōdūrum appellant. 6. Mārcus Catō nūtrīcem plēbis Rōmānae Siciliam nōminābat. 7. Gallī omnēs auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrent. 8. Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum incolunt, auxilium ā Caesare implōrāre cōstituērunt.

9. Boiī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, hanc urbem oppūgnāre cōstituērunt. 10. Cōservāte vōs, conjugēs, liberōs, fortūnāsque vestrās. 11. Ariovistus cum Rōmānīs dēcertāre parātus erat. 12. Nē³ timor exercitum Rōmānum occupet. 13. Utinam⁴ timor omnem hostium exercitum occupāvisset.⁴ 14. Nē populī Rōmānī amīcitiā recūsēmus. 15. Prō patriā fortiter pūgnēmus et hostēs prōpulsēmus. 16. Ariovistus partem suārum copiārum quae castra Rōmāna oppūgnāret⁵ mīsit.

¹ Not used in the singular.

² Construe with *amicum*.

³ Why is *nē* rather than *nōn* used? See 114, 483, 3.

⁴ For *utinam* and for the force of the *Pluperfect*, see 114, 483, 1 and 2.

⁵ For the use of *Mood*, see Rule XLII.

156. *Translate into Latin.*

1. They called the city Rome. 2. The Aedui called their chief Vergobretus. 3. Will you call us brothers? We shall call you all brothers. 4. The Romans call us Gauls. 5. At that time we called Ariovistus king. 6. Did not the consul name his son Marcus? Cicero the consul named his son Marcus. 7. The citizens called Marcus Cato wise. 8. The enemy had determined to call the bravest of their leaders general.

9. Galba determined to winter with the legion in a village which the Gauls call Octodurus. 10. Do you call Ariovistus a friend or an enemy?¹ I call him the enemy of the Roman people. 11. He inquired² whether you called him a friend or an enemy.³ 12. Ariovistus, whom the Germans called king, was prepared to try the fortune of war. 13. The Gauls implored aid of the Romans, in order that they might repulse the enemy.

LESSON LIII.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE PASSIVE. — REVIEW OF DECLENSIONS IV. AND V. — RULE XXII.

157. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Amō*, learn the Indicative Mood of the Passive voice. See page 136.

158. *Examples. — Ablative.*

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 1. Caedem ā vōbis dēpellit. | <i>He wards off slaughter FROM YOU.</i> |
| 2. Statua ex aere facta. | <i>A statue made OF BRONZE.</i> |
| 3. Expulsus est patriā. | <i>He was banished FROM HIS COUNTRY.</i> |
| 4. Ars utilitāte laudātur. | <i>An art is praised BECAUSE OF ITS USEFULNESS.</i> |

¹ For the construction of *Double or Disjunctive Questions*, see 106, 353.

² Or *was inquiring*, imperfect.

³ For the construction, see 127, 529, 3.

NOTE. — In these examples *rōbīs* (*ā rōbīs*), 'from you,' *aere* (*ex aere*), 'of bronze,' *patriā*, 'from his country,' and *ūtilitāte*, 'because of its usefulness,' are all in the *Ablative*, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE XXII. — Separation, Source, Cause.

413. Separation, Source, and Cause are denoted by the *Ablative with or without a preposition* :

SEPARATION. — *Caedem ā rōbīs dēpellō*, I ward off slaughter FROM YOU. Cic. *Expulsus est patriā*, he was banished from his country. Cic. *Urbem commēatū privāvit*, he deprived the city of supplies. Nep. *Cōnatū dēstitērunt*, they desisted from the attempt. Caes.

SOURCE. — *Hōc audivi dē parente meō*, I heard this FROM MY FATHER. Cic. *Oriundi ab Sabinis*, descended FROM THE SABINES. Liv. *Statua ex aere facta*, a statue made of bronze. Cic.

CAUSE. — *Ars ūtilitāte laudātur*, an art is praised BECAUSE OF ITS USEFULNESS. Cic. *Rogātū vēneram*, I had come by request. Cic. *Ex vulnere aeger*, ill in consequence of his wound. Cic.

415. The ABLATIVE OF SOURCE more commonly takes a preposition; see examples under 413. It includes *agency, parentage, material*, etc.

I. The *agent* or *author* of an action is designated by the *Ablative* with *ā* or *ab* :

Occisus est ā Thēbānis, he was slain by the Thebans. Nep.

NOTE 1. — The Accusative with *per* may be used of the person through whose agency the action is effected :

Ab Oppianicō per Fabriciōs factum est, it was accomplished by Oppianicus THROUGH THE AGENCY OF THE FABRICII. Cic.

LESSON LIV.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE PASSIVE. — RULE XXII. — EXERCISES.

159. Vocabulary.

Conventus, ūs, m.	assembly, meeting, council, convention.
Ēnūtiō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to report, disclose, announce.
Etiam, adē.	also, even.

Lingua, ae, f.	tongue, language.
Liscus, i, m.	Liscus, the chief magistrate of the
Meritō, adv.	deservedly. [Aedui.
Paulatim, adv.	little by little, by degrees, gradually.
Per, prep. w. acc.	through, by, over.
Prōvincia, ae, f.	province. [of northwestern Gaul.
Santonēs, um, m. pl.	the Santoni or Santones, a tribe
Sed, conj.	but.

160. Translate into English.

1. Militēs legiōnis decimae omnēs ā Caesare¹ laudantur.
 2. Eōdem tempore multae legiōnēs meritō laudābantur.
 3. Semper laudāberis. 4. Ab omnibus meritō laudāmini.
 5. Ab omnibus laudātus es. 6. Divitiacus ad Caesarem vocā-
 tus erat. 7. Haec omnia Ariovistō enūntiāta sunt. 8. Pater
 Castici ā senātū amicus² appellātus erat. 9. Ea rēs per fugi-
 tīvōs³ hostibus nūntiātur. 10. Aeduī frātrēs ab senātū
 appellātī sunt.

11. Timor eōs, quī nōn māgnū in iē militārī⁴ ūsum
 habēbant, occupāvit; hōrum timōre, paulatim etiam iī, quī
 māgnū in castris ūsum habēbant, perturbābantur. 12.
 Prīncipēs Helvētiōrum ā Caesare convocātī sunt. 13. Fīnēs
 Santonum ā prōvinciā Rōmānā nōn longē absunt. 14. Liscus
 multās rēs illō diē in conventū dixit. 15. Iī quī tertiam
 Galliae partem incolunt nostrā linguā⁵ Gallī appellantur.
 16. Galba in vicō quī appellātur Octōdūrus hiemābat.

161. Translate into Latin.

1. The brave soldiers will be praised by the general. 2.
 You have been deservedly praised by Caesar himself. 3.

¹ See 158, 415, I., and observe that in the *Active* construction the *Author* or *Agent* of the action is denoted by the *Nominative*; in the *Passive* by the *Ablative* with *ā* or *ab*. Thus in this sentence the *Active* construction would be: *Caesar militēs . . . laudat*.

² *Predicate Nominative*; see 59, Rule I.

³ See 158, 415, note 1.

⁴ Lit. *in the military thing*; render, *in military affairs*.

⁵ *Ablative of Means*; see 78, Rule XXV.

Was not Cicero the consul praised by the senate? He was deservedly praised by the Roman people. 4. Has not this citizen been accused by you? He has not been accused by me, but by the magistrate. 5. Will not all these things be announced to the commander?

6. By whom were our plans announced to the enemy? They have not been announced to the enemy. 7. What has been announced to Caesar? All these things have been announced to him. 8. The consul, with a large army, is not far from the city. 9. At that time the enemy were not far from the village which is called Octodurus. 10. The Aedui, who had been called brothers by the senate, implored aid from Caesar.

LESSON LV.

FIRST CONJUGATION.—INDICATIVE PASSIVE.—REVIEW
OF ADJECTIVES OF DECLENSIONS I. AND II.

162. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Āc, conj.</i>	<i>and.</i>
<i>Alpēs, ium, f. pl.</i>	<i>the Alps.</i>
<i>Arverni, ōrum, m. pl.</i>	<i>the Arverni, a tribe of southern Gaul.</i>
<i>Celeriter, adv.</i>	<i>quickly.</i>
<i>Centuriō, ōnis, m.</i>	<i>centurion.</i>
<i>Excitō, āre, āvi, ātum,</i>	<i>to excite, arouse.</i>
<i>Fabius, ii, m.</i>	<i>Fabius, a celebrated Roman general.</i>
<i>Harūdēs, um, m. pl.</i>	<i>the Harudes, a tribe of southwestern</i>
<i>Nūper, adv.</i>	<i>recently, of late. [Germany.</i>
<i>Obstignō, āre, āvi, ātum,</i>	<i>to seal, sign and seal.</i>
<i>Paene, adv.</i>	<i>almost, well nigh, nearly.</i>
<i>Parō, āre, āvi, ātum,</i>	<i>to prepare.</i>
<i>Quintus, i, m.</i>	<i>Quintus, a Roman prænōmen.</i>
<i>Sēdēs, is, f, like nūbēs.</i>	<i>seat, abode; locus āc sēdēs, place of</i>
<i>Testāmentum, i, n.</i>	<i>will. [abode.</i>
<i>Trānsportō, āre, āvi, ātum,</i>	<i>to transport, carry over, take over,</i>
	<i>bring over. [universally.</i>
<i>Vulgō, adv.</i>	<i>commonly, as a general thing;</i>

163. *Translate into English.*

1. Oppida Aeduorum paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī expūgnāta sunt. 2. Rēs frūmentāria¹ māgnō cum periculō comparāta erat. 3. Eōdem tempore agrī Aeduorum vastābantur. 4. Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, amicus ā senātū appellātus erat. 5. Māgnae Gallōrum cōpiae ab Ariovistō ūnō proeliō² superātae sunt. 6. Timor exercitum populi Rōmānī occupāvit; etiam centuriōnēs quī māgnū in rē militārī ūsum habēbant perturbābantur; vulgō in castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur.

7. Omnēs ferē Gallī ad bellum celeriter excitantur. 8. Aeduī belli fortūnam tentāvērunt et superāti sunt. 9. Harūdēs nūper in Galliam trāsportātī sunt.³ Hīs locus ac sēdēs parābuntur. 10. Imperātor in ūlteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs cum quīnque legiōnibus contendit.⁴ 11. Multae gentēs ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur. 12. Arvernī ab Quīntō Fabiō bellō superāti sunt.

164. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Our fields have been devastated by the enemy. 2. Many towns had been taken by storm.⁵ 3. Large forces of the enemy will be conquered by our commander. 4. The Gauls had been conquered by Caesar in many battles.⁶ 5. Many chiefs had been called together by Caesar. 6. The chiefs who had been called together said many things in the council. 7. Many Germans were carried over into Gaul by Ariovistus. For these Germans places of abode had been

¹ *Rēs frūmentāria*, lit. *the thing relating to corn or grain, the affair of the grain*; render 'grain' or 'supplies.'

² Observe the difference of construction between expressions of AGENCY, AUTHORSHIP, *ab Ariovistō*, and MEANS, *proeliō*.

³ That is, *across the Rhine*. ⁴ See 134, foot-note 2.

⁵ *By storm* is not to be rendered by a separate word, but is involved in the meaning of the Latin verb.

⁶ *In many battles*; Latin idiom, *by many battles*.

prepared in Gaul. 8. These legions were wintering in Gaul with great peril.

9. We are not quickly aroused to war. 10. Many nations had already been aroused to war. 11. The fortune of war has been tried by the Gauls, and they will all be conquered. 12. Those who have large experience in military affairs, will not be quickly aroused to war. 13. Were all kings called friends of the Roman people? Many kings were called friends by the senate. 14. The lands of the Gauls were often devastated by the Germans. 15. The town in which our army wintered was not attacked by the Gauls.

LESSON LVI.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE. — REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES. — RULE LIX.

165. Lesson from the Grammar.

In the verb *Amō*, learn the Subjunctive Mood of the Passive voice. See page 137.

166. Examples. — Supine.

1. Ad Caesarem *congrātulātum* *They came to Caesar* TO CONGRATULATE *him*.
2. *Vēnērunt rēs repetitum*. *They came* TO DEMAND *restitution*.

NOTE. — In these examples the supines *congrātulātum* and *repetitum* are employed to denote the purpose of the leading action, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE LIX. — Supine in *um*.

546. The Supine in *um* is used with verbs of motion to express PURPOSE:

Légātī vēnērunt rēs repetitum, *deputies came to demand restitution*.
Liv. Ad Caesarem congrātulātum convēnērunt, *they came to Caesar to congratulate him. Caes.*

LESSON LVII.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE. —
RULE LIX. — EXERCISES.167. *Vocabulary.*

Câsus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>accident, occurrence, emergency.</i>
Commeâtus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>supplies.</i>
Dēditio, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>surrender.</i>
Iter, itinēris, <i>n.</i>	<i>march, journey; magna itinera, forced</i>
Jūdicium, ii, <i>n.</i>	<i>judgment, decision. [marches.</i>
Observō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to observe, keep, comply with.</i>
Sōcratēs, is, <i>m.</i>	<i>Socrates, the celebrated Greek philosopher.</i>
Sublevō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to assist, support.</i>

168. *Translate into English.*

1. Adventus hostium Caesarī nūtiētur. 2. Utinam ea res imperātōrī nūtiāta esset.¹ 3. Utinam haec cōnsilia Helvētiis nūntientur.¹ 4. Nē nostra cōnsilia per fugitivōs hostibus nūntientur. 5. Jūdicium senātūs observētur. 6. Utinam omnia senātūs jūdicia observāta essent. 7. Ab hīs lēgātīs quaerit quantaē Galliae cīvitatēs superātae sint.² 8. Ab hīs quaerēbat quae urbēs expūgnātae essent. 9. Quaerunt quam ob rem commeātūs nōn ad Caesarem portātī sint. 10. Eōdem tempore ille mōns ā Labiēnō occupētur.

11. Ab principibus Aeduōrum quaerēbat quam ob rem exercitus populī Rōmānī ab iīs nōn sublevārētur. 12. Caesar ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. 13. Sōcratēs omnium³ sapientissimus fuit. 14. Imperātor in citeriōrem Galliam magnīs itineribus⁴ contendit. 15. Hae nāvēs lātiōrēs erant quam reliquae. 16. Principēs Gallōrum lēgātōs ad senātum Rōmānum mittēbant. 17. Hostēs lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē

¹ Show the force of *Tenses*; see 114, 483, 2.

² See 127, Rule LV., and Suggestion XVII., 2.

³ *Partitive Genitive.*

⁴ *Lit. with large journeys; render with forced marches.*

169. *Translate into Latin.*

dēditionē¹ mittunt. 18. Aeduī lēgātos ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum² auxilium.

1. What towns have been taken by storm? 2. Let us ascertain what towns have been taken by storm. 3. Let not our fields be devastated in sight of your army. 4. Let us inquire for what reason these Germans have been brought over into Gaul. 5. May the laws be observed by us and by all the citizens. 6. May you all be wise. 7. Would that these boys were wiser. 8. Would that this mountain had been occupied by our army.

9. Let supplies be brought to our army by the Aedui. 10. Caesar was hastening with forced marches into Gaul. 11. Would that all the forces of the enemy had been conquered.³ 12. May our towns never be stormed by the enemy. 13. What towns of the Gauls were stormed by the Germans? 14. Let us inquire of the ambassadors what towns have been stormed and what fields have been devastated. 15. Let not these things be announced to the Germans. 16. Would that these towns were all occupied by our friends. Let us send ambassadors to the senate to ask⁴ aid.

LESSON LVIII.

FIRST CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. —
REVIEW OF PRONOUNS. — RULES LVII. AND LVIII.

170. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Amō*, learn the Passive voice in full. See the following page.

¹ Lit. concerning a surrender; render to treat for a capitulation, or to capitulate.

² To ask; see 166, Rule LIX.

³ See 114, 483, 2.

⁴ See 166, Rule LIX.

FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

206. PASSIVE VOICE.—Amor, *I am loved.*VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, *amā*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.

amōr,

PRES. INF.

amāri,

PERF. IND.

amātus sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am loved.

SINGULAR.

amōr

amāris, or re

amātur

PLURAL.

amāmur

amāmini

amantur

IMPERFECT.

I was loved.

amābar

amābaris, or re

amābatur

amābāmur

amābāmini

amābantur

FUTURE.

I shall or will be loved.

amābor

amāberis, or re

amābitur

amābimur

amābimini

amābuntur

PERFECT.

*I have been loved or I was loved.*amātus sum¹

amātus es

amātus est

amātī sumus

amātī estis

amātī sunt

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been loved.*amātus eram¹

amātus erās

amātus erat

amātī erāmus

amātī erātis

amātī erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been loved.*amātus erō¹

amātus eris

amātus erit

amātī erimus

amātī eritis

amātī erunt

¹ *Fui, fuisti*, etc., are sometimes used for *sum*, *es*, etc.: *amātus fui* for *amātus sum*. So *fueram, fuerās*, etc., for *eram*, etc.: also *fuerō*, etc., for *erō*, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be loved, let him be loved.¹

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amer	amēmur
amēris, or re	amēmini
amētur	amentur

IMPERFECT.

I should be loved, he would be loved.¹

amārer	amārēmur
amārēris, or re	amārēmini
amārētur	amārentur

PERFECT.

I may have been loved, or I have been loved.¹

amātus sim²	amātī simus
amātus sis	amātī sitis
amātus sit	amātī sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been loved, he would have been loved.¹

amātus essem²	amātī essēmus
amātus essēs	amātī essētis
amātus esset	amātī essent

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> amāre , be thou loved ;	amāmini , be ye loved.
<i>Fut.</i> amātor , thou shalt be loved, amātor , he shall be loved ;	amantor , they shall be loved

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> amāri , to be loved.	
<i>Perf.</i> amātus esse , ² to have been loved.	<i>Perf.</i> amātus , having been loved.
<i>Fut.</i> amātum iri , to be about to be loved.	<i>Ger.</i> ³ amandus , to be loved, deserv- ing to be loved.

¹ But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196.² *Fuerim, fueris*, etc., are sometimes used for *sim, sis*, etc.—So also *fuissem, fuisses*, etc., for *essem, essēs*, etc. : rarely *fuisse* for *esse*.³ *Ger.* = Gerundive; see p. 14, 200, IV., note.

171. *Examples. — Infinitive with Subject.*

1. *Pontem jubet rescindi.* *He orders THE BRIDGE TO BE BROKEN DOWN.*
2. *Sentimus calère ignem.* *We perceive THAT FIRE IS HOT.*

NOTE 1. — The Latin usage illustrated in these examples by the Accusative and the Infinitive is expressed in the following

RULE LVII. — Accusative and Infinitive.

534. Many transitive verbs admit both an Accusative and an Infinitive :

Tē sapere docet, he teaches you to be wise. Cic. *Eōs suum adventum exspectāre jussit, he ordered them to await his approach.* Caes. *Pontem jubet rescindi, he orders the bridge to be broken down.* Caes.

NOTE 2. — In the second of the above examples, the Accusative *ignem* may be regarded as the Subject of the Infinitive *calère*, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE LVIII. — Subject of Infinitive.

536. The Infinitive sometimes takes an Accusative as its subject :

Sentimus calère ignem, we perceive that fire is hot. Cic. *Platōnem Tarentum venisse reperiō, I find that Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic.

172. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Accommodātus, a, um,</i>	<i>fitted, adapted.</i>
<i>Carina, ae, f.</i>	<i>keel, bottom (of a vessel).</i>
<i>Concursus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>running together ; running about, running to and fro, agitation.</i>
<i>Extrā, prep. w. acc.</i>	<i>beyond, outside of.</i>
<i>Fluctus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>wave.</i>
<i>Fremitus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>din, noise.</i>
<i>Jubet,</i>	<i>he orders, commands.</i>
<i>Māgnitūdō, inis, f.</i>	<i>size.</i>
<i>Modus, ī, m.</i>	<i>measure, manner.</i>
<i>Nātiō, ōnis, f.</i>	<i>nation.</i>
<i>Nūdō, āre, āvī, ātum,</i>	<i>to bare, expose.</i>
<i>Paulum, ade.</i>	<i>a little, somewhat.</i>
<i>Plānus, a, um,</i>	<i>flat, level.</i>

Prior, us, <i>sup.</i> primus, a, um, 86, 166,	<i>former, first.</i>
Prōra, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>prow.</i>
Scientia, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>knowledge.</i>
Segusiānī, ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i>	<i>the Segusiani, a tribe of southeastern</i>
Significō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>to signify, indicate.</i> [Gaul.
Superus, a, um, <i>comp. supe-</i> <i>rior, us, sup. suprēmus</i> <i>and summus, a, um,</i>	<i>upper; summus, highest, greatest.</i>
Tardō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>to retard, check, hinder, impede.</i>

173. *Translate into English.*

1. Castra ab ūnā parte¹ nūdāta sunt. 2. Nē tōta castra nūdentur. 3. Caesaris adventū paulum hostium impetus tardātus est. 4. Omnēs in cōspectū imperātōris etiam in summō periculō fortiter pūgnābant. 5. Agrī nostrī vastārī² nōn dēbent. 6. Oppida Aeduōrum paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī expūgnārī nōn dēbent. 7. Timor hostium fremitū et concursū significābātur. 8. Māximae nātiōnēs ā Rōmānīs superātae sunt. 9. Intellegunt māximās nātiōnēs superātās esse.³

10. Ducēs hostium summam scientiam rēi militāris habēre existimābantur. 11. Caesar duās legiōnēs in prōximō monte collocārī jubet. 12. Fugitivī dīcunt montem ā Labiēnō occupārī.³ 13. Segusiānī sunt extrā prōvinciam Rōmānam trāns Rhodanum primī. 14. Nāvēs hostium ad hunc modum aedificātae sunt; carīnae plāniōrēs sunt quam nostrārum nāvium,⁴ prōrae ad māgnitūdinem flūctuum accommodātae.

174. *Translate into Latin.*

1. They say that supplies⁵ have not been brought to Caesar by the Aedui. 2. He says that our fields have been devastated by the Gauls. 3. How many vessels have been

¹ *Ab ūnā parte*; Latin idiom, *from one part*; render, *on one side*.

² See 132, Rule LVI.

³ See Suggestion XVIII., 1.

⁴ *Nāvium* depends upon *carīnae* understood.

⁵ See 171, Rule LVIII.

built by the Gauls? Let us ascertain how many vessels have been built by them. 4. Deserters say that ten vessels have been built by the Gauls. 5. They say that many cities were stormed by the Romans. 6. Deserters say that the camp of the enemy is exposed on (*from*) one side. 7. Let not our camp be exposed. 8. Our camp ought not to be exposed.

9. Will you not fight bravely in sight of your general? 10. We ought to fight bravely for our country. 11. Caesar orders this city to be occupied by our army. 12. An ambassador announced that the cities of our friends were occupied by the enemy. 13. The Germans ought not to lay waste the fields of the Gauls. 14. The arrival of Caesar checked the attack of the enemy. 15. They say that one legion was stationed in the city. 16. In what part of Gaul were the legions wintering? 17. Let us ask in what part of Gaul the legions are wintering. 18. Caesar said that the legions were wintering among the Belgae.

LESSON LIX.

FIRST CONJUGATION IN FULL. — EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

175. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and Translate into English.*¹

Helvētīi per agrum Aeduōrum in Santonum finēs contendēbant, quī nōn longē ā prōvinciā Rōmānā absunt. Ob eas causas Caesar in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit, duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscripsit, et trēs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hibernīs edūxit, et in ūteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus contendit. Ab citeriōre prōvinciā² in Segusiānōs exercitum dūxit. Hī sunt extrā prō-

¹ See Directions for Reading at Sight, 137.

² *Citerior prōvincia* is the Roman province of *Citerior* or *Cisalpine Gaul*, while *ūterior prōvincia* is the province of *Uterior* or *Transalpine Gaul*.

vinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī. Helvētīī jam Aeduōrum agrōs vastābant et oppida expūgnābant. Tum vērō tāntus timor Aeduōs occupāvit ut omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Lēgātōs igitur ad Caesarem mīsērunt. Eōdem tempore multae Galliae cīvitatēs auxilium ā Caesare implōrāvērunt.

176. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Caesar says that nearly all the Belgae conspired against the Roman people. The Gauls, whom Caesar had commanded to ascertain¹ what the Belgae were doing, announced that the enemy were collecting large forces (*bands of men*),² and bringing them together in (*into*) one place.³ 2. How many legions did Caesar enrol in Italy? At that time he enrolled two legions there. How many legions will winter in the vicinity of this town (*around this town*)? The general says that three legions will winter in the vicinity of this town.

3. By whom have the lands of the Aedui been devastated? He inquired by whom the lands of the Aedui had been devastated. Ambassadors announced that the lands of the Aedui had been devastated by the Helvetii. 4. The general ought to lead all his forces out of winter quarters.

LESSON LX.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

177. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Moneō*, learn the Indicative Mood of the Active voice. See page 144.

¹ Literally *to whom Caesar had given orders that they should ascertain*; see 120 and 119, 498.

² See 135, 10.

³ Use *conducit* as in 135, 14, not *comportat*, which Caesar employs in speaking of bringing together *things* but not *men*; see 135, 9.

178. Vocabulary.

Āgmen, inis, n.	army on the march, line of march. line; extrēmum āgmen, the ex- tremity of the line, the rear.
Aliquamdiū, adv.	for a time.
Armō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to arm.
Dēbeō, ēre, ui, itum,	to owe; ought.
Exterus, a, um, comp. exterior, us, sup. extrēmus and ex- timus, a, um,	[the extremity of. outward; extrēmus, the outermost, to have, hold; to regard, regard as unarmed.
Habeō, ēre, ui, itum,	to have, hold; to regard, regard as unarmed.
Inermus, a, um,	to advise, warn.
Moneō, ēre, ui, itum,	to advise, warn.
Nōne, interrog. part.,	not? 106, 351, 1, note 2.
Sine, prep. w. abl.	without.
Sustineō, ēre, tinui, tentum,	to sustain, withstand, resist.
Timeō, ēre, ui,	to fear.

179. Translate into English.

1. Num hostēs timētis? Nōn hostēs timēmus. 2. Timōris suspiciōnem vitāre debētis. 3. Nōne omnēs suspiciōnēs vitāre debēmus? 4. Nōn sine causā hostēs timuimus. 5. Vōbīs omnia dēbeō. 6. Aeduī populō Rōmānō multum dēbēbant. 7. Id Caesarī nūntiāre debēmus. 8. Nostra oppida expugnāre nōn debētis. 9. Centuriōnēs māgnū in castris ūsum habēbant. 10. Nōne māgnū in rē militārī ūsum habēbās? Nōn māgnū in rē militārī ūsum habēbam. 11. Caesar Divitiacum fidum semper habēbat. 12. Vōs fidōs semper habēbimus. 13. Nōne mē fidum habēs? Tē fidum habeō.

14. Caesar Dumnorigem ad sē vocāvit; monuit ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vitāret. 15. Vōs moneō ut in reliquum tempus hās suspiciōnēs vitētis. 16. Ariovistus Caesarem nōn prō amīcō,¹ sed prō hoste habēbit. 17. Tē prō amīcō semper habuī. 18. Num mē prō hoste habētis? Tē nōn prō hoste sed prō amīcō habēmus. 19. Impetum

¹ Render prō as, lit. for.

hostium fortiter sustinuerāmus. 20. Hostēs ab extrēmō āgmine¹ fortiter impetum nostrōrum militum sustinēbant. 21. Quōs aliquamdiū inermōs sine causā timuerāmus, hōs postea armātōs superāvimus.

180. *Translate into Latin.*

1. At that time the Gauls feared the Germans, who dwelt beyond (*across*) the Rhine. 2. Nearly all the Gauls feared Ariovistus, the king of the Germans. 3. Shall you, who have large experience in military affairs, fear the Gauls? We have not large experience in military affairs, but we do not fear this army. 4. These boys owe much to their father. 5. We all owe much to our fathers. 6. Ought we not to attack that town? We ought to take it by storm. 7. Our soldiers always withstand the attacks of the enemy.

8. We shall always regard you all as our friends.³ 9. Caesar regarded the Germans not as friends, but as enemies. 10. Do you not regard your general as faithful? We all regard him as faithful. 11. Whom do these boys regard as faithful? They regard you as faithful. 12. Did I not warn you not to announce these things to the Germans?² You warned us not to announce your plans to the enemy. 13. Did you not fear Ariovistus at that time? I feared him, and regarded him as an enemy.

LESSON LXI.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE IN FULL.

181. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Moneō*, learn the Active voice in full. See the following page.

¹ Render *ab*, or, lit. *from*. See note on *ab unā parte*, 173.

² Not to announce = that you should not announce, *nē* with Subjunctive; 119, 497. ³ *As our friends*; Latin idiom, *for our friends*.

SECOND CONJUGATION: **E** VERBS.207. ACTIVE VOICE.—*Monēō, I advise.*VERB STEM, *mon, moni*; PRESENT STEM, *monē*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.
monēō,PRES. IMP.
monēre,PRES. IND.
monui,SUPINE.
monitum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I advise.

SINGULAR.

monēō**monēs****monet**

PLURAL.

monēmus**monētis****monent**

IMPERFECT.

*I was advising, or I advised.***monēbam****monēbās****monēbat****monēbāmus****monēbātis****monēbant**

FUTURE.

*I shall or will advise.***monēbō****monēbis****monēbit****monēbimus****monēbitis****monēbunt**

PERFECT.

*I have advised, or I advised.***monui****monuisti****monuit****monuimus****monuistis****monuerunt, or ēre**

PLUPERFECT.

*I had advised.***monueram****monuerās****monuerat****monuerāmus****monuerātis****monuerant**

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have advised.***monuerō****monueris****monuerit****monuerimus****monueritis****monuerint**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I advise, let him advise.¹

SINGULAR.

moneam

moneās

moneat

PLURAL.

moneāmus

moneātis

moneant

IMPERFECT.

I should advise, he would advise.

monērem

monērēs

monēret.

monērēmus

monērētis

monērent

PERFECT.

I may have advised, or I have advised.¹

monuerim

monueris

monuerit

monuerimus

monueritis

monuerint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have advised, he would have advised.²

monuissē

monuissēs

monuisset

monuissēmus

monuissētis

monuissent

IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. monē, advise thou ;**Fut. monētō, thou shalt advise,**monētō, he shall advise ;**monēte, advise ye.**monētōte, ye shall advise,**monentō, they shall advise.*

INFINITIVE.

*Pres. monēre, to advise.**Perf. monuisse, to have advised.**Fut. monitūrus esse, to be about to advise.*

PARTICIPLE.

*Pres. monēns, advising.**Fut. monitūrus, about to advise.*

GERUND.

*Gen. monendi, of advising,**Dat. monendō, for advising,**Acc. monendum, advising,**Abl. monendō, by advising.*

SUPINE.

*Acc. monitum, to advise,**Abl. monitū, to advise, be advised.*¹ But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196.² The Pluperfect, like the Perfect, is often rendered by the Indicative : *I had advised, you had advised, etc.*

LESSON LXII.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE. — EXERCISES.

182. Vocabulary.

Memoria, ae, f.	memory, recollection.
Novus, a, um,	new; novae res, new things, a change
Pareō, ēre, uī, itum,	to obey. [of affairs, revolution.
Pristinus, a, um,	ancient, pristine.
Retineō, ēre, tinui, tentum,	to retain, keep.
Studeō, ēre, uī,	to desire.
Studium, ī, n.	desire.
Taceō, ēre, uī, itum,	to be silent, keep silent, remain silent.
Teneō, ēre, uī, tentum,	to hold, keep.

183. Translate into English.

1. Nē hostēs sine causā timeāmus. 2. Germānōs timēre nōn dēbēmus. 3. Ilōs agrōs armīs teneāmus. 4. Militēs dicēbant sē hostēs nōn timēre.¹ 5. Ille centuriō dicit sē hostēs nōn timuisse.¹ 6. Hostium impetum fortiter sustineāmus. 7. Eās rēs memoriā² teneāmus. 8. Nōne eās rēs memoriā tenēre dēbēmus? 9. Militēs suae pristinae virtūtis memoriā retineant. 10. Nostrae pristinae virtūtis memoriā retineāmus. 11. Tuae pristinae virtūtis memoriā retinēre dēbēs.

12. Vestrae pristinae virtūtis memoriā retinēte, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinēte. 13. Dicunt Caesarem ūnam legiōnem sēcūm³ habuisse.¹ 14. Dicunt tē māgnūm amīcōrum numerum habuisse.¹ 15. Dicunt tē māgnūm amīcōrum numerum habitūrum esse.¹ 16. Dicunt vōs māgnūm amīcōrum numerum habitūrōs esse.¹ 17. Amīcōs habēns; cōsul amīcōs habēns; amīcōs habitūrus; cōsulēs amīcōs habitūrī. 18. Ob eās causās Dumnorix novīs rēbus⁴ studēbat. 19. Monendō, timendō, tenendī, causa tenendī, studium habendī.

¹ See Suggestion XVIII., 1.

² *Memoriā*, literally, BY the memory, Ablative of Means; render IN memory.

³ See 102, 184, 6.

⁴ See 54, Rule XII.

20. Omnēs ferē Gallī novīs rēbus student et ad bellum celeriter excitantur; omnēs autem hominēs libertātī student.

184. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We shall always retain the recollection of these things. 2. May you ever retain the recollection of this day. 3. The consul says that he shall always retain the recollection of your friendship. 4. For what reason did the Gauls desire a revolution at that time? 5. Does not Caesar say that the Gauls always desire a revolution? He says that all men desire liberty. 6. Let us obey all the laws, and let us not desire a revolution. 7. Obeying, about to obey; obeying the laws, about to obey the laws; by obeying¹ the laws,² of obeying the laws, the desire of obeying the laws.

8. By being silent¹ you avoided suspicion of fear. 9. Let us not fear the Germans without cause. 10. We ought not to regard them as enemies without cause. 11. Would that they had not feared³ us without cause. 12. How many legions will our commander have with him in Italy? They say that he will have five legions with him. 13. The general says that he shall always regard us as his friends. 14. So great fear took possession of the Romans, that they did not retain⁴ the recollection of their ancient courage.

LESSON LXIII.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. — ACTIVE VOICE. —
RULE XXX.

185. *Examples. — Place in which.*

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. In nostrīs castris fuit. | <i>He was in our CAMP.</i> |
| 2. Rōmæ fuit. | <i>He was AT ROME.</i> |

¹ Use the Ablative of the Gerund, as *Ablative of Means*.

² Remember that the Gerund governs the same case as other parts of the verb.

³ For Mood and Tense, see 114, 483, 2.

⁴ See 123, 500, II.

NOTE. — The Latin usage illustrated in the Locative Ablative *castris*, and in the Locative *Rōmae*, is expressed in the following

RULE XXX. — Place in which.

425. The PLACE IN WHICH is denoted —

I. Generally by the *Locative Ablative*¹ with the preposition **in**:

Hannibal in *Italiā* fuit, *Hannibal was IN ITALY.* Nep. In nostris castris, in our camp. Caes. In Appiā viā, on the Appian way. Cic.

II. In NAMES OF TOWNS by the *Locative*,² if such a form exists, otherwise by the *Locative Ablative*:

Rōmae fuit, he was AT ROME. Cic. *Corinthi* puerōs docēbat, he taught boys AT CORINTH. Cic. *Athēnis* fuit, he was AT ATHENS. Cic.

1. In the names of places which are not towns, the LOCATIVE ABLATIVE is often used without a preposition, when the idea of means, manner, or cause is combined with that of place:

Castris se tenuit, he kept himself IN CAMP. Caes. *Aliquem tectō recipere*, to receive any one IN ONE'S OWN HOUSE. Cic. *Proeliō cadere*, to fall IN BATTLE. Caes.

2. The Ablatives *locō*, *locis*, *parte*, *partibus*, *dextrā*, *laevā*, *sinistrā*, *terrā*, and *marī*, especially when qualified by an adjective, and other Ablatives, when qualified by *tōtus*, are generally used without the preposition:

Aliquid locō pōnere, to put anything IN ITS PLACE. Cic. *Terrā marique*, on land and sea. Liv. *Totā Graeciā*, in all Greece. Nep.

426. LIKE NAMES OF TOWNS are used —

1. Many NAMES OF ISLANDS:

Lesbi vixit, he lived in Lesbos. Nep. *Conōn Cypri vixit*, Conon lived in Cyprus. Nep.

2. The LOCATIVES *domī*, *rūrī*, *humī*, *militiae*, and *bellī*:

Domī militiaeque, at home and in the field. Cic. *Rūrī agere vitam*, to spend life in the country. Liv.

¹ The *Locative Ablative* does not differ in form from any other Ablative. It is simply the Ablative used with the force of the original *Locative*, i.e. to designate the place of the action.

² See 11, 48, 4; 32, 51, 8; 63, 66, 4. The Locative was the original construction in all names of places.

186. Vocabulary.

Agedincum, i, n.	<i>Agedincum</i> , a town of the Senones in central Gaul.
Alesia, ae, f.	<i>Alesia</i> , a town in central Gaul.
Apertus, a, um,	<i>open</i> .
Avus, i, m.	<i>grandfather</i> .
Bibrax, actis, n.	<i>Bibrax</i> , a town of the Remi.
Contineō, ēre, tinui, tentum,	<i>to retain, keep, confine, restrain; to enclose, surround</i> .
Dēsīgnō, āre, avi, ātum,	<i>to designate, indicate</i> .
Dēterreō, ēre, ui, itum,	<i>to deter</i> .
Difficultās, ātis, f.	<i>difficulty</i> .
Domus, ūs, f.	<i>house, home; domi, at home</i> .
Genāva, ae, f.	<i>Geneva</i> .
Improbus, a, um,	<i>wicked, unprincipled</i> .
Karthāgō, inis, f.	<i>Carthage</i> .
Largiter, adv.	<i>largely, widely, extensively; largiter potest, he has extensive influence</i> .
Mare, is, n.	<i>sea</i> .
Multitūdō, inis, f.	<i>multitude; the multitude, common</i>
Obtineō, ēre, tinui, tentum,	<i>to obtain, hold.</i> [people.]
Sēditiosus, a, um,	<i>seditionous</i> .
Servitūs, ūtis, f.	<i>servitude, slavery</i> .
Solum, adv.	<i>only</i> .
Vir, viri, m.	<i>man</i> .

187. Translate into English.

1. Caesar eō tempore in citeriōre Galliā erat. 2. Eōdem tempore exercitus noster in Galliā hiemābat. 3. Dīcunt imperātōrem in Galliā in hibernis fuisse. 4. Germānī Aeduōs in servitūte tenēre nōn dēbent. 5. Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, eō diē exercitum castris¹ continuit. 6. Apertō marī² tempestātēs timēbāmus. 7. Summa erat apertō marī difficultās nāvigandī.³ 8. Allobrogēs lēgātōs ad senātum mīserunt rogātum auxilium. 9. Dumnorix māgnū numerum equitātūs habēbat.

¹ *Ablative of Place*, involving the idea of *Means*.

² See 185, 425, II., 2.

³ *Nāvigandi*, Genitive of the Gerund, depending upon *difficultās*. Observe that the Genitive of the Gerund is here treated as any other Genitive would be treated in the same situation. See 28, Rule XVI.

10. Liscus dicit Dumnorigem, Divitiacī frātre, māgnūm numerū equitatūs semper circum sē habēre. Is nōn solum domī,¹ sed etiam apud finitimās cīvitātēs largiter poterat.²

11. Caesar duās legiōnēs Agedineī¹ collocāverat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōstituit. 12. Cōsul eō tempore Rōmae¹ erat. 13. Timor hostēs Alesiae occupāvit. 14. Avus hūjus Gallī, virī fortissimī, amicus ab senātū nostrō appellātus erat. 15. Avus hūjus Gallī in cīvitāte suā rēgnūm obtinuerat, amicus ab senātū nostrō appellātus. 16. Dicunt hāc ōrātiōne Dumnorigem dēsīgnātū esse. 17. Sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multītūdīnem dēterrētis nē frūmentū comportent.³

188. *Translate into Latin.*

1. They say that you have been in Italy. We were in winter quarters in Italy. 2. Ought we not to place our army in winter quarters in Gaul? The army ought to be placed in winter quarters in the vicinity of (*around*) Geneva. The general has already decided to station three legions at Geneva.⁴ 3. Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, was not at home,⁴ but was laying waste the lands of the Gauls. 4. Messengers announced that the consul at that time was at Carthage.

5. You ought not to hold the deserters in servitude. We shall keep them in camp.⁵ 6. How many Gauls did Ariovistus hold in servitude? They announced that Ariovistus always held a very large number of Gauls in servitude. 7. Was Caesar at that time in Italy, or in Gaul?⁶ He was at Rome, and he had with him a large number of friends. 8. Was there not at Geneva a bridge across the Rhone?⁷ Caesar says that at Geneva there was a bridge across the Rhone.

¹ See 185, 425, 426, II.

² *Largiter poterat*, literally, *was largely able*; render, *was very powerful*, or *had great influence*.

³ See 119, 497, II.

⁴ What *Case* will you use in rendering *at Geneva*, *at home*? See 185, 425; 426, 2.

⁵ In camp; see 185, 425, 1.

⁶ For Double Question, see 106, 353.

⁷ *Across the Rhone*; Latin idiom, *in the Rhone*.

LESSON LXIV.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—INDICATIVE PASSIVE.—RULE
IV.—REVIEW OF RULES I., II., AND III.

189. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Moneō*, learn the Indicative Mood of the Passive voice. See page 154.

190. *Examples.—Vocative.*

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Tuum est, <i>Servī</i> , rēgnum. | <i>The kingdom is yours, SERVIUS.</i> |
| 2. Quid est, <i>Catilīna</i> ? | <i>Why is it, CATILINE?</i> |

NOTE.—In these examples the names of the persons addressed, *Servī* and *Catilīna*, are in the Vocative, in accordance with the Latin usage expressed in the following

RULE IV.—Case of Address.

369. The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative:

Perge, *Laelī*, proceed, *LAELIUS*. Cic. Quid est, *Catilīna*? *Why is it, CATILINE?* Cic. Ō *dīī* immortalēs, *O immortal gods.* Cic.

LESSON LXV.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—INDICATIVE PASSIVE.—RULE
IV:—REVIEW OF RULES I., II., AND III.—EX-
ERCISES.

191. *Vocabulary.*

Alter, era, erum, 45, 151.	<i>other (of two), second.</i>
Anteā, adv.	<i>before.</i>
Ascendit,	<i>he ascends.</i>
Bellicōsus, a, um,	<i>warlike.</i>
Clāmor, ōris, m.	<i>shout.</i>
Cōsultō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>to consult.</i>
Dēmum, adv.	<i>at length.</i>
Dētineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum,	<i>to detain.</i>
Ferus, a, um,	<i>ferce, savage.</i>

Impendeō, ēre,	to overhang.
Inter, <i>prep. w. acc.</i>	among.
Jubeō, ēre, jussi, jussum,	to order. [Gaul.
Jūra, <i>ae, m.</i>	Jura, a mountain range in eastern
Lūx, lūcis, <i>f.</i>	light; <i>prima lūx</i> , the beginning of light, daybreak, early dawn. ¹
Mūnitio, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	fortification.
Nerviī, ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i>	the Nereii, a tribe of northern Gaul.
Obsideō, ēre, sēdi, sessum,	to besiege.
Salūs, ūtis, <i>f.</i>	safety.
Sapienter, <i>adv.</i>	wisely. [powerful German tribe.
Suēbi, ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i>	the Suebi, Suevi, or Suabians, a
Summus, <i>a, um, sup. of superus,</i>	highest; highest part of, top of. ¹
Terreō, ēre, uī, itum,	to terrify.

192. Translate into English.

1. Nōne ab amīcīs monitī estis? Ā vōbīs, amīcī, monitī sumus. 2. Nunc, milītēs, sapienter monēmur. 3. Primā lūce summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur. 4. Nōne hōc oppidum ab hostibus tenētur? Ab hostibus tenētur. 5. Vicus quī appellātur Octōdūrus altissimīs montibus² continētur. 6. Montēs quī impendēbant ā māximā multitudīne hostium tenēbantur. 7. Nervii māximē ferī inter Belgās habentur. 8. Helvētiī undique locī nātūrā continentur, ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, alterā ex parte monte² Jūrā. 9. Omnēs hostium impetūs fortiter sustinēbantur.

10. Hostēs quī Alesiae obsidēbantur dē salūte cōsultābant. 11. Iī quī mūnitōnibus continentur clāmōre suōrum animōs cōfirmābant. 12. Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. 13. Rōmānae nāvēs tempestātibus dētīnēbantur. 14. Caesar Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus montem ascendere jubet. 15. Caesar prīncipēs convocāvit, in hīs Liscum,³ magistrātum quī Ver-

¹ Certain adjectives often designate a PARTICULAR PART of an object: *prima nox*, 'the first part of the night;' *mediā aestāte*, 'in the middle of summer;' *summus mōns*, 'the top (highest part) of the mountain.' The adjectives thus used are *primus*, *medius*, *ūltimus*, *extrēmus*, *postrēmus*, *intimus*, *summus*, *inīmus*, *imū*, *suprēmus*, *reliquus*, *cētera*, etc.

² Ablative of *Means*.

³ Object of *convocāvit*.

gobretus appellātur. 16. Tum dēmum, quod antea tacueram, enūntiāvi.

193. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Many Gauls were held in slavery by Ariovistus, the king of the Germans. 2. On that day the Germans were kept in camp by their commander. 3. Brave soldiers, you have been kept in camp by your commander. 4. Judges, you have been regarded by Caesar as friends.¹ 5. Galba, the lieutenant, was ordered to winter in a village which is called Octodurus. 6. You will always be regarded by us as friends. 7. This mountain was held on that day by the Romans. 8. Was not Labienus, the lieutenant, commanded by Caesar to ascend this mountain? He was commanded to ascend this mountain, and to hold it.

9. The difficulty of navigation² on the open sea is great, and our vessels will be detained by the storms. 10. Was not Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, warned by Caesar? He was warned by Caesar to avoid all suspicion in future. 11. We have been warned not to attack this town, on account of the width of the moat and the height of the wall. 12. We have been ordered to fortify our camp with a rampart. 13. The Suebi were regarded by the Romans as very warlike.

LESSON LXVI.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. —
REVIEW OF RULES XXXVII., XXXVIII., AND XL.

194. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Moneō*, learn the Passive voice in full. See the following page.

¹ Remember the Latin idiom, *FOR friends*.

² Use the *Gerund*.

SECOND CONJUGATION: **E** VERBS.208. PASSIVE VOICE.—*Moneor, I am advised.*VERB STEM, *mon, moni*; PRESENT STEM, *monē*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.

moneor,

PRES. INF.

monēri,

PERF. IND.

monitus sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am advised.

SINGULAR.

moneor**monēris, or re****monētur**

PLURAL.

monēmur**monēmini****monentur**

IMPERFECT.

*I was advised.***monēbar****monēbāris, or re****monēbātur****monēbāmur****monēbāmini****monēbantur**

FUTURE.

*I shall or will be advised.***monēbor****monēberis, or re****monēbitur****monēbimur****monēbimini****monēbuntur**

PERFECT.

*I have been advised, I was advised.***monitus sum¹****monitus es****monitus est****moniti sumus****moniti estis****moniti sunt**

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been advised.***monitus eram¹****monitus erās****monitus erat****moniti erāmus****moniti erātis****moniti erant**

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been advised.***monitus erō¹****monitus eris****monitus erit****moniti erimus****moniti eritis****moniti erunt**¹ See 170, 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
monēar	monēāmur
monēāris, or re	monēāmini
monēātur	monēantur

IMPERFECT.

I should be advised, he would be advised.

monērer	monērēmur
monērēris, or re	monērēmini
monērētur	monērentur

PERFECT.

I may have been advised, or I have been advised.

monitus sim ¹	moniti simus
monitus sis	moniti sitis
monitus sit	moniti sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been advised, he would have been advised.²

monitus essem ¹	moniti essemus
monitus essēs	moniti essētis
monitus esset	moniti essent

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> monēre, be thou advised ;	monēmini, be ye advised.
<i>Fut.</i> monētor, thou shalt be advised,	
monētor, he shall be advised ;	monentor, they shall be advised.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> monēri, to be advised.	
<i>Perf.</i> monitus esse, ¹ to have been advised.	<i>Perf.</i> monitus, advised.
<i>Fut.</i> monitum iri, to be about to be advised.	<i>Ger.</i> monendus, to be advised, deserv- ing to be advised.

¹ See 177, 206, foot-notes.

² Or *I had been advised, you had been advised, etc.*

LESSON LXVII.

SECOND CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE. — REVIEW OF
RULES XXXVII., XXXVIII., AND XL. — EXERCISES.

195. *Vocabulary.*

Amor, ōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>love.</i>
Annuus, a, um,	<i>annual, annually, for a year.</i>
Auctoritās, ātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>authority, influence.</i>
Considius, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Considius, an officer in Caesar's</i>
Creō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to create, appoint, elect. [army.</i>
Falsus, a, um,	<i>false.</i>
Imperitus, a, um,	<i>unskilful, ignorant.</i>
Mors, mortis, <i>f.</i>	<i>death.</i>
Nex, necis, <i>f.</i>	<i>death, putting to death.</i>
Nōnnūlli, ae, a, <i>pl.</i>	<i>some.</i>
Perterreō, ēre, uī, itum,	<i>to terrify greatly, terrify, frighten.</i>
Plus, <i>comp. adv., pos. multum,</i>	<i>more.</i>
Potestās, ātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>power.</i>
Pūblius, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Publius, a Roman praenōmen.</i>
Renūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to report.</i>
Rūmor, ōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>rumor, report.</i>
Sēsē,	<i>reduplicated form of sē. See</i>
Temerārius, a, um,	<i>rash. [102, 184, 4.</i>
Valeō, ēre, uī, itum,	<i>to avail, prevail.</i>

196. *Translate into English.*

1. Omnēs collēs ā nōbīs tenentur. 2. Omnia loca superiōra ā nōbīs tenēbuntur. 3. Omnēs collēs āc loca superiōra ab exercitū tenēbantur. 4. Nē falsīs rūmōribus terreāmur. 5. Nē hīs rūmōribus terreantur. 6. Utinam omnēs hostēs hōc rūmōre terreantur. 7. Dicunt vōs hīs rūmōribus terrērī. 8. Hominēs temerārii atque imperitī saepe falsīs rūmōribus terrentur. 9. Imperātor dicit hominēs temerāriōs atque imperitōs saepe falsīs rūmōribus terrērī. 10. Pūblius Cōnsīdius timōre perterritus renūntiāvit montem ab hostibus tenērī. 11. Sunt nōnnūlli quī multitudinem dēterrent nē frūmentum comportent.

12. Nōnnūllī prīncipēs adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī erant. Hī prīncipēs, adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittēbant. 13. Liscus in conventū dixit sēsē ob eam causam diū tacuisse. 14. Nōn is sum quī gravissimē mortis periculō terrear.¹ 15. Militēs mortis periculō terrērī nōn dēbent. 16. Vergobretus, quī creātur annuus, vītae necisque in suōs² habet potestātem. 17. Auctōritās Dumnorigis apud plēbem plūs valēbat quam ipsius magistrātūs.³

197. Translate into Latin.

1. Have not your vessels been detained by storms? Messengers have announced to us that our vessels have been detained by storms. 2. May we always be regarded by you as friends. 3. They say that the Aedui were always regarded by Caesar as friends. 4. Many towns were besieged by the Germans. 5. Messengers announce that many towns have been besieged by the Germans. Let us ascertain which towns have been besieged by them. 6. We are advised by our friends, who have large experience in military affairs, to remain (*keep ourselves*)⁴ in camp. 7. The ambassadors were so terrified that they remained silent for a long time.

8. You ought not to be terrified by these rumors. 9. Would that we had not been terrified by false rumors. 10. Were not the Gauls often terrified by false rumors? Caesar said that the Gauls were often terrified by false rumors. 11. By what rumors, my brave soldiers, have you been terrified? 12. With (*among*) you, Romans, the love of country ought to avail more than the fear of death. 13. Announce to the

¹ Subjunctive in a clause denoting Result. See 123, 500, I.; Suggestion XVII., 3.

² In *suōs*, literally *into or against his own*, render OVER or AMONG *his subjects*, or *his countrymen*. Adjectives in the plural are often used substantively in Latin, as in English. *Suōs* is thus used.

³ Governed by *auctōritās* understood.

⁴ For Mood, see 119, Rule XLII.

general that this mountain is held by us. 14. Let us hold the mountain which we were ordered to occupy.

LESSON LXVIII.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. — REVIEW OF RULES XLI., XLII., AND XLIII.

198. Vocabulary.

Adequitō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to ride toward, ride.
Alius, a, ud, 45, 151,	other, another.
Cōservō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to save, preserve, spare.
Gubernātor, ōris, m.	pilot.
Impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to obtain one's request.
Liger, is, m.	the Liger, now the Loire, a river in southwestern Gaul.
Lingonēs, um, m. pl.	the Lingones, a tribe of central Gaul.
Nauta, ae, m.	sailor.
Nāvis longa,	a long ship, ship of war.
Nēve, conj.	nor, and not.
Sed, conj.	but.
Triplex, icis,	triple.
Undique, adv.	on every side.

199. Translate into English.

1. Vīcus appellābātur Octōdūrus. 2. Dīcunt vīcum appellātum esse Octōdūrum. 3. Dīcēbant hunc vīcum altissimīs montibus undique continērī. 4. Nē ad bellum celeriter excitēmur. 5. Caesar dīcit omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum celeriter excitārī. 6. Dīxērunt sē tībī rem ēnūntiāsse,¹ sed intellegere quantō cum periculō eam rem ēnūntiāssent.¹ 7. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit nē Helvētiōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē juvārent. 8. Dīcunt eam rem per fugitivōs hostibus nūntiātā esse. 9. Tum dēmum Caesar partem suārum copiārum quae castra

¹ Contracted from *ēnūntiāvisse* and *ēnūntiāvissent*.

hostium oppugnâret¹ mīsit. 10. Triplicem aciem prō castrīs instruēbat.

11. Gallī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē mīserunt, et impetrāvērunt ut cōservārentur.² 12. Nē montēs quī vicō Octōdūrō impendent ab hostibus teneantur. 13. Nāvēs longae in flūmine Ligere aedificentur. 14. Caesar nāvēs longās in flūmine Ligere aedificārī jubet. 15. Nautae gubernātōrēsque ex prōvinciā nostrā comparentur. 16. Caesar nautās gubernātōrēsque ex prōvinciā nostrā comparārī jubet. 17. Caesarī nūntiātum est³ equitēs Ariovistī ad nostrōs adequitāre.

200. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The village in which Galba wintered was surrounded by very high mountains. Did he understand with how great peril he was wintering in that village? He understood that he was wintering there with great peril. 2. Horsemen rode toward us to announce the words of the king. 3. The Aedui were so terrified, that they sent messengers to Caesar to implore help. 4. The general sent a part of his forces to fortify the town. 5. Caesar sent a lieutenant to order ships of war to be built. 6. Ten ships of war have been built on the Rhine. 7. The deserters obtained their request, not to be regarded (*that they might not be regarded*) as enemies.

8. Those who were ordered to withstand the attack of the enemy were so terrified, that they implored help from Caesar. 9. May our authority avail more with you than that⁴ of our enemies. 10. The messengers said that their towns had been besieged by the enemy. 11. Brave soldiers will not be terrified by the fear of death. 12. The general says that his

¹ For *Mood*, see 119, 497, I.; see also Suggestion XVII., 3.

² *Ut cōservārentur*. This is an *Object Clause*, depending upon *impetrāvērunt*, but it was developed out of a *Clause of Result*, and accordingly has the *Subjunctive*.

³ The *Subject* of *nūntiātum est* is the clause *equitēs . . . adequitāre*. See Suggestion XVIII., 1.

⁴ Omit the pronoun in rendering into Latin.

soldiers are so brave that they are not terrified by the fear of death. 13. May that city always be held by our friends. 14. Would that these towns were held by our friends.

LESSON LXIX.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS IN FULL. — EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

201. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*¹

Caesar convocāvit principēs, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in his Liscum, magistrātum Aeduōrum. Hic magistrātus, quī Vergobretus appellātur, creātur annuus, et vitae necisque in suōs habet potestātem.

Caesar principēs Aeduōrum graviter accusāvit. Tum dēmum Liscus, quod antea tacuerat, enūntiāvit. Haec sunt verba: "Sunt nōnnūllī, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūs valet quam ipsōrum magistrātuum. Hī seditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrent nē frūmentum comportent. Ab iisdem vestra cōsilia hostibus enūntiantur." Postea dixit intellegere sēsē quantō cum periculō Caesarī rem enūntiāset, et ob eam causam diū tacuisse.

Hāc ōrātiōne Dumnorix, Divitiaci frāter, dēsīgnātus est. Is māgnū numerum equitātūs semper circum sē habēbat, et nōn solum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās civitatēs, largiter poterat.

202. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Liscus said that with the populace the authority of these citizens availed more, than that of the magistrate himself, and that they deterred the multitude from bringing (*that they should not bring*) grain. He also said that they announced to the enemy nearly all the plans of the Romans.

¹ See Directions for Reading at Sight, 137.

2. Who was Dumnorix? He was an Aeduan chief, the brother of Divitiacus, who was called the friend of Caesar and the Roman people.

3. So great fear took possession of the Aedui, whose lands the Helvetii were devastating, that they sent ambassadors to Caesar to implore aid from him. 4. The general ought to lead his army through the lands (*fields*) of the Aedui into the territory of the Santones, who are not far from our province. 5. The general is hastening with forced marches into Italy; he will there enrol three legions, and lead out of winter quarters the five that are now wintering in the vicinity of Rome.

LESSON LXX.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE. — REVIEW OF RULES V., VI., AND IX.

203. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Regō*, learn the Indicative Mood of the Active Voice. See page 164.

204. *Vocabulary.*

Auxilla, ōrum, <i>n. pl.</i>	auxiliaries.
Cōscribō, ere, scripsi, scriptum,	to enrol, enlist. [decide.
Cōstituō, ere, stitui, stitūtum,	to station, place; to determine,
Continuus, a, um,	continuous, successive.
Dēliberō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to deliberate.
Dicō, ere, dīxī, dictum,	to say, speak.
Ēducō, ere, dūxī, ductum,	to lead out.
Hiems, ems, <i>f.</i>	winter.
Īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctum,	to draw up, arrange, array.
Interim, <i>adv.</i>	meanwhile, in the meantime.
Item, <i>adv.</i>	also, likewise.
Jugum, i, <i>n.</i>	ridge, height.
Maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūm,	to remain.
Medius, a, um,	middle; the middle of. ¹

¹ See foot-note on *summus*, 191.

Mittō, ere, misi, missum,	<i>to send.</i>
Prōducō, ere, dūxi, ductum,	<i>to lead forth.</i>
Prōximē, <i>sup. adv.</i>	<i>nearest, most recently, last.</i>
Quattuor, <i>indeclinable,</i>	<i>four.</i>
Reducō, ere, dūxi, ductum,	<i>to lead back.</i>
Sextus, a, um,	<i>sixth.</i>
Subducō, ere, dūxi, ductum,	<i>to withdraw, lead off.</i>
Sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum,	<i>to take.</i>
Veterānus, a, um,	<i>veteran.</i>

205. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar diem ad dēliberandum¹ sūmpsīt. 2. Nōne diem ad dēliberandum sūmētis? Diem ad dēliberandum sūpsimus. 3. Hostēs diem ad dēliberandum sūpsērāt. 4. Quīnque legiōnēs quae sustineant² hostium impetum mittōmus. 5. Caesar copiās suās in prōximū collem subdūxerat, equitātumque quī sustinēret² hostium impetum mīserat. Ipse interim in colle mediō³ aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum, sed in summō⁴ jugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre prōximē cōscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocāvit. 6. Nōne haec in conventū dixistī? Ea quae in conventū dixī sunt vēra. 7. Quid Liscus dixerat? Liscus in conventū dixerat Dumnorigem, Divitiaci frātre, novis rēbus studēre.

8. Imperātor sōlis occāsū⁴ suās cōpiās in castra reducet. 9. Caesar ex eō diē diēs⁵ continuōs quīnque prō castris suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem instrūxit. 10. Ipse cōstituerat in Galliā hiemāre et tōtam hiemem ad⁶ exercitum manēre. 11. Caesar sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēdūxerāt. 12. Nōne dixistī

¹ *Ad dēliberandum*, 'for deliberation,' or 'to deliberate.' *Dēliberandum* is a *Gerund* in the *Accusative* depending upon *ad*. In *Gerunds* the *Accusative* always depends upon a *preposition*.

² See Suggestion XVII., 3

³ See foot-note on *summus*, 191.

⁴ *Ablative of Time*. See 93, Rule XXXI.

⁵ *Duration of Time*. See 93, Rule IX.

⁶ *Near, in the vicinity of*.

Aeduōs ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcōs appellātōs esse?
Dīxī cōs ā senātū frātrēs appellātōs esse.

206. *Translate into Latin.*

1. What did you say in the convention? I said that nearly all the Gauls at that time desired a revolution. 2. Shall you not send ambassadors to the neighboring states to implore aid from them? We have already sent ambassadors to these states, and have established peace and friendship with them. 3. How many legions shall you enrol in Italy? We shall enrol five legions in Italy, and three in Gaul. 4. The general had placed his legions in line of battle before the camp. 5. Have you taken time for¹ deliberation? We have taken time for deliberation, and have decided to send ambassadors to the Belgae.

6. The enemy kept themselves in camp for five days,² but on the sixth day they led their forces out of the camp, and placed them in line of battle. 7. Caesar placed in winter quarters the legions that he had enrolled in Italy. 8. Have you decided to pass the winter in Italy? We have decided to remain in Gaul during the whole winter. 9. For many days the Romans had formed the line of battle in front of the camp. 10. Caesar says that he remained near the army the whole winter.

LESSON LXXI.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE IN FULL.

207. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Regō*, learn the Active Voice in full. See the following page.

¹ *For*; render by *ad*.

² For the Latin construction, see 98, Rule IX.

THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

209. ACTIVE VOICE.—Regō, *I rule.*VERB STEM, *reg*; PRESENT STEM, *rege*.¹

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE
regō,	regere,	rēxī, ²	rēctum. ³

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I rule.

SINGULAR.

regō
regis
regit

PLURAL.

regimus
regitis
regunt

IMPERFECT.

I was ruling, or I ruled.

regēbam
regēbas
regēbat

regēbāmus
regēbātis
regēbant

FUTURE.

I shall or will rule.

regam
regēs
reget

regēmus
regētis
regent

PERFECT.

I have ruled, or I ruled.

rēxī
rēxistī
rēxit

rēximus
rēxistis
rēxērunt, or ēre

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled.

rēxeram
rēxerās
rēxerat

rēxerāmus
rēxerātis
rēxerant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have ruled.

rēxerō
rēxeris
rēxerit

rēxerīmus
rēxeritis
rēxerint

¹ The characteristic is a variable vowel—ō, u, e, ī: regō, regunt, regere, regis; Curtius calls it the *thematic vowel*; see Curtius, I., p. 199, but on ō, see also Meyer, 411.

² See p. 3, 30, 33.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I rule, let him rule.¹

SINGULAR.

regam
regās
regat

PLURAL.

regāmus
regātis
regant

IMPERFECT.

I should rule, he would rule.

regerem
regerēs
regeret

regerēmus
regerētis
regerent

PERFECT.

I may have ruled, or I have ruled.

rēxerim
rēxeris
rēxerit

rēxerimus
rēxeritis
rēxerint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have ruled, he would have ruled.

rēxissem
rēxissēs
rēxisset

rēxissēmus
rēxissētis
rēxissent

IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. rege, rule thou ;**regite, rule ye.*

*Fut. regitō, thou shalt rule,
regitō, he shall rule ;*

*regitōte, ye shall rule,
reguntō, they shall rule.*

INFINITIVE.

*Pres. regere, to rule.**Perf. rēxisse, to have ruled.**Fut. rēctūrus esse, to be about
to rule.*

PARTICIPLE.

*Pres. regēns, ruling.**Fut. rēctūrus, about to rule.*

GERUND.

*Gen. regendī, of ruling,**Dat. regendō, for ruling,**Acc. regendum, ruling,**Abl. regendō, by ruling.*

SUPINE.

*Acc. rēctum, to rule,**Abl. rēctū, to rule, be ruled.*¹ But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196.

208. Vocabulary.

Addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum,	to lead to, lead, bring. [Gaul.
Arvernī, ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i>	the Arverni, a tribe of southern
Cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitum,	to ascertain.
Conjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctum,	to join, unite.
Cōsulō, ere, sului, sultum,	to consult.
Contendō, ere, tendi, tentum,	to contend, strive; to hasten.
Dēfendō, ere, fendi, fēsum,	to defend.
Deinde, <i>adv.</i>	then, in the next place.
Genus, eris, <i>n.</i>	kind, class.
Inter sē,	among themselves; with each other, with one another, to- not yet. |gether.
Nōndum, <i>adv.</i>	now.
Nunc, <i>adv.</i>	perilous, dangerous.
Periculōsus, a, um,	port, harbor.
Portus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	power, dominion, control.
Potentātus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	first.
Prīmum, <i>sup. adv.</i>	thin; feeble.
Tenuis, e,	tribune, one of the six principal officers of the legion.
Tribūnus, ī, <i>m.</i>	ever, at any time.
Unquam, <i>adv.</i>	

209. Translate into English.

1. Nunc dē hōc periculōsō bellō dicam. 2. Prīmum dē genere bellī, deinde dē māgnitūdine¹ dicāmus. 3. Dē salūte civium dicere dēbētis. 4. Patriam dēfendere dēbēmus. 5. Quae civitās unquam antea tam tenuis fuit quae nōn portūs suōs et agrōs dēfenderet?² 6. Cōsulite vōbīs, cōservāte vōs, conjugēs, liberōs, fortunāsque vestrās, populī Rōmānī nōmen salūtemque dēfendite. 7. Ob eas causās quīque legiōnēs in Galliā cōscribāmus.

8. Caesar dīcit sē in Ītaliā māgnīs itineribus contendisse, duāsque ibī legiōnēs cōscripsisse. 9. Aeduī et Arvernī dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contendēbant. 10. Imperātor tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs conjungerent. 11. Militēs castra dēfendant. 12.

¹ That is, dē māgnitūdine bellī.

² For Mood, see 123, 500. I.

Nōne castra dēfendētis? Castra dēfendēmus. 13. Caesar Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs cum equitātū mīsit. 14. Dicunt imperātōrem suās cōpiās in prōximum collem subdūxisse. 15. Postulāmus nē quem militem ad colloquium adducātis. 16. Utinam Ariovistus suās cōpiās in castra redūcat.

210. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The general has decided to lead back his forces into camp. 2. Caesar says that the enemy led back their forces into camp at sunset. 3. Let us lead our forces out of the camp, and place them in line of battle. 4. Did you not say that the general placed his whole army in line of battle in front of the camp? We said that he led out six legions, and placed them in line of battle in front of the camp. 5. Would that the enemy would lead back their forces into camp. 6. Would that the general had led us back into camp.

7. Let us speak first of the Romans, then of the Gauls. 8. You have spoken of the valor of the soldiers; speak now of the safety of the citizens. 9. Let us defend the safety of our country. 10. Caesar said that these tribes were at that time contending with each other (*among themselves*). 11. We ought to consult, not for ourselves, but for our country. 12. The general says that he shall consult, not for himself, but for his country. 13. How many legions has the general enrolled in Gaul?

LESSON LXXII.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS. — ACTIVE VOICE. — REVIEW OF RULES XII. AND XIV.

211. *Vocabulary.*

Commeō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to go back and forth, resort.</i>
Dēducō, ere, dūxi, ductum,	<i>to lead from, conduct.</i>
Ducō, ere, dūxi, ductum,	<i>to lead.</i>
Effeminō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to effeminate, enervate.</i>
Excūsō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to excuse.</i>

Gerō, ere, gessī, gestum,	<i>to carry on, wage, do.</i>
Importō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>to bring in, import.</i>
Incolō, ere, colui, cultum,	<i>to inhabit, dwell.</i>
Levitās, ātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>levity, fickleness, impulsiveness.</i>
Mātrimōnium, ii, <i>n.</i>	<i>marriage; in mātrimōnium dūcere, to marry.</i>
Menapii, ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i>	<i>the Menapii, a tribe of northern</i>
Mercātor, ōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>merchant, trader. [Gaul.</i>
Mātūrē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>promptly, early.</i>
Nocturnus, a, um,	<i>nocturnal, by night.</i>
Perfringō, ere, frēgi, frāctum,	<i>to break through.</i>
Pertineō, ēre, tinui, tentum,	<i>to pertain, tend.</i>
Phalanx, phalangis, <i>f.</i>	<i>phalanx, line.</i>
Praepōnō, ere, posui, positum,	<i>to place over or in command of.</i>
Regiō, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>direction; region, district.</i>
Ripa, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>bank of a river.</i>
Sēquani, ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i>	<i>the Sequani or Sequantians, a tribe</i>
Sub, <i>prep. w. acc. and abl.</i>	<i>under; up to. [of eastern Gaul.</i>
Succēdō, ere, cessi, cessum,	<i>to come under, come up to, ap-</i>
Uterque, utraque, utrumque, ¹	<i>each; both. [proach.</i>

212. Translate into English.

1. Galli lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīserunt quī sē excūsārent.
2. Mercātōrēs ad Belgās nōn saepe commeant.
3. Mercātōrēs ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs² pertinent, saepe important.
4. Menapii eās regiōnēs incolēbant, et ad utramque rīpam flūminis Rhēnī agrōs vicōsque habēbant.
5. Caesar mātūrius quam tempus annī postulābat in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hibernis³ Labiēnum praeposuit.
6. Galli levitāte animī novīs rēbus stūdēbant.
7. Belgae cum Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, bellum gerunt.
8. Lēgātī dixerunt reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse.
9. Rēmī, quī prōximī Galliae sunt, lēgātōs ad Caesarem

¹ Declined like *uter*. See 45, 151.

² *Ad effēminandos animōs* = *ad effēminandum animōs*, which is a rare construction. In the second form *animōs* depends upon the gerund *effēminandum*; in the first form it depends upon *ad*, and *effēminandōs* agrees with it; 40, Rule XXXIV. Literally, *to the souls to be enervated*; render *to enervate the soul*.

³ For construction, see 54, 384, II.

misērunt, quī dicerent,¹ reliquōs Belgās in armīs esse. 10. Dumnorix Helvētiis erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitatē Orgetorigis filiam in mātrimonium dūxerat. 11. Hostēs sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt. 12. Hostium phalangem perfringāmus. 13. Galliae cīvitatēs nocturnōs conventūs habēbant.

213. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who inhabit these regions? Deserters say that the Menapii inhabit these regions, and that they have many villages beyond the Rhine. 2. Were not these Gauls friendly to Caesar? They were not friendly to him; they feared the Romans and desired a revolution. 3. Will not the soldiers obey the lieutenant? He has ordered them to fortify the winter quarters. They will obey him, and they will fortify the winter quarters with a high rampart. 4. Let the citizens consult in regard to the war.

5. To whom was Dumnorix friendly? Caesar says that Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, was friendly to the Helvetii. 6. For this reason² the chiefs remained silent many days. 7. The Aedui were always friends to the Romans. 8. The general sent a lieutenant to lead the army out of winter quarters. 9. We advise you not to speak of this war. 10. We ought to ascertain how many legions Caesar enrolled in Gaul. 11. Let us lead back the soldiers into the camp that we may defend it.

LESSON LXXIII.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. —
REVIEW OF RULES XVI., XXIII., AND XXV.

214. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Regō*, learn the Passive voice in full. See the following page.

¹ For *Mood*, see 119, 497, I. ² Latin idiom, *on account of these causes*.

THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

210. PASSIVE VOICE.—Regor, *I am ruled*.VERB STEM, *reg*; PRESENT STEM, *rege*.¹

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.

regor,

PRES. INF.

regi,

PERF. IND.

rēctus¹ sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am ruled.

SINGULAR.

regor

regeris, or re

regitur

PLURAL.

regimur

regimini

reguntur

IMPERFECT.

I was ruled.

regēbar

regēbāris, or re

regēbātur

regēbāmur

regēbāmini

regēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall or will be ruled.

regar

regēris, or re

regētur

regēmur

regēmini

regentur

PERFECT.

*I have been ruled, or I was ruled.*rēctus sum²

rēctus es

rēctus est

rēcti sumus

rēcti estis

rēcti sunt

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been ruled.*rēctus eram²

rēctus erās

rēctus erat

rēcti erāmus

rēcti erātis

rēcti erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been ruled.*rēctus erō²

rēctus eris

rēctus erit

rēcti erimus

rēcti eritis

rēcti erunt

¹ See 207, 209, foot-notes.² See 170, 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be ruled, let him be ruled.

SINGULAR.

regar
regāris, or re
regātur

PLURAL.

regāmur
regāmini
regantur

IMPERFECT.

I should be ruled, he would be ruled.

regerer
regerēris, or re
regerētur

regerēmur
regerēmini
regerentur

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled, or I have been ruled.

rēctus sim¹
rēctus sis
rēctus sit

rēctī simus
rēctī sitis
rēctī sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been ruled, he would have been ruled.

rēctus essem¹
rēctus essēs
rēctus esset

rēctī essēmus
rēctī essētis
rēctī essent

IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. regere, be thou ruled;**regimini, be ye ruled.*

*Fut. regitor, thou shalt be ruled,
regitor, he shall be ruled;*

reguntor, they shall be ruled.

INFINITIVE.

*Pres. regī, to be ruled.**Perf. rēctus esse,¹ to have been ruled.**Fut. rēctum īrī, to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLE.

*Perf. rēctus, ruled.**Ger. regendus, to be ruled, deserving to be ruled.*¹ See 170, 206, foot-notes.

LESSON LXXIV.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. —
REVIEW OF RULES XVI., XXIII., AND XXV. — EX-
ERCISES.

215. *Vocabulary.*

Aedificium, li, n.	building, house.
Aquilifer, erī, m.	standard-bearer.
Cārus, a, um,	dear.
Centum, indeclinable,	hundred.
Claudō, ere, clausi, clausum,	to shut, close.
Germānia, ae, f.	Germany.
Germānus, a, um,	German.
Incendō, ere, cendi, cēsum,	to set on fire, fire, burn.
Insula, ae, f.	island.
Irrumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptum,	to break in, rush in.
Nūquam, adv.	never.
Occidō, ere, cidi, cisum,	to kill, slay.
Pāgus, i, m.	division, canton.
Porta, ae, f.	gate.
Premō, ere, pressi, pressum,	to press, press hard, distress.
Quoque, adv.	also.
Remaneō, ēre, mānsi, māsum,	to remain.
Repellō, ere, reppuli, repulsum,	to repel, repulse. [many.
Ubii, ōrum, m. pl.	the Ubii, a tribe of western Ger-
Usipetēs, um, m. pl.	the Usipetes, a tribe of north-
	western Germany.
Vercingetorix, igis, m.	Vercingetorix, a Gallic chieftain.

216. *Translate into English.*

1. Aquilifer ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pūgnāns¹ occiditur.
2. Multī militēs fortissimē pūgnantēs occīsī sunt. 3. Nōne
omnēs māgnā multitudīne hostium premēmur? 4. Utinam
hostēs omnēs nostrā virtūte repellantur. 5. Num ab hosti-
bus eō tempore repulsī estis? Nūquam ab hostibus repulsī
sumus. 6. Quid apud Alesiam geritur? Gallī perterritī in
oppidum irrumpunt; Vercingetorix imperātor jubet portās

¹ While fighting. See Suggestion XIII., 3.

claudī, nē castra nūdentur. 7. Omnia vīcī Octōdūrī aedificia incēnsa sunt. 8. Nōne multa oppida ab Helvētiīs incēnsa sunt? Post Orgetorigis mortem Helvētiī oppida sua omnia incendērunt.

9. Māgna Germāniae pars ā bellicōsissimīs nātiōnibus eō tempore incolēbātur. 10. Multae īnsulae ā ferīs barbarisque nātiōnibus incoluntur. 11. Caesar obsidēs ad sē addūcī jubet. 12. Usīpetēs Germānī ab Suēbīs multōs annōs premēbantur. Ubiī quoque graviter ab Suēbīs pressī erant. 13. Suēbī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur. 14. Omnium¹ quī Galliam incolunt fortissimī sunt Belgae. 15. Suēbī, quī bellicōsissimī Germānōrum omnium esse dīcuntur, ūnō in locō nōn longius annō² remanent. 16. Caesar mīlitum vītā suā salūte² cārīōrem habēbat.

217. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Were not the Belgae braver than the other Gauls?³ They are said to have been the bravest of all the Gauls. Did they not often wage war with the Germans who dwelt beyond the Rhine? They are said to have waged war continually with the neighboring states. 2. What is dearer than life? To brave soldiers liberty and country are dearer than life. Ought we not to hold (*regard*) liberty and country dearer than life itself? 3. This part of Gaul has always been inhabited by warlike nations. 4. Which part of Gaul was inhabited by the brave Belgae? 5. One part of Gaul is said to have been inhabited by the Celts.

6. The bravest and most warlike of the Gauls were conquered by the Romans. 7. By the valor of our soldiers the enemy have been repulsed. 8. The bravest of the soldiers were slain. 9. Let us not remain in this town longer than one day. 10. Did you not say that these islands were inhabited by fierce nations? These islands are said to have

¹ *Partitive Genitive.* See 28, 397.

² For Case, see 88, Rule XXIII.

³ Render first with *quam*, and secondly without it.

been inhabited by barbarous nations. 11. Were not many towns burned by the enemy? Many towns are said to have been burned by them. 12. The general has ordered the army to be led back into camp, and the gates to be closed.

LESSON LXXV.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS. — PASSIVE VOICE. — REVIEW OF RULES XXX., XXXI., AND XXXIII.

218. Vocabulary.

Aquitāni, ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i>	<i>the Aquitani or Aquitanians, the inhabitants of the southwestern division of Gaul.</i>
Cabillōnum, ī, <i>n.</i>	<i>Cabillonum, a town of Eastern Gaul.</i>
Certus, a, um,	<i>certain, fixed, appointed.</i>
Compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum,	<i>to fill, cover.</i>
Cōnfestim, <i>adv.</i>	<i>hastily, speedily.</i>
Cotta, ae, <i>m.</i>	<i>Cotta, a lieutenant under Caesar.</i>
Dividō, ere, visī, visum,	<i>to divide.</i>
Funda, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>sling.</i>
Indicō, ere, dīxī, dictum,	<i>to appoint.</i>
Inopia, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>lack, want, need.</i>
Mandō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>to commission, order; to entrust, consign, commit, betake.</i>
Matiscō, ōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>Matisco, a town in southeastern Gaul.</i>
Novus, a, um,	<i>new.</i>
Sulpicius, īi, <i>m.</i>	<i>Sulpicius, a lieutenant under Caesar.</i>
Supplicātiō, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>thanksgiving.</i>
Tigurīnus, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Tigurinus, one of the four cantons of</i>
Vesper, erī, <i>m.</i>	<i>evening. [the Helvetii.</i>
Vigintī, <i>indeclinable,</i>	<i>twenty.</i>
Vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>to wound.</i>

219. Translate into English.

1. Omnis civitās Helvētiōrum in quattuor pāgōs divīsa est. IIōrum ūnus appellātur Tigurīnus. 2. Gallia est divīsa

in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam Gallī. 3. Imperātor hōrā septimā vicum hominibus¹ complērī jussit. 4. Cotta lēgātus fortissimē pūgnāns² fundā vulnerātus est. 5. Rōmae diērum vīginti³ supplicātiō indīcitur. 6. Caesar Cicerōnem et Sulpiciū Cabillōnī et Matis-cōne in Aeduīs collocāvit.

7. Hostēs ad vesperum fortiter pūgnāvērunt ; tum dēmum fugae sēsē mandāvērunt. 8. Litterae ad Caesarem cōnfestim ab Cicerōne mittuntur. 9. Ariovistus dīxit eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō superātās esse. 10. Multī omnium rērum inopiā adductī auxilium ā Caesare implōrābant. Itaque obsidēs imperāvit, eōsque ad certam⁴ diem addūcī jussit. 11. Multa ab Caesare in colloquiō dicta sunt. 12. Duae legiōnēs, quae in Galliā prōximē cōscrip̄tae erant, fugae sēsē mandābant.

220. Translate into Latin.

1. The lands of the Gauls were often seized by the Germans. 2. Many Gauls, distressed with want at home, implored aid from the neighboring towns. 3. At that time Caesar was enrolling new legions in Italy. 4. Many legions had already been enrolled in Gaul and Italy. 5. At Rome⁶ Caesar is said to have been advised to hasten into Gaul. On the same day he was advised by Labienus to enlist a new legion. 6. A part of a legion had been placed in winter quarters at Octodurus. 7. At that time he is said to have ordered all the legions to be led out of winter quarters.

8. On that day the camp of the Romans was assaulted by the Gauls. 9. These brave soldiers were wounded while fighting⁶ for their country. 10. Let us order them to remain

¹ For *Case*, see 78, Rule XVIII.

² See Suggestion XIII., 3.

³ Literally, of twenty days ; render, for twenty days. The *Accusative of Duration of Time* could have been used.

⁴ See foot-note 1, page 234.

⁵ See 185, 425, II.

⁶ In rendering into Latin, omit *while*. See Suggestion XIII., 3.

in the province during the winter.¹ 11. Into how many parts was Gaul divided? Caesar says that Gaul was divided into three parts. 12. Gaul is said to have been divided into three parts. 13. Into how many parts did you say that our country is divided? I said that it is divided into many parts. 14. He is said to have led his army back into camp about midday.

LESSON LXXVI.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS. — EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

221. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*²

Caesar cōpiās suās in prōximum collem subdūxit, equitātumque quī sustinēret³ hostium impetum mīsīt. Ipse interim in colle mediō⁴ triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum, sed in summō jugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre prōximē cōnserīpserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī, ac tōtū montem hominibus complērī jussit. Helvētīi sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt, sed Rōmānī facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Hostēs ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum fortiter pūgnāvērunt. Diūtius nostrōrum impetūs sustinēre nōn poterant; multī vulnerātī erant; itaque timōre perterritī fugae sēsē mandāvērunt, atque in finēs Lingonum contendērunt. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsīt, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē juvārent. Tum dēmum Helvētīi, omnium rērum inopiā adductī, lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt.

¹ *During the winter.* Use the Accusative of Duration of Time. See 98, 379.

² See Directions for Reading at Sight, 137.

³ See Suggestion XVII., 3.

⁴ See foot-note on *summus*, 141.

222. *Translate into Latin.*

1. About midday the general led out all his forces, and placed them in line of battle before the camp. The enemy in sight of their commander fought bravely for many hours, but at length, repulsed by the valor of our soldiers, and overcome (*terrified*) by fear, they betook themselves to flight. The general was wounded, and many soldiers were slain.

2. So great fear took possession of the Gauls, that they decided to fortify their cities, to bring grain into them from their lands, and to build a large number of ships.

3. The Gauls had filled this town with brave soldiers, and Caesar had been advised not to attack it on account of the valor of the men, the width of the moat, and the height of the wall. 4. At that time so great fear took possession of all the Aedui, whose lands the Helvetii were devastating, that they fortified their cities, and sent ambassadors to Caesar to ask aid.

LESSON LXXVII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — INDICATIVE ACTIVE. — REVIEW OF RULES XXXIV., XXXV. AND XXXVI.

223. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Audiō* learn the Indicative Mood of the Active Voice. See page 180.

224. *Vocabulary.*

Aduātuci, ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i>	<i>the Aduatuci, a tribe of northern</i>
Ante, <i>adv.</i>	<i>before.</i> - [Gaul.
Audiō, īre, īvi or īi, ītum,	<i>to hear, hear of.</i>
Clēmēntia, <i>ae. f.</i>	<i>clemency, forbearance, mercy.</i>
Cōgō, ere, cōēgī, cōāctum,	<i>to drive together, bring together,</i>
	<i>collect; to force, compel.</i>

Conveniō, ire, vēnī, ventum,	<i>to come together, assemble, meet,</i>
Cotidianus, a, um,	<i>daily.</i> [come.]
Duplex, icis,	<i>double.</i>
Helvētius, a, um,	<i>Helvetian.</i>
Latus, eris, n.	<i>side.</i>
Mūniō, ire, ivi or ii, itum,	<i>to fortify.</i>
Neque, conj.	<i>neither, nor; neque . . . neque,</i>
Pēs, pedis, m.	<i>foot.</i> [neither . . . nor.]
Scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptum,	<i>to write.</i>
Veniō, ire, vēnī, ventum,	<i>to come.</i>
Videō, ēre, vidī, visum,	<i>to see.</i>

225. Translate into English.

1. Nōne vōcēs militum audītis? Vōcēs omnium militum audimus. 2. Tum vērō nostrī clāmōrem ab eā parte audīvērunt. 3. Nōne castra mūniētis? Castra vallō mūniēmus. 4. Caesar castra in altitudinem pedum¹ duodecim vallō mūniverat. 5. Legiōnēs sex, quae primae vēnerant, castra mūniēbant. 6. Aduātucī, dē quibus suprà scripsimus, ūnum oppidum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant.² 7. Eō tempore castra vallō fossāque mūniēbāmus. 8. Ob eās rēs Galba ūnam partem vicī, quī appellātur Octōdūrus, vallō fossāque cōnfestim mūnivit.

9. Flūmen latus ūnum castrōrum mūniēbat. 10. Venetī oppida mūniēbant, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportābant, nāvēs in Venetiam cōgēbant. 11. Rhēnus lātissimus atque altissimus agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit. 12. Aduātucī Caesaris clēmēntiam ab aliīs audiēbant. 13. Tanta opera neque vīderant ante³ Gallī neque audierant.² 14. Eādem dē causā Helvētīi Celtārum omnium fortissimī sunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt. 15. Totīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem convēnērunt.

¹ Construe with *vallō*.

² *Mūnierant*, contracted from *mūniverant*; *audierant*, from *audiverant*.

³ Observe that *ante* is sometimes an adverb, and sometimes a preposition.

226. *Translate into Latin.*

1. What did you hear at Rome? We heard that nearly all the Belgae had conspired against the Roman people. From whom did you hear this report? We heard it from many citizens and from the consuls themselves. 2. Judges, you have heard the words of many witnesses, and all these things which you have heard are true. 3. Have the enemy heard what we are doing? I hear that all our plans have been announced to them by deserters. 4. Have you heard what we have been doing at this time at Rome? We have heard of¹ the many good things which you have done in that city.

5. Have you not fortified all these towns with high walls? We fortify our towns, not by walls and ramparts, but by the valor of our citizens. 6. I have never seen the cities of which² you write, but I have heard of them from others. 7. The legions that had been enrolled in Gaul were at that time fortifying the camp. 8. Have you not often heard that the Belgae incessantly wage war with the Germans? I have often heard that³ from you. 9. You have all heard that many states sent ambassadors to Caesar at that time to ask aid.

LESSON LXXVIII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE IN FULL. —
REVIEW OF RULES LV., LVI., AND LXI.

227. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

In the verb *Audiō*, learn the Active Voice in full. See the following page.

¹ Omit *of* in rendering into Latin. See 225, sentence 13.

² *Of which* = *concerning which*.

³ When the antecedent is a *clause*, the pronoun must be *neuter*.

FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

211. ACTIVE VOICE.—*Audiō, I hear.*VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, *audi*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
audiō,	audire,	audivī,	audītum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I hear.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiō	audimus
audis	auditis
audit	audiunt

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing, or I heard.

audiēbam	audiēbamus
audiēbas	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbant

FUTURE.

I shall or will hear.

audiam	audiēmus
audies	audietis
audiet	audient

PERFECT.

I have heard, or I heard.

audivī	audivimus
audivistī	audivistis
audivit	audivērunt, or ēre

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

audiveram	audiverāmus
audiverās	audiverātis
audiverat	audiverant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have heard.

audiverō	audiverimus
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit	audiverint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I hear, let him hear.¹

SINGULAR.

audiam**audias****audiat**

PLURAL.

audiamus**audiatis****audiant**

IMPERFECT.

*I should hear, he would hear.***audirem****audirēs****audiret****audirēmus****audirētis****audirent**

PERFECT.

*I may have heard, or I have heard.***audiverim****audiveris****audiverit****audiverimus****audiveritis****audiverint**

PLUPERFECT.

*I should have heard, he would have heard.***audivissem****audivissēs****audivisset****audivissēmus****audivissētis****audivissent**

IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. audi, hear thou ;**Fut. auditō, thou shalt hear,**auditō, he shall hear ;**audite, hear ye.**auditōte, ye shall hear,**audiuntō, they shall hear.*

INFINITIVE.

*Pres. audire, to hear.**Perf. audivisse, to have heard.**Fut. auditurus esse, to be about to hear.*

PARTICIPLE.

*Pres. audiēns, hearing.**Fut. auditurus, about to hear.*

GERUND.

*Gen. audiendi, of hearing,**Dat. audiendō, for hearing,**Acc. audiendum, hearing,**Abl. audiendō, by hearing.*

SUPINE.

*Acc. auditum, to hear,**Abl. auditū, to hear, be heard.*¹ But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see 111, 196, 11.

228. Vocabulary.

Alō, ere, alui, altum and altum,	to nourish, support, sustain.
Intellegō, ere, lēxi, lēctum,	to understand, know.
Prōnūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to proclaim, declare.
Proptereā, adv.	for this reason; proptereā quod, for the reason that, because.
Quaerō, ere, quaesivi or li, itum,	to seek, inquire, ask.
Quisque, quaeque, quidque and quodque,	every, every one, each, each one.
Quod, conj.	that; because.
Sabinus, i, m.	Sabinus, a lieutenant under to know. [Caesar.
Sciō, ire, ivi or li, itum,	second. [devote oneself to.
Secundus, a, um,	to serve, subserve; to promote, truthfully.
Serviō, ire, ivi or li, itum,	expense.
Sincērē, adv.	Titurius, a Roman name.
Sūmptus, ūs, m.	any.
Titūrius, li, m.	usefulness; interest, advantage.
Ūllus, a, um, 45, 151,	to clothe.
Ūtilitās, ātis, f.	traveller.
Vestiō, ire, ivi or li, itum,	
Vlātor, ōris, m.	

229. Translate into English.

1. Hōc oppidum duplici mūrō mūniāmus. 2. Hostēs suam urbem altissimō mūrō mūnīre parābant. 3. Imperātor nōs castra vallō mūnīre jubet. 4. Caesar Quīntum Titūrium Sabinum lēgātum castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vallō mūnīre jussit. 5. Utinam Caesar castra vallō fossāque mūnīvisset.¹ 6. Audiāmus Rōmānōs militēs. 7. Haec ut intellegātis ā mē sincērē prōnūntiārī, audīte Rōmānōs militēs. 8. Caesar prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre jussit.

9. Siciliam nūtricem plēbis Rōmānae nōminō, proptereā quod sine ūllō sūmptū nostrō² māximōs exercitūs nostrōs vestīvit, aluit, armāvit. 10. Cōsulēs ūtilitātī salūtique serviunt. 11. Salūtī cīvium omnium servīre dēbētis. 12. Dīcit

¹ For the force of the *Tense*, see 114, 483, 2.

² *Sūmptū nostrō*, literally, *our expense*; render, *expense to us*.

sē hōc ab aliīs audīvisse. 13. Dicunt sex legiōnēs castra mūnītūrās esse. 14. Studium audiendī; mūniendō; mīles vōcem audiēns; nostrī clāmōrem audientēs; mīlītēs castra munītūrī. 15. Gallī ab viātōribus quaerunt quid dē quāque rē audierint.

230. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Which legion was at that time fortifying the camp? The lieutenant said that the sixth legion was fortifying the camp. 2. The general says that he shall fortify the winter quarters with a high rampart. 3. We all know what you heard at Rome. 4. Let us now hear what you are doing and what you are seeing. 5. Lieutenants, fortify this city with a double wall; let not the enemy take it by storm.

6. Judges, hear now the words of these witnesses. 7. Would that you had all heard the words of these witnesses. 8. Hearing the shouts of the soldiers, the general ordered the lieutenants to lead out the whole army, and to place it in line of battle. 9. Have you heard which legions have been sent to sustain¹ the attack of the enemy? We have heard that five legions have been sent to sustain the attack of the enemy, and that two remain in camp.

LESSON LXXIX.

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS. — ACTIVE VOICE. — RULE XXIX. — REVIEW OF RULES LVII. AND LVIII.

231. *Examples. — Ablative of Specification.*

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Nōmine fuit rēx. | <i>He was king</i> IN NAME. |
| 2. Claudus alterō pede. | <i>Lame</i> IN one FOOT. |

NOTE. — The Latin usage illustrated in the Ablatives *nōmine* and *pede* is expressed in the following

¹ To sustain; render by a *Relative Clause* denoting *Purpose*.

RULE XXIX. — Specification.

424. A noun, adjective, or verb may take an Ablative to define its application :

Nōmine, nōn potestāte fuit rēx, He was king IN NAME, not IN POWER. Nep. Claudus alterō pede, lame IN ONE FOOT. Nep. Reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praeceḋunt, they surpass the other Gauls in courage. Caes.

232. Vocabulary.

Accurrō, ere, cucurri or curri, cursum,	to run to, hasten to, run. [much.
Adamō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to be greatly pleased with, like very
Administrō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to administer, manage, direct.
Angustus, a, um,	narrow, limited. [Gaul.
Bellovaci, ōrum, m. pl.	the Bellovaci, a tribe of northwestern
Cultus, ūs, m.	culture, refinement, civilization.
Dēfēnsor, ōris, m.	defender.
Finīō, ire, ivi or it, itum,	to end ; to bound, limit.
Fluō, ere, fluxi, fluxum,	to flow.
Imperium, ū, n.	empire, government.
Influō, ere, fluxi, fluxum,	to flow into, empty, flow.
Instituō, ere, ui, ūtum,	to begin, proceed.
Lacus, ūs, m.	lake. [Lake of Geneva.
Lemannus, i, m.	Lemannus, Lemān ; lacus Lemannus,
Minus, comp. adv.	less ; minimē, sup., least, very little, not at all, by no means.
Noviodūnum, i, n.	Noviodunum, a town in northwestern
Praeceḋō, ere, cessi, cessum,	to surpass. [Gaul.
Superior, us, comp. of superus,	superior.
Vacuum, a, um,	vacant, empty, deserted, abandoned.

233. Translate into English.

1. Eō tempore Rhēnus populī Rōmānī imperium ūnā ex parte finīebat. 2. Minimē ad Belgās mercātōrēs saepe com-
meant. 3. Helvētiī angustōs finēs habent, et ob eam rem
minus facile cum finitimīs bellum gerere possunt. 4. Rho-
danus inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum fluit. 5. Lacus
Lemannus in flūmen Rhodanum influit. 6. Ducēs hostium
castra mūnīre instituunt. 7. Caesar in finēs Suessiōnum
exercitum dūxit, et māgnīs itineribus ad oppidum Noviodū-

num contendit; id vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audierat.
8. Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praeēdunt.

9. Imperātor hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat.
10. Germānī, hominēs ferī ac barbarī, agrōs et cultum et
cōpiās Gallōrum adamābant. 11. Cōsīdius ad Caesarem
accurrit, et dīcit montem ab hostibus tenērī. 12. Bellovacī
sē cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs¹ dixerunt. 13. Vercinge-
torix bellum administrāre parābat.

234. Translate into Latin.

1. Caesar says that the warlike Germans were greatly pleased with (*liked very much*) the refinement of the Gauls. 2. We all know that the river Rhone separated the territory of the Helvetii from the Roman province. 3. The Romans are said to have surpassed the Gauls in valor. 4. I have often heard that the Gauls at that time surpassed the Germans in refinement. 5. I have heard from deserters that a brave lieutenant was slain in that battle.

6. They say that the enemy have fortified their towns, and that they will fight bravely for their country. 7. We have heard that you will remain in Italy the whole winter. 8. Have you not heard that many Gauls were held in servitude by Ariovistus. We have often heard that from the Gauls themselves. 9. The Aedui ought not to be held in servitude by barbarians. 10. At Geneva many friends were awaiting our arrival from Italy.

LESSON LXXX.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL.

235. Lesson from the Grammar.

In the verb *Audiō*, learn the Passive Voice in full.

¹ In the compound forms of the Infinitive, *esse* is often ~~thus~~ omitted.

FOURTH CONJUGATION : I VERBS.

212. PASSIVE VOICE.—Audior, *I am heard*.VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, *audi*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.
audior,PRES. INF.
audiri,PERF. IND.
auditus sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am heard.

SINGULAR.

audior
audiris, or re
auditur

PLURAL.

audimur
audimini
audiuntur

IMPERFECT.

*I was heard.***audiebar**
audiebaris, or re
audiebatur**audiebamur**
audiebamini
audiebantur

FUTURE.

*I shall or will be heard.***audiar**
audieris, or re
audietur**audiemur**
audiemini
audientur

PERFECT.

*I have been heard, or I was heard.***auditus sum¹**
auditus es
auditus est**auditi sumus**
auditi estis
auditi sunt

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been heard.***auditus eram¹**
auditus erās
auditus erat**auditi erāmus**
auditi erātis
auditi erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been heard.***auditus erō¹**
auditus eris
auditus erit**auditi erimus**
auditi eritis
auditi erunt¹ See 170, 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be heard, let him be heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiar	audiāmur
audiāris, or re	audiāmini
audiātur	audiantur

IMPERFECT.

I should be heard, he would be heard.

audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēris, or re	audīrēmini
audīrētur	audīrentur

PERFECT.

I may have been heard, or I have been heard.

audītus sim¹	audītī simus
audītus sis	audītī sitis
audītus sit	audītī sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been heard, he would have been heard.

audītus essem¹	audītī essēmus
audītus essēs	audītī essētis
audītus esset	audītī essent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. audire, <i>be thou heard;</i>	audiimini, <i>be ye heard.</i>
Fut. auditor, <i>thou shalt be heard,</i>	
auditor, <i>he shall be heard;</i>	audiuntor, <i>they shall be heard.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. audiri, <i>to be heard.</i>	
Perf. audītus esse,¹ <i>to have been heard.</i>	Perf. audītus, <i>heard.</i>
Fut. audītum iri, <i>to be about to be heard.</i>	Ger. audiendus, <i>to be heard, desiring to be heard.</i>

¹ See 170, 206, foot-notes.

LESSON LXXXI.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE IN FULL. —
 RULE XXVIII. — REVIEW OF RULE XXII. — EXERCISES.

236. *Examples. — Ablative of Difference.*

1. *Ūnō diē longior mēnsis.* *A month one DAY longer (longer BY one DAY).*
2. *Biduō mē antecessit.* *He preceded me BY TWO DAYS.*

NOTE. — The Latin usage illustrated in the Ablatives *diē* and *biduō* is expressed in the following

RULE XXVIII. — Ablative of Difference.

423. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative:

Ūnō diē longiōrem mēnsem faciunt, they make the month ONE DAY longer (longer BY ONE DAY). Cic. Biduō mē antecessit, he preceded me BY TWO DAYS. Cic. Sōl multis partibus māior est quam terra, the sun is very much (literally BY MANY PARTS) larger than the earth. Cic.

237. *Vocabulary.*

Britanni, ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i>	<i>the Britons.</i>
Cantium, īi, <i>n.</i>	<i>Kent.</i>
Cevenna, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Cevenna, a mountain range in southern Gaul, now the Cévennes.</i>
Ēgregiē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>excellently.</i>
Existimō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>to think.</i>
Hūmānus, a, um,	<i>civilized.</i>
Impediō, ire, ivi or īi, itum,	<i>to impede, hinder, embarrass.</i>
Impeditus, a, um,	<i>entangled.</i>
Mēnsis, is, <i>m.</i>	<i>month.</i>
Oppūgnātiō, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>assault, attack.</i>
Pauci, ae, <i>n.</i>	<i>few.</i>
Pellis, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>skin.</i>
Plērusque, raque, rumque,	<i>[most. the larger or greater part, the present; in praesentia (neut. plur.) for the present.</i>
Praesēns, entis, like prūdēns,	

Prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum,	<i>to prohibit, check, prevent, keep.</i>
Rapina, ae, f.	<i>robbery, plundering, pillaging.</i>
Reperiō, ire, repperī, repertum,	<i>to find.</i>
Satis, adv.	<i>enough; satis habēre, to consider</i>
Tamen, adv.	<i>yet, nevertheless. [it sufficient.</i>
Vesontio, ōnis, m.	<i>Vesontio, a town of eastern Gaul,</i>
Vincō, ere, vīci, victum,	<i>to conquer. [now Besançon.</i>

238. *Translate into English.*

1. Vesontio, oppidum m̄ximum Sēquanōrum, nātūrā loci mūniēbātur. 2. Nostrum oppidum altissimō mūrō mūniri dēbet. 3. Nostra oppida ēgregiē mūniantur. 4. Hic locus ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnitus est. 5. Britannī silvam impeditam, vallō atque fossā mūnitam, oppidum vocant. 6. Caesar oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnitum repperit; tamen hōc duābus ex partibus oppugnāre contendit. 7. Iter agminis nostrī multīs rēbus impediēbātur. 8. Aduātueī, dē quibus suprā scripsimus, sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitum comportābant.

9. Ex Britannīs¹ omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt; interiōrēs plērique pellibus sunt vestitī. 10. Oppidōrum oppugnātiō duābus rēbus impediēbātur. 11. Arvernī sē monte Cevennā mūnitōs esse existimābant. 12. Ex captivīs quaerāmus quam ob rem hostēs castra nōn mūniant. 13. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat² in praesentia² hostem rapinīs prohibēre. 14. Ariovistus paucīs mēnsibus³ ante Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vicerat.

239. *Translate into Latin.*

1. These cities are all excellently fortified by nature and art. 2. You will find that city excellently fortified with a double wall. 3. Did you say that the winter quarters of the

¹ Literally, *out of the Britons*; render, *or the Britons*. It has the force of a *Partitive Genitive*.

² See *Vocabulary*.

³ See 236, Rule XXVIII.

enemy are not fortified? I have heard from captives that the winter quarters of the Gauls are not fortified by art, but that they are enclosed on all sides¹ by high mountains. 4. Those who inhabited a large part of this island were barbarians, and were clothed in skins. 5. Many islands were then inhabited by barbarians, who were clothed in skins.

6. Among barbarians an entangled forest, fortified with a rampart and a moat, is often called a town. 7. Our cities will all be fortified many days² before the arrival of the enemy. 8. From whom did you hear that the camp of the Britons is already fortified with a high rampart? I have heard that report from the captives, of whom I have written above. 9. Did you not say that this tower is higher than that? It is higher than that by many feet. 10. The deserters said that the town had been fortified two years before. 11. Would that your towns had been fortified before the arrival of the enemy.

LESSON LXXXII.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS IN FULL. — PASSIVE VOICE. —
REVIEW OF RULE IV. — RULE XXXII.

240. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

RULE XXXII.³ — Ablative Absolute.⁴

431. A noun and a participle may be put in the Ablative to add to the predicate an attendant circumstance :

¹ *On all sides* ; Latin idiom, **FROM** *all sides* ; or render by a single adverb.

² Use the *Ablative of Difference*.

³ It seems to be no longer necessary to introduce Rules, as in previous lessons, by means of examples. The pupil has already learned the fact that a *Grammatical Rule* is nothing more than a *statement of the general usage of the language*. The introductory examples were intended chiefly to show him this fact.

⁴ This Ablative is called *absolute*, because it is not directly dependent for its construction upon any other word in the sentence.

Serviō rēgnante viguērunt, *they flourished in the reign of Servius* (Servius reigning).¹ Cic. Rēgibus exāctis, cōsulēs creāti sunt, *after the banishment of the kings,*² *consuls were appointed.* Liv. Equitātū praemissō, subsequēbātur, *having sent forward his cavalry, he followed.* Caes. Rēgnum haud satis prōsperum neglēctā rēligiōne, *a reign not sufficiently prosperous because religion was neglected.* Liv. Perditis rēbus omnibus tamen virtūs sē sustentāre potest, *though all things are lost, still virtue is able to sustain itself.* Cic.

1. The Ablative Absolute, much more common than the English Nominative Absolute, generally expresses the *time, cause, or some attendant circumstance* of an action.

2. This Ablative is generally best rendered — (1) by a *noun* with a *preposition* — *in, during, after, by, with, through, etc.*; (2) by an *active participle* with its *object*; or (3) by a *clause* with *when, while, because, if, though, etc.*; ³ see examples above.

3. A connective sometimes accompanies the Ablative:

Nisi mūnitis castris, *unless the camp should be fortified.* Caes.

4. A *noun* and an *adjective*, or even *two nouns*, may be in the *Ablative Absolute*:⁴

Serēnō caelō, *when the sky is clear.* Sen. Caniniō cōsule, *in the consulship of Caninius.* Cic.

241. Vocabulary.

Abstineō, ēre, tinui, tentum,	<i>to abstain, refrain.</i>
Acūtus, a, um,	<i>sharpened, sharp.</i>
Adhūc, adv.	<i>hitherto, thus far, as yet.</i>
Catēna, ae, f.	<i>chain.</i>
Culpa, ae, f.	<i>fault, blame.</i>
Dēligō, ere, lēgi, lēctum,	<i>to choose, select, elect.</i>
Latīnus, a, um,	<i>Latin.</i>
Liberō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to free, liberate.</i>
Ligārius, ii, m.	<i>Ligarius, a prominent Roman in whose behalf Cicero pleaded before Caesar.</i>
Nāvigium, ii, n.	<i>vessel, ship.</i>

¹ Or, *while Servius was reigning or was king.*

² Or, *after the kings were banished.*

³ The first method of translation comes nearer the original Latin conception, but the other methods generally accord better with the English idiom.

⁴ This construction is peculiar to the Latin. In the corresponding constructions in Sanskrit, Greek, and English, the present participle of the verb *to be* is used.

Nōbilitās, ātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>nobility ; the nobility, nobles.</i>
Probō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to approve ; to prove.</i>
Quārē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>wherefore.</i>
Relinquō, ere, liqui, lictum,	<i>to leave.</i>
Spoliō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to despoil, rob, deprive.</i>
Sudēs, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>stake.</i>
Tamesis, is, <i>m.</i>	<i>the Thames.</i>
Trini, ae, <i>a,</i>	<i>three-fold, triple.</i>
Vacō, āre, āvi, ātum,	<i>to be without, be free from.</i>
Vinciō, ire, vinxi, vinctum,	<i>to bind.</i>

242. *Translate into English.*

1. Labiēnus monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat, proeliōque abstinēbat. 2. Mūnītis castris, Caesar duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit, quattuor reliquās in castra redūxit. 3. Ducēs iī¹ dēliguntur, quī summam scientiam rēi militāris habēre existimantur. 4. Caesar ad² flūmen Tamesim exercitum dūxit; ad² alteram flūminis rīpam māgnae cōpiaē hostium erant instrūctae; rīpa autem erat acūtis sudibus mūnīta. 5. Captivī trīnīs catēnīs vincti sunt. 6. Celtae Latīnā linguā Gallī appellantur.

7. Dumnorix, Divitiaci frāter, dixit Galliam omnī nōbilitate spoliātam esse. 8. Helvētiī tertiā ex parte lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō continentur. 9. Imperātor fortis servitute Graeciam liberāvit. 10. Mūrus dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est. 11. Tuum, Brūte,³ iūdicium probō. 12. Adhūc, Caesar,³ Quīntus Ligārius omnī culpā vacat. 13. Quārē cōservāte, iūdicēs,³ hunc hominem nōbilissimum. 14. Caesar nāvigia, quae sēcum habēbat, militibus complērī iussit, et lēgātōs tribūnōsque militum monuit, ut ad² tempus omnēs rēs ab iīs administrārentur.

¹ Observe that *iī* is the *subject*, and *ducēs* a *Predicate Noun*.

² Observe that different English words must be used in rendering this preposition, according to the connection in which it occurs. Thus *to the river*, *on or near the bank*, *at the (proper) time*, or *in time*.

³ The Vocative rarely stands at the beginning of a sentence. It usually follows an emphatic word.

243. *Translate into Latin.*

1. As the general had freed the citizens from servitude,¹ he was called the father of his country. 2. May our country always be protected (*fortified*) by the valor of its citizens. 3. Having filled the ships with soldiers,¹ Caesar prepared to hasten into Britain. 4. Soldiers,² may you be called true friends of your country.

5. Having led his army to the Thames,¹ Caesar was told³ that the enemy were on the other bank of the river. 6. General,² we ask that your army be led back into camp. 7. On hearing our words,¹ the general ordered his army to be led back into camp. 8. Citizens,² this man is free from blame; let him be selected as leader. 9. The general, leaving one legion in camp,¹ led the others toward the enemy.

LESSON LXXXIII.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS IN FULL. — EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

244. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*

Gallia est dīvisā in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam Celtae, quī Latīnā linguā Gallī appellantur. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod minimē ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant, atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important, prōximique sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, qui-

¹ Be careful here and elsewhere not to render the English words by the corresponding Latin words, but consider by what idiom the thought should be expressed in Latin. Here the Ablative Absolute should be used, as if the English were *the citizens having been freed*, etc. In the first sentence, *the general* will become the subject of the principal verb.

² On the position of the Vocative, see page 192, foot-note 3.

³ Latin idiom, *it was told to Caesar*.

buseum continenter bellum gerunt. Eādem dē causā Helvētīi reliquōs Celtās virtūte praecedunt, quod ferē cotīdiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt.

Helvētīi undique loci nātūrā continentur; unā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dividit; alterā ex parte monte Jūrā, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam Rōmānam ab Helvētiis dividit. Ob eas rēs minus facile cum finitimis bellum gerere possunt.

245. Translate into Latin.

1. War could not readily be waged¹ by the Helvetii with their neighbors. 2. Lake Lemannus and the river Rhone, by which the Helvetii are separated from the Roman province, shut in the Helvetii on one side. 3. The rest of the Celts are surpassed in valor by the Helvetii. 4. Wars were incessantly waged by the Germans with the Helvetii.

5. The things which are imported by merchants frequently weaken the spirit of the Gauls. 6. Caesar says that Gaul is divided into three parts. By whom are these parts of Gaul inhabited? 7. Those whom the Romans named Gauls, called themselves Celts. 8. Who were the bravest of all those who inhabited Gaul?

LESSON LXXXIV.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — VERBS IN IŌ. — ACTIVE VOICE.
— REVIEW OF RULE LIX. — RULE LX.

246. Lesson from the Grammar.

217. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Present Indicative in **iŏ, ior**, like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. They are inflected with the endings of the Fourth, wherever those endings have two successive vowels.

¹ Render was not able to be waged.

218. ACTIVE VOICE. — Capiō, *I take*.

VERB STEM, *cap*; PRESENT STEM, *cape*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
capiō,	capere,	cēpi,	captum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
capiō, capis, capit;	capimus, capitis, capiunt.

IMPERFECT.

capiēbam, -iēbās, -iēbat;	capīēbāmus, -iēbātis, -iēbant.
---------------------------	--------------------------------

FUTURE.

capiam, -iēs, -iet;	capīēmus, -iētis, -ient.
---------------------	--------------------------

PERFECT.

cēpi, -isti, -it;	cēpimus, -istis, -ērunt, or ēre.
-------------------	----------------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

cēperam, -erās, -erat;	cēperāmus, -erātis, -erant.
------------------------	-----------------------------

FUTURE PERFECT.

cēperō, -erīs, -erit;	cēperīmus, -erītis, -erint.
-----------------------	-----------------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

capiam, -iās, -iat;	capīāmus, -iātis, -iant.
---------------------	--------------------------

IMPERFECT.

caperem, -erēs, -eret;	caperēmus, -erētis, -erent.
------------------------	-----------------------------

PERFECT.

cēperim, -erīs, -erit;	cēperīmus, -erītis, -erint.
------------------------	-----------------------------

PLUPERFECT.

cēpisse, -issēs, -isset;	cēpissēmus, -issētis, -issent.
--------------------------	--------------------------------

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i> cape;	capite.
<i>Fut.</i> capitō,	capitōte,
capitō;	capiuntō.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> capere.	<i>Pres.</i> capiēns.
<i>Perf.</i> cēpisse.	
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus esse.	<i>Fut.</i> captūrus.
GERUND.	SUPINE.
<i>Gen.</i> capiendī,	
<i>Dat.</i> capiendō,	
<i>Acc.</i> capiendum,	<i>Acc.</i> captum,
<i>Abl.</i> capiendō.	<i>Abl.</i> captū.

RULE LX. — Supine in *ū*.

547. The Supine in *ū* is generally used as an Ablative of Specification (231, 424):

Quid est tam jūcundum auditū, what is so agreeable to hear (in hearing)? Cic. *Difficile dictū est, it is difficult to tell.* Cic. *Dē genere mortis difficile dictū est, it is difficult to speak of the kind of death.* Cic. *Civitas incredibile memorātū est quantum crēverit, it is incredible to relate how much the state increased.* Sall.

247. Vocabulary.

Carrus, <i>i, m.</i>	cart, wagon.
Certus, <i>a, um,</i>	certain; certiōrem facere, to make more certain, to inform.
Coēmō, ere, ēmi, ēmptum,	to buy up, obtain by purchase.
Cōnātum, <i>i, n.</i>	undertaking, attempt, purpose.
Conjūrātiō, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	conspiracy.
Cupiditās, ātis, <i>f.</i>	desire.
Dō, dare, dedī, datum,	to give.
Facilis, <i>e, comp.</i> faciliior, sup. facillimus,	easy.
Faciō, ere, fēcī, factum,	to do, make.
Fidēs, ēi, <i>f.</i>	faith, confidence; assurance,
Indūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum,	to induce, lead on. [pledge.
Jumentum, <i>i, n.</i>	draught animal, beast of burden.
Mille, ¹ indeclinable,	a thousand.

¹ *Mille* as an adjective is indeclinable; as a substantive it is used in the Nominative and Accusative singular, but in the plural it is declined like the plural of *mare* (63, 63): *milia, milium, milibus*. With the substan-

Parcō, ere, peperci, parsum,	<i>to spare. (Followed by the Dative.)</i>
Perficiō, ere, feci, fectum,	<i>to accomplish.</i>
Permoveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtum,	<i>to move, induce, influence.</i>
Quam, <i>adv.</i>	<i>how; with a superlative, as . . . as possible; quam m̄ximus, the largest possible, as large as possible.</i>
Reciplō, ere, cēpi, ceptum,	<i>to retake, betake.</i>
Sementis, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>sowing, planting.</i>
Suscipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptum,	<i>to take up, undertake.</i>

248. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesar p̄cem cum Helvētiis fēcit. 2. P̄cem cum hostibus faciāmus. 3. Nōne p̄cem cum Gallis faciētis? P̄cem cum iis faciēmus. 4. Orgetorix sibi lēgatiōnem ad civitatēs suscepit. Is rēgnī cupiditāte inductus conjūratiōnem nōbilitātis Helvētiōrum fēcit. 5. Orgetorix facile esse factū Casticō et Dumnorigī prōbāvit cōnāta perficere. Ii hāc ōratiōne adducti inter sē fidem dedērunt.¹ 6. Nostrī milites sub occasum sōlis sē in castra recēpērunt. 7. Helvētiī, auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti, cōstituērunt jumentōrum et carrōrum quam m̄ximum numerum coēmere, et sēmentēs quam m̄ximās facere.

8. Hostēs posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent: idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor milium mittit, quī videant² quas in partēs hostēs iter faciant. 9. Omnēs unō tempore in hostēs impetum faciēmus. 10. Utinam eō tempore in hostēs impetum fēcissētis. 11. Nūntiī Caesarem dē his rēbus certiōrem faciēbant. 12. Dux Gallōrum magnā manū ad castra nostra oppugnātum venit. His rēbus permōtus Quīntus Titūrius lēgātum ad Gallōs mittit rogātum ut sibi militibusque³ parcant.

tre mille, milia, the name of the objects enumerated is generally in the Genitive.

¹ *Inter sē dare, 'to give each other,' 'to exchange.'*

² *See Suggestion XVII., 3.*

³ *Indirect object; see 54, Rule XII.*

249. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Helvetii sent ambassadors to Caesar to ask peace. 2. As hostages had been sent by the Helvetii,¹ Caesar said that he would make peace with them. 3. The Gauls hastened to the winter quarters of the legion to attack it. 4. Caesar understood that to conquer the Helvetii was not an easy thing to do. 5. An hour² before sunset we shall betake ourselves into our camp.

6. Which is the easier thing to do, to march into the forest or to remain in the camp? 7. Who will inform us in which direction the enemy marched?³ 8. The chiefs of the Gauls did not accomplish their purposes. 9. To accomplish⁴ the purposes of the Helvetii, Orgetorix had undertaken an embassy to the other states of Gaul.

LESSON LXXXV.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — VERBS IN IŌ. — PASSIVE VOICE.
RULE XLIV.

250. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

219. PASSIVE VOICE. — *Capior, I am taken.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.

capior,

PRES. INF.

capi,

PERF. IND.

captus sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

capior, caperis, capltur;

PLURAL.

| capimur, capimini, capiuntur.

IMPERFECT.

capiēbar, -iēbāris, -iēbātur;

| capiēbāmur, -iēbāminī, iēbantur.

¹ Use the Ablative Absolute.

² Ablative of Difference.

³ An Indirect Question. What mood must be used?

⁴ Remember that it is only after *verbs of motion* that the Supine is used to express purpose. Here a clause with *ut* should be used.

FUTURE.

capiar, -iēris, -iētur; | capiēmur, -iēmini, -ientur.

PERFECT.

captus sum, es, est; | capti sumus, estis, sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

captus eram, erās, erat; | capti erāmus, erātis, erant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

captus erō, eris, erit; | capti erimus, eritis, erunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

capiar, -iāris, iātur; | capiāmur, -iāmini, -iantur.

IMPERFECT.

caperer, erēris, -erētur; | caperēmur, -erēmini, -erentur.

PERFECT.

captus sim, sis, sit; | capti simus, sitis, sint.

PLUPERFECT.

captus essem, essēs, esset; | capti essemus, essētis, essent.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. capere;

capimini.

Fut. capitor,
capitor;

capiuntor.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. capi.

Perf. captus esse.

Fut. captum iri.

Perf. captus.

Ger. capiendus.

506. Every conditional sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or understood—the *Condition* and the *Conclusion*:

*Si negem, mentiar, if I should deny it, I should speak falsely.*¹
Cic.

¹ Here *si negem* is the condition, and *mentiar*, the conclusion.

RULE XLIV.—Conditional Sentences with **sī, nisi, nī, sin.**

507. Conditional sentences with **sī, nisi, nī, sin**, take —

I. The INDICATIVE in both clauses *to assume* the supposed case :

Sī spiritum dūcit, vivit, if he breathes, he is alive. Cic. *Sī tot exempla virtūtis nōn movent, nihil unquam movēbit, if so many examples of valor do not move (you), nothing will ever move (you).* Liv.

II. The PRESENT or PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses *to represent* the supposed case as *possible* :

Diēs dēficiat, sī velim causam dēfendere, the day would fail me, if I should wish to defend the cause. Cic. *Improbē fēcērīs, nisi monuerīs, you would do wrong, if you should not give warning.* Cic.

III. The IMPERFECT or PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses *to represent* the supposed case as *contrary to fact* :

Plūribus verbis ad tē scriberem, sī rēs verba dēsiderāret, I should write to you more fully (with more words), if the case required words. Cic. *Sī voluisset, dimicāssset, if he had wished, he would have fought.* Nep.

251. Vocabulary.

Admittō, ere, mīsi, missum,	<i>to admit, commit.</i>
Biennium, li, n.	<i>two years, space of two years.</i>
Cōficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum,	<i>to accomplish, complete, finish, bring to a close.</i>
Contrōversia, ae, f.	<i>controversy, dispute.</i>
Dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum,	<i>to decide, decree.</i>
Dēfessus, a, um,	<i>tired, exhausted, weary.</i>
Dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum,	<i>to destroy.</i>
Druidēs, um, m. pl.	<i>Druids, the priests of the Gauls.</i>
Facinus, facinoris, n.	<i>misdeed, crime.</i>
Hērēditās, ātis, f.	<i>inheritance.</i>
Interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum,	<i>to kill, slay, put to death.</i>
Jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactum,	<i>to throw.</i>
Labor, ōris, m.	<i>labor, toil, effort, exertion.</i>
Mōs, mōris, m.	<i>usage, custom.</i>
Poena, ae, f.	<i>penalty, punishment.</i>
Praecipitō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>to precipitate, throw, hurl.</i>

Privātus, a, um,	private, personal.
Prōditor, ōris, m.	traitor.
Prōiciō, ¹ ere, prōjēcī, jectum,	to throw forward, throw down.
Pūblicus, a, um,	public.
Sī, conj.	if.
Vinculum, ī, n.	fetter, bond, chain.

252. Translate into English.

1. Germānōrum² bellum celeriter cōficiētur. 2. Bellum Helvētiōrum² jam cōfectum erat. 3. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō,³ totius ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs civitātum, ad Caesarem convēnērunt. 4. Germānī suōs interficī vīdērunt; māgnō numerō interfectō,³ reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt. 5. Quid cōficiētur? Eae rēs cōfici dēbent. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās⁴ biennium nōbīs satis dūcimus. Quis ad eās rēs cōficiendās⁴ dēligētur? Jam tū dēlēctus es. 6. Lapidēs undique in mūrū jaciuntur, mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātur. 7. In Galliā Druidēs ferē dē omnibus contrōversīis pūblicis prīvātisque cōstituunt; sī quod est admissum facinus, poenās cōstituunt; sī dē hērēditāte contrōversia est, iidem dēcernunt. 8. Sī quod sit admissum facinus, poenās cōstituāmus. 9. Sī quod esset admissum facinus, poenās cōstituissēmus.

10. Ego hōc cōsiliū probārem, sī nūllum perīculum vidērem. 11. Ego hōc cōsiliū probāvissem, sī nūllum perīculum vīdissem. 12. Helvētiī, sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum iis fēcissent, arma prōjēcissent. 13. Nisi tōtius diēi labōre militēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostiū cōpiae dēlētae essent. 14. Helvētiī mōribus suis⁵ prōditōrem ex vinculis⁶ dicere⁷ coēgērunt.

¹ Pronounced as though spelled *prōjiciō*.

² English idiom, *war with the Germans*, etc.

³ See Suggestion XVI., (1).

⁴ See Suggestion XIII., A.

⁵ In accordance with, etc. See 158, Rule XXII.

⁶ English idiom, *in chains*.

⁷ In this connection *dicere* may be rendered *plead*.

253. *Translate into Latin.*

1. If stones had been thrown against the wall, it would have been stripped of soldiers. 2. Should stones be thrown against the wall, the town would be taken. 3. If the general were in the camp, the soldiers would not be daunted by fear. 4. If the general is in the camp, we ought not to fear danger. 5. If the war with the Helvetii should be finished, ambassadors would assemble from the rest of Gaul.

6. If any crime has been committed by these men, let the penalty be determined by the judge. 7. If our city had been fortified, we should not see these perils.¹ 8. If we approved your plan, we should not have accomplished these things so successfully.¹ 9. After these things were accomplished,² peace was made with the enemy.

LESSON LXXXVI.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS IN FULL, INCLUDING VERBS IN
IÔ. — RULE XLVI.254. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

514. A concessive clause is one that concedes or admits something, generally introduced in English by *though* or *although*:³

Quamquam itinere fessi erant, tamen prœcédant, *although they were weary with the journey, they still (yet) advanced.* Sall.

¹ Observe that in 7, the condition refers to past time, and the conclusion to present time, while in 8 the condition refers to present time, and the conclusion to past time.

² Use the Ablative Absolute.

³ Concessive clauses bear a close resemblance to conditional clauses both in form and in use. *Sī optimum est*, 'if it is best,' is a condition; *etsi optimum est*, 'even if (or though) it is best,' is a concession; the one assumes a supposed case, the other admits it.

RULE XLVI. — Moods in Concessive Clauses.

515. Concessive clauses take —

I. Generally the *Indicative* in the best prose, when introduced by *quamquam* :

Quamquam intellegunt, tamen nūquam dicunt, though they understand, they never speak. Cic. *Quamquam festinās, nōn est mora longa, though you are in haste, the delay is not long.* Hor.

II. The *Indicative* or *Subjunctive*, when introduced by *etsī, etiamsī, tametsī, or sī*, like conditional clauses with *sī*. Thus —

1. The *Indicative* is used to represent the supposed case as a *fact* :

Gaudeō, etsī nihil sciō quod gaudeam, I rejoice, though I know no reason why I should rejoice. Plaut.

2. The *Present* or *Perfect Subjunctive*, to represent the supposed case as *possible* :

Etsi nihil habeat in sē glōria, tamen virtūtem sequitur, though glory may not possess anything in itself, yet it follows virtue. Cic.

3. The *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect Subjunctive*, to represent the supposed case as *contrary to fact* :

Etiamsi mors oppetenda esset, domi māllem, even if death ought to be met, I should prefer to meet it at home. Cic.

III. The *Subjunctive*, when introduced by *licet, quamvis, ut, nē, cum*, or the relative *quī* :

Licet irrideat, plūs tamen ratiō valēbit, though he may deride, reason will yet avail more. Cic. *Nōn tū possis, quamvis excellās, you would not be able, although you excel.* Cic. *Ut dēsint virēs, tamen est laudanda voluntās, though the strength fails, still the will should be approved.* Ovid. *Nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est, though pain may not be the greatest evil, it is certainly an evil.* Cic. *Cum domi divitiae adfluerent, fuere tamen civēs, etc., though wealth abounded at home, there were yet citizens, etc.* Sall.

255. Vocabulary.

Aestās, ātis, <i>f.</i>	summer.
Circummūniō, ire, ivi, itum,	to wall around, encompass, surround.
Conciliō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to win, secure.
Crēber, bra, brum,	frequent.

Cupio, ere, ivi or ii, itum,	to desire.
Curo, are, avi, atum,	to care, care for; aliquid faciendum curare, to have anything done.
Etsi, conj.	although.
Excursio, onis, f.	sally, sortie.
Exigo, ere, egi, actum,	to complete, finish, end.
Exiguus, a, um,	restricted, limited, scanty, small,
Graecus, a, um,	Greek, Grecian. [brief.
Ignoro, are, avi, atum,	not to know, to be ignorant of.
Indicium, li, n.	testimony, evidence.
Juvo, are, juvi, jutum,	to aid.
Maturus, a, um,	early.
Orbis, is, m.	circle, circuit; orbis terrarum, the
Ordo, inis, m.	rank. [earth, world.
Perpetuus, a, um,	perpetual, endless, uninterrupted.
Respicio, ere, spexi, spectrum,	to regard, look upon.
Tabula, ae, f.	table, tablet; document, record.
Terra, ae, f.	earth, land.
Transduco, ere, duxi, ductum,	to lead across.

256. Translate into English.

1. Ea res Helvetiis per indicium cōnūtiatur. 2. Caesar pontem in¹ Arare faciendum cūravit² atque ita exercitum trānsdūxit. 3. In castris Helvetiōrum tabulae repertae sunt, litteris Graecis cōfectae. 4. Orgetorix dixit sē suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrum esse. Is sē suis cōpiis suoque exercitū Casticō Dumnorigique rēgna conciliātūrum esse cōfirmābat. 5. Sī Lingonēs Helvetiōs frūmentō jūvissent, Caesar eōs prō hostibus habuisset. 6. Hostēs primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant; postea vallō circummūniti³ oppidō sēsē continēbant. 7. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsi prope exācta jam aestās erat, tamen in aliam gentem exercitum addūxit.

8. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā, Caesar, etsi in Galliā mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam contendit. 9.

¹ English idiom, OVER.

² Literally, cared for a bridge to be made, i.e. attended to the making of a bridge; render, had a bridge made.

³ That is, by our works.

Ētsī nōndum Britannōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, tamen periculum vidēbat. 10. Cum ea ita sint, tamen vōbīscum pācem faciēmus. 11. Cum primī ōrdinēs hostium interfectī essent, tamen reliquī fortiter pūgnābant. 12. Caesar sē principem nōn solum urbis Rōmae, sed orbis terrārum esse cupiēbat. 13. Sī ea quae in aliīs nātiōnibus geruntur ignōrātis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae perpetuā premitur servitūte.

257. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Although we see other lands distressed by slavery, our country is free. 2. Although these things have been announced to the enemy,¹ they do not know what is done in our camp. 3. Although many very brave soldiers have been slain,¹ we desire to make peace with the enemy. 4. Although a bridge has been made over the river,¹ the army has not yet been led across.

5. What was found in the camp of the Helvetii? Caesar tells us what was found in their camp.² 6. Caesar regarded them as enemies, in order that other nations might not assist the Helvetii. 7. If a bridge had been made,¹ the army could have been³ led over. 8. Although they had made peace¹ a few days before, they made frequent attacks upon the Roman camp.

LESSON LXXXVII.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS. — DEPONENT VERBS. — RULE XXVI.

258. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

DEPONENT VERBS.

231. Deponent Verbs have in general the forms of the Passive Voice with the signification of the Active. But —

¹ In all these sentences we may use the Ablative Absolute, but a finite verb with a conjunction expresses more clearly the *concessive* or *conditional* force of the clause.

² An Indirect Question.

³ Render, *would have been able to be led*.

1. They have also in the Active, the future infinitive, the participles, gerund, and supine.

2. The gerundive generally has the passive signification; sometimes also the perfect participle: *hortandus*, to be exhorted; *expertus*, tried.

3. The Future Infinitive of the Passive form is rare, as the Active form is generally used.

NOTE.—The synopsis of a single example will sufficiently illustrate the peculiarities of Deponent Verbs.

232. Hortor, *I exhort.*

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM; STEM, *hortā*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. hortor ¹	horter	hortāre	hortārī	hortāns
Imp. hortābar	hortārer			
Fut. hortābor		hortātor		

Gerund, hortandī.

Gerundive, hortandus.

3. SUPINE SYSTEM; STEM, *hortāt*.

Perf. hortātus sum	hortātus sim		hortātus esse	hortātus
Plup. hortātus eram	hortātus essem			
F. P. hortātus erō				
Fut.			hortātūrus esse	hortātūrus

Supine, hortātum, hortātū.

RULE XXVI.—Ablative in Special Constructions.²

421. The Ablative is used —

I. With **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, **vescor**, and their compounds:

¹ The tenses are inflected regularly throughout; *hortor*, *hortārīs*, *hortātur*; *hortāmur*, *hortāmini*, *hortantur*. All the forms in this synopsis have the active meaning, *I exhort*, *I was exhorting*, etc., except the *Gerundive*, which has the passive force, *deserving to be exhorted*, *to be exhorted*. The *Gerundive*, as it is passive in meaning, cannot be used in intransitive Deponent Verbs, except in an impersonal sense; see 281, 301, 1.

² This Ablative is readily explained as the Ablative of *means*: thus, *ūtor*, 'I use,' 'I serve myself *by means of*'; *fruor*, 'I enjoy,' 'I delight myself *with*'; *vescor*, 'I feed upon,' 'I feed myself *with*,' etc.

Plūrimis rēbus fruimur et ūtimur, we enjoy and use VERY MANY THINGS. Cic. *Māgnā est praedā potitus, he obtained GREAT BOOTY.* Nep. *Lacte et carne vescēbantur, they lived upon milk and flesh.* Sall.

II. With VERBS and ADJECTIVES OF PLENTY :

Villa abundat lacte, cāseō, melle, the villa abounds IN MILK, CHEESE, and HONEY. Cic. *Urbs referta copiis, a city filled WITH SUPPLIES.* Cic. *Virtūte praeditus, endowed with virtue.* Cic. *Deus bonis explevit mundum, God has filled the world with blessings.* Cic.

III. With dignus, indignus,¹ and contentus :

Dignī sunt amicitia, they are worthy OF FRIENDSHIP. Cic. *Vir patre dignus, a man worthy OF HIS FATHER.* Cic. *Honōre indignissimus, most unworthy of honor.* Cic. *Nātūra parvō contenta, nature content with little.* Cic.

NOTE 1. — Transitive verbs of Plenty² take the Accusative and Ablative:

Armīs nāvēs onerat, he loads the ships with arms. Sall.

259. Vocabulary.

Abundō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to abound, to be well supplied
Arbitror, āri, ātus sum,	to think. [with.
Cōfidō, ere, fīsus sum, ³	to trust, have confidence in, rely
Cōnor, āri, ātus sum,	to try, attempt. [upon.
Contentus, a, um,	content, satisfied.
Indignus, a, um,	unworthy.
Interclūdō, ere, clūsi, clūsum,	to cut off.
Nūllus, a, um, 45, 151,	not any, no, none.
Persuādeō, ēre, suāsi, suāsum,	to persuade.
Potior, iri, itus sum,	to gain possession of, take possession of, obtain possession of.
Privō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to deprive.
Proficiscor, i, profectus sum,	to start, set out.

¹ The nature of the Ablative with *dignus* and *indignus* is somewhat uncertain. On etymological grounds it is explained as *instrumental*; see Delbrück, p. 72; Corssen, 'Krit. Beitr.,' p. 47.

² Transitive verbs of *plenty* mean 'to fill,' 'to furnish with,' etc., as *cumulō, compleō, impleō, imbuō, instruō, onerō, ōrnō*, etc.

³ *Cōfidō* is a *semi-deponent*, i.e. in the tenses for completed action it has the forms of the passive voice, with the meaning of the active.

Trānō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to swim across.
Tūtō, <i>adv.</i>	safely.
Tūtus, a, um,	safe.
Ūllus, a, um, 45, 151,	any, any one.
Ūtor, ī, ūsus sum,	to use.
Versus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	verse.
Vis, vis, <i>f.</i>	force, violence; <i>pl.</i> virēs, virium,
Vulnus, eris, <i>n.</i>	wound. [strength.]

260. Translate into English.

1. Helvētīi dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis proficiscē-
antur. 2. Orgetorix Casticō¹ persuādet ut rēgnum in cīvi-
tate suā occupet, itemque² Dumnorigī ut idem cōnētur. 3.
Prōditōrēs hanc urbem dēlēre cōnantur. 4. Prōditor nōs
omnēs vitā privāre cōnātus est. 5. Tibi, Caesar, bonī virī
grātiās agunt. 6. Bellō cōfectō, omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs
lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt. 7. Eō tempore Druidēs
Graecis litteris ūtēbantur. 8. Druidēs versūs suōs litteris
nōn mandant, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus Graecis litteris
ūtantur.

9. Aeduī prō Bellovacis rogābant ut Caesar suā clementiā
in eos ūterētur. 10. Labiēnus castris hostium potītus est.
11. Hostēs, commeātū interclūsō, sine ūllō vulnere victōriā
potīrī cupiunt. Illi, etsi sē tūtō pūgnātūrōs exīstimābant,
tamen tūtius³ esse arbitrābantur, commeātū interclūsō, sine
ūllō vulnere victōriā potīrī. 12. Hostēs ad flūmen Rhēnum
vērēntur; ibi pauci viribus cōnfisi trānāre contendērunt. 13.
Vercingetorix equitātū abundābat. Is militibus quōs antea
habuerat sē esse contentum dixit. 14. Militēs extrēmam
famem sustinēbant, nulla tamen vōx est ab⁴ iis audīta, populī
Rōmānī glōriā et superiōribus victōriis indigna. 15. Galli
superiōrem partem collis castris suis complēvērunt.

¹ *Indirect Object*; the clause with *ut* is the *Direct Object*.

² *Item* modifies *persuādet*.

³ What determines the gender of this predicate adjective?

⁴ The context here shows that *ab* should be rendered *from*, not *by*.

261. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Although the Gauls were well supplied with grain, Caesar was cut off from supplies. 2. Gaul was filled with very warlike nations. 3. We shall not obtain possession of the camp of the enemy without receiving¹ many wounds. 4. Many words which we hear are unworthy of wise men. 5. The Helvetii were not contented with their territory, but desired to obtain possession of the lands of their neighbors.

6. The general, relying on² the valor of his soldiers, has determined to assault the town. 7. We shall attempt to set out to-night.³ 8. Caesar thought that he should use the supplies of grain which were sent by the Aedui. 9. Do you understand for what reason the Druids used Greek letters?⁴

LESSON LXXXVIII.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS IN FULL. — RULES LIII. AND LIV.

262. *Lesson from the Grammar.*INDIRECT DISCOURSE. — *Ōrātiō Obliqua.*

522. When a writer or speaker expresses thoughts, whether his own or those of another, in any other form than in the original words of the author, he is said to use the Indirect Discourse — *Ōrātiō Obliqua* :⁵

Platōnem ferunt in Italiam vēnisse, they say that Plato came into Italy. Cic. *Respondeō tē dolōrem ferre moderatē, I reply that you bear the affliction with moderation.* Cic. *Ūtilem arbitror esse scientiam, I think that knowledge is useful.* Cic.

¹ In rendering, omit *receiving*.² See 260, sentence 12.³ Render *on this night*.⁴ What kind of a clause? See 127, 529.⁵ Thus, in the first example, *Platōnem in Italiam vēnisse* is in the indirect discourse; in the direct, i.e. in the original words of those who made the statement, it would be *Platō in Italiam vēit*.

1. In distinction from the INDIRECT DISCOURSE — *Ōrātiō Obliqua*, the original words of the author are said to be in the DIRECT DISCOURSE — *Ōrātiō Rēcta*.

2. Words quoted without change belong to the DIRECT DISCOURSE:

Rēx 'duumvirōs' inquit 'secundum lēgem faciō,' *the king said, 'I appoint duumvirs according to law.'* Liv.

RULE LIII. — Moods in Principal Clauses.

523. The principal clauses of the DIRECT DISCOURSE on becoming INDIRECT take the *Infinitive* or *Subjunctive* as follows:

I. When DECLARATIVE, they take the *Infinitive with a Subject Accusative*.

Dicēbat animōs esse divinōs, *he was wont to say that souls are divine*. Cic. Platōnem Tarentum vēnisse reperiō, *I find that Plato came to Tarentum*. Cic. Catō mirārī sē aīebat, *Cato was wont to say that he wondered*. Cic. Hippīās glōriātus est, ānulum sē suā manū cōnfēcisse,¹ *Hippias boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand*. Cic.

II. When INTERROGATIVE, they take —

1. Generally the *Subjunctive*:

Ad postulāta Caesaris respondit, quid sibi vellet, cūr veniret,² *to the demands of Caesar he replied, what did he wish, why did he come?* Caes.

2. Sometimes the *Infinitive with a Subject Accusative*, as in rhetorical questions:³

¹ In the direct discourse these examples would read — (1) *animi sunt divini*, (2) *Platō Tarentum vēnit*, (3) *mīror*, and (4) *ānulum meā manū cōnfēcī*. Observe that the pronominal subjects implied in *mīror* and *cōnfēcī* are expressed with the Infinitive, as *mīrārī sē*, *sē cōnfēcisse*. But the subject is sometimes omitted when it can be readily supplied; see second example under II., 2, below.

² In the direct discourse this example would read — *quid tibi rīs? cūr venīs?*

³ A question used for rhetorical effect in place of an assertion is called a *Rhetorical Question*, as *num potest*, 'can he?' = *nōn potest*, 'he can not'; *quid est turpius*, 'what is baser?' = *nihil est turpius*, 'nothing is baser.'

Docēbant rem esse testimoniū, etc.; quid esse levius, etc., *they showed that the fact was a proof (for a proof), etc.; what was more inconsiderate, etc.?* Caes. Respondit, num memoriam deponere posse,¹ *he replied, could he lay aside the recollection?* Caes.

III. When IMPERATIVE,² they take the *Subjunctive*:

Scribit Labiēnō cum legiōne veniat, *he writes to Labienus to come (that he should come) with a legion.* Caes. Redditur respōsum, castris sē tenērent, *the reply was returned, that they should keep themselves in camp.* Liv. Militēs certiōres facit, sē reficerent, *he directed the soldiers to refresh themselves.* Caes. Ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, *they prayed that he would bring them help.* Caes. Nūntius vēnit, nē dubitāret,³ *a message came that he should not hesitate.* Nep.

RULE LIV. — Moods in Subordinate Clauses.

524. The subordinate clauses of the DIRECT DISCOURSE on becoming INDIRECT take the *Subjunctive*:

Respondit sē id quod in Nerviiis fēcisset factūrum,⁴ *he replied that he would do what he had done in the case of the Nervii.* Caes. Hippias glōriātus est, ānulum quem habēret sē suā manū cōnfēcisse,⁵ *Hippias boasted that he had made with his own hand the ring which he wore.* Cic.

526. In passing from the DIRECT DISCOURSE to the INDIRECT, pronouns of the first and second persons are generally changed to pronouns of the third person,⁶ and the first and

Here belong many questions which in the direct form have the verb in the first or in the third person. As such questions are equivalent to declarative sentences, they take the same construction, the Infinitive with its subject.

¹ Direct discourse — (1) *quid est levius* = *nil est levius*, and (2) *num memoriam deponere possum* = *memoriam deponere nōn possum*.

² Imperative sentences include those sentences which take the *Subjunctive of Desire*; see 114, 483.

³ In the direct discourse these examples would read — (1) *cum legiōne veni*, (2) *castris vōs tenēte*, (3) *vōs reficite*, (4) *nōbis auxilium fer*, (5) *nōli dubitāre*.

⁴ Direct, *faciam id quod in Nerviiis feci*.

⁵ Direct, *ānulum quem habeo meā manū cōnfeci*.

⁶ Thus — (1) *ego* is changed to *suī*, *sibi*, etc., or to *ipse*; *meus* and *noster* to *suus*; (2) *tū* to *is* or *ille*, sometimes to *sui*, etc.; *tuus* and *vester* to *suus* or to the Genitive of *is*; and (3) *hic* and *iste* to *ille*.

second persons of verbs are generally changed to the third person :

Glōriātus est, ānulum sē suā manū cōnfēcisse,¹ *he boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand.* Cic. Redditur respōnsum, castris sē tenērent,² *the reply was returned that they should keep themselves in camp.* Liv. Respondit, sī obsidēs ab iis sibi dentur, sēsē cum iis pācem esse factūrum,³ *he replied that if hostages were given to him by them, he would make peace with them.* Cæs.

263. Vocabulary.

Appetō, ere, petivī or li, itum,	to seek after, seek.
Artificium, li, n.	artifice.
Concilium, li, n.	council, meeting.
Creō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to create, elect, appoint.
Discēdō, ere, cessī, cessum,	to depart, withdraw, swerve.
Polliceor, ēri, itus sum,	to promise. [er than, before.
Prius, adv. comp., sup. prīmum,	before, sooner ; prius quam, soon-
Quisquam, quaequam, quicquam,	anyone, anything.
Respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsum,	to answer.

264. Translate into English.

1. Ariovistus respondit sē prius in Galliam vēnisse, quam populum Rōmānum.⁴ Dīxit omnēs Galliae cīvitatēs contrā sē castra habuisse,⁵ eas omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō superātās esse.⁴ 2. Posterō diē, conciliō convocātō, Vercingetorix dīxit nōn virtūte neque in aciē vīcissee Rōmānōs,⁴ sed artificīō quōdam et scientiā oppugnātiōnis.⁶ 3. Aedui summō in periculō sunt. Aedui dicunt sē summō in periculō esse.⁴ Dīxērunt sē summō esse in periculō. 4. Aedui summō in

¹ Direct, ānulum ego meā manū cōnfēcī. Ego becomes sē, and meā, suā.

² Direct, castris vōs tenēte. Vos becomes sē, and tenēte, tenērent.

³ Direct, sī obsidēs ā vōbis mihi dābuntur, vōbiscum pācem faciam. A vōbis becomes ab iis ; mihi becomes sibi ; vōbiscum, cum iis ; and the implied subject of faciam becomes sēsē, the subject of esse factūrum.

⁴ Give the Direct form corresponding to this Indirect Discourse.

⁵ Castra habēre, literally, to have camp, may be rendered to encamp, to take the field.

⁶ English idiom, skill in assault.

periculō erant. Aeduī dicunt sē summō fuisse in periculō.¹ Dixerunt sē summō fuisse in periculō.

5. Liscus magistrātum gerēbat. Hōc tempore duo magistrātum gerunt. Aeduī summō in periculō sunt quod duo magistrātum gerunt. Aeduī dicunt sē summō esse in periculō, quod duo magistrātum gerant, et sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creātum esse dicat.¹ Dixerunt sē summō esse in periculō, quod duo magistrātum gererent, et sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creātum esse diceret.

6. Nōne Orgetorix suae cīvitātis imperium obtinēbit? Dicit sē suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrum esse.¹ 7. Imperātor cum hostibus pācem faciet. Dicit sī² obsidēs ab hostibus sibi dentur, utī eōs ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum.¹ 8. Caesar dixit Ariovistum sē cōsule³ populī Rōmānī amicitiam appetisse;¹ cūr hunc quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret?

265. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Caesar says that Gaul was divided into three parts; that the Belgae inhabited one of these, the Aquitani another, and the Celts the third.⁴ 2. He said that a third part of Gaul was inhabited by those who called themselves Celts, but whom the Romans named Gauls.⁴ He said that the Helvetii were the bravest of the Gauls, and that they were nearest to the Germans, with whom they were continually waging war.⁴ 3. The Helvetii said that if the Romans made peace with them, they would remain where Caesar desired; but that if peace was not made, the Romans would be regarded by them as enemies.⁴ Although they had attempted to march through the province, they said that they wished to make peace.⁴

¹ Give the corresponding Direct form.

² What form of condition in Direct Discourse?

³ Ablative Absolute, *he being consul*; render, *in his consulship*.

⁴ Give the corresponding Direct form in English and in Latin.

LESSON LXXXIX.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. — EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

266. Lesson from the Grammar.

233. The ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION, formed by combining the Future Active Participle with *sum*, denotes an intended or future action :

Amātūrus sum, I am about to love.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	amātūrus sum ¹	amātūrus sim	amātūrus esse
<i>Imp.</i>	amātūrus eram	amātūrus essem	
<i>Fut.</i>	amātūrus erō		
<i>Perf.</i>	amātūrus fui	amātūrus fuerim	amātūrus fuisse
<i>Plup.</i>	amātūrus fueram	amātūrus fuisset	
<i>F. P.</i>	amātūrus fuerō ¹		

234. The PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION, formed by combining the Gerundive with *sum*, denotes *necessity* or *duty*.

*Amandus sum, I must be loved.*²

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	amandus sum	amandus sim	amandus esse
<i>Imp.</i>	amandus eram	amandus essem	
<i>Fut.</i>	amandus erō		
<i>Perf.</i>	amandus fui	amandus fuerim	amandus fuisse
<i>Plup.</i>	amandus fueram	amandus fuisset	
<i>F. P.</i>	amandus fuerō		

267. Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.

Helvētiī, auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī, cōstituērunt dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs proficīscī, jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, cum prōximīs cīvitatibus pācem et amīcitiā cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse

¹ The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly. The Future Perfect is exceedingly rare.

² Or, *I deserve (ought) to be loved.*

dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmāvērunt. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēlēctus est. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad civitatēs suscepit. In eō itinere persuāsit Casticō Sēquanō, ut rēgnū in civitatē suā occupāret; itemque Dumnorigi Aeduō, ut idem cōnārētur persuāsit. Facile esse factū illis probāvit cōnātus perficere; sē suae civitātis imperiū obtentūrum esse, et suis cōpiis suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōfirmāvit. Hāc ōratiōne adducti inter sē fidem dedērunt. Ea rēs est Helvētiis per indicium ēnūtiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dīcere coēgērunt.

268. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Orgetorix was intending to secure¹ regal power in his state. 2. There were many things to be accomplished² by the Helvetii, if they wished to set out from their territory. 3. In accordance with the customs³ of the Helvetii, Orgetorix, who was regarded by them as a traitor, was forced to plead his cause in chains.⁴ 4. It was announced to the Helvetii what Orgetorix was attempting to accomplish. 5. He had said that he would secure for these chieftains regal power in their states. To accomplish his attempt was not an easy thing to do. He had persuaded the Helvetii to set out from their territory with all their forces.

LESSON XC.

IRREGULAR VERBS.—*Possum* AND *Ferō*.

269. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

289. A few verbs which have special irregularities are called, by way of preëminence, *Irregular* or *Anomalous Verbs*.

¹ See 266, 233.

² See 266, 234.

³ In accordance with, etc., use the Ablative, under 158, 413.

⁴ See 252, sentence 14.

290. Possum,¹ posse, potuī, to be able.

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.

Pres. possum, potes, potest ;

Imp. poteram ;²

Fut. poterō ;

Perf. potuī ;

Plup. potueram ;

F. P. potuerō ;

PLURAL.

possumus, potestis, possunt.

poterāmus.

poterimus.

potuimus.

potuerāmus.

potuerimus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. possim, possis, possit ;

Imp. possem ;

Perf. potuerim ;

Plup. potuissem ;

possimus, possitis, possint.

possēmus.

potuerimus.

potuissēmus.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. posse.

Perf. potuisse.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. potēns (as an adjective).

292. Ferō,³ ferre, tulī, lātum, to bear.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.

Pres. ferō, fers, fert ;

Imp. ferēbam ;⁵

Fut. feram ;

Perf. tulī ;

Plup. tuleram ;

F. P. tulerō ;

PLURAL.

ferimus, fertis,⁴ ferunt.

ferēbāmus.

ferēmus.

tulimus.

tulerāmus.

tulerimus.

¹ *Possum* is compounded of *potis*, 'able,' and *sum*, 'to be.' In *possum* observe —

1) That *potis* drops *is*, and that *t* is assimilated before *s*; *possum* for *potsum*.

2) That the Perfect is *potuī*, not *potfui*.

3) That the Infinitive *posse* and Subjunctive *possem* are shortened forms for *potesse* and *potessem*.

² Inflected regularly through the different persons : *poteram*, *poterās*, *poterat*, etc. So also in the other tenses : *potuī*, *potuisti*, etc.

³ *Ferō* has forms derived from three independent stems, seen in *ferō*, *tulī*, *lātum*.

⁴ *Fer-s*, *fer-t*, *fer-tis*, instead of *feris*, *ferit*, *feritis*.

⁵ Inflect the several tenses in full : *ferēbam*, *ferēbās*, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> feram;	ferāmus.
<i>Imp.</i> ferrem;	ferrēmus. ¹
<i>Perf.</i> tulerim;	tulerīmus.
<i>Plup.</i> tulissem;	tulissēmus.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> fer; ²	ferte.
<i>Fut.</i> fertō,	fertōte,
fertō;	feruntō.

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> ferre. ¹
<i>Perf.</i> tulisse.
<i>Fut.</i> lātūrus esse.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> ferēns.
<i>Fut.</i> lātūrus.

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i> ferendī,
<i>Dat.</i> ferendō,
<i>Acc.</i> ferendum,
<i>Abl.</i> ferendō.

SUPINE.

<i>Acc.</i> lātum,
<i>Abl.</i> lātū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

feror,	ferri,	lātus sum,	to be borne.
--------	--------	------------	--------------

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i> feror, ferris, fertur;	ferimur, feriminī, feruntur.
<i>Imp.</i> ferēbar;	ferēbāmur.
<i>Fut.</i> ferar;	ferēmur.
<i>Perf.</i> lātus sum;	lāti sumus.
<i>Plup.</i> lātus eram;	lāti erāmus.
<i>F. P.</i> lātus erō;	lāti erimus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> ferar;	ferāmur.
<i>Imp.</i> ferrer;	ferrēmur.
<i>Perf.</i> lātus sim;	lāti simus.
<i>Plup.</i> lātus essem;	lāti essēmus.

¹ *Ferrem*, etc., for *fererem*, etc.; *ferre* for *ferere* (e dropped).

² *Fer* for *fere*; *fertō*, *ferite*, *fertōte*, for *feritō*, *ferite*, *feritōte*.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> ferre;	ferimini.
<i>Fut.</i> fertor,	——
fertor;	feruntor.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> ferri.	
<i>Perf.</i> lātus esse.	<i>Perf.</i> lātus.
<i>Fut.</i> lātum iri.	<i>Ger.</i> ferendus.

LESSON XCI.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — *Possum* AND *Ferō*. — EXERCISES.

270. Vocabulary.

Arrogantia, ae, f.	arrogance.
Avāritia, ae, f.	avarice.
Clāssis, is, f.	fleet.
Coērcēō, ēre, uī, ltum,	to restrain, control.
Dolor, ōris, m.	pain. [ferre, to propose a law.
Ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum,	to bear, carry; to endure; lēgem
Juvenis, is, m.	youth, a youth.
Nihil, n. indeclinable,	nothing.
Patienter, adv.	patiently.
Praetor, ōris, m.	praetor, a Roman magistrate.
Prīvātim, adv.	privately, in a private capacity.
Sententia, ae, f.	thought, plan, opinion.
Statuō, ere, uī, ūtum,	to determine, decide.

271. Translate into English.

1. Hī cīvēs plūs possunt quam ipsī magistrātūs.¹ Liscus dicit esse nōnnūllōs, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs; hōs ā sē coērcērī nōn posse. 2. Nōnne hī juvenēs arma ferre possunt? In Galliā arma ferunt. 3. In exercitū Caesaris erant multī quī arma in Italiā tulerant. 4.

¹ After a comparative, *quam* is followed by the same construction as that which precedes it. *Magistrātūs* is here the subject of *possunt* to be supplied.

Civēs Rōmānī avāritiam praetōris ferre nōn potuērunt. 5. Ea quae ferri possunt ferenda sunt. 6. Ferimus ea quae sunt ferenda. 7. Nōne imperātor finitimīs cīvitātibus auxilium feret? Iis auxilium ferre nōn poterit. 8. Rhēnus per finēs Helvētiōrum fertur. 9. Haec lēx ferētur.

10. Bonae lēgēs ferantur. 11. Multae lēgēs lātae sunt. 12. Gallī nostrōrum mīlitum impetum sustinēre nōn potuērunt. 13. Liscus dicit sē quam diū potuerit tacuisse.¹ 14. Dolōrem patienter ferāmus. 15. Dolor patienter ferendus est. 16. Ariovistus tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur. 17. Nihil dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum quī hostēs timent. 18. Clāssis est exspectanda. Caesar statuit exspectandam esse clāssē. 19. Cum finitimīs cīvitātibus pācem factūrī sumus. 20. Hostēs suam urbem altissimō mūrō mūnītūrī sunt.

272. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We can fortify all our cities with walls and with moats. 2. If we are intending to bear² aid to our friends, our cities must be fortified.³ 3. We have decided that we must await, in this place, the arrival⁴ of our friends. 4. If you cannot endure pain, you must make peace⁴ with your enemies.

5. If you had to endure the arrogance⁴ of this general, you would not be silent. 6. They are intending to set out² for Gaul, to carry⁵ arms against the Romans. 7. Good laws should be proposed³ by those who are regarded as the friends of all the citizens. 8. To endure pain patiently is not an easy thing to do.⁶ 9. The soldiers must be warned³ not to fear the enemy. 10. In our state no citizens have greater

¹ *Tacuisse* must here be rendered, *that he has kept silent*, not *that he kept silent*.

² See 266, 233.

³ See 266, 234.

⁴ Render as if the English were, *the arrival must be awaited*, *peace must be made*, *arrogance had to be endured*.

⁵ See 119, 497.

⁶ See 248, sentence 5.

power than the magistrates. 11. All of us can carry arms in defence of ¹ our country.

LESSON XCII.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — *Volō*, *Nōlō*, AND *Mālō*. —
RULE VII.

273. Lesson from the Grammar.

293. <i>Volō</i> , ²	<i>velle</i> ,	<i>voluī</i> ,	<i>to be willing.</i>
<i>Nōlō</i> , ³	<i>nōlle</i> ,	<i>nōluī</i> ,	<i>to be unwilling.</i>
<i>Mālō</i> , ³	<i>mälle</i> ,	<i>māluī</i> ,	<i>to prefer.</i>

INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> <i>volō</i> ,	<i>nōlō</i> ,	<i>mālō</i> ,
<i>vīs</i> ,	<i>nōn vīs</i> ,	<i>māvīs</i> ,
<i>vult</i> ;	<i>nōn vult</i> ;	<i>māvult</i> ;
<i>volumus</i> ,	<i>nolumus</i> ,	<i>mālumus</i> ,
<i>vultis</i> ,	<i>nōn vultis</i> ,	<i>māvultis</i> ,
<i>volunt</i> .	<i>nōlunt</i> .	<i>mālunt</i> .
<i>Imp.</i> <i>volēbam</i> . ⁴	<i>nōlēbam</i> .	<i>mālēbam</i> .
<i>Fut.</i> <i>volam</i> .	<i>nōlam</i> .	<i>mālam</i> .
<i>Perf.</i> <i>voluī</i> .	<i>nōluī</i> .	<i>māluī</i> .
<i>Plup.</i> <i>volueram</i> .	<i>nōlueram</i> .	<i>mālueram</i> .
<i>F. P.</i> <i>voluerō</i> .	<i>nōluerō</i> .	<i>māluerō</i> .

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> <i>velim</i> . ⁵	<i>nōlim</i> .	<i>mālim</i> .
<i>Imp.</i> <i>vellem</i> . ⁶	<i>nōllem</i> .	<i>māllem</i> .
<i>Perf.</i> <i>voluerim</i> .	<i>nōluerim</i> .	<i>māluerim</i> .
<i>Plup.</i> <i>voluissēm</i> .	<i>nōluissem</i> .	<i>māluissem</i> .

¹ 'In defence of,' *prō*.

² The stem of *volō* is *vol*, with variable stem vowel, *o*, *e*, *u*.

³ *NŌLŌ* is compounded of *nē* or *nōn* and *volō*; *MĀLŌ*, of *magis* and *volō*.

⁴ Inflect the several tenses in full.

⁵ *Velim* is inflected like *sim*, and *vellem* like *essem*.

⁶ *Vellem* and *velle* are syncopated forms for *velerem*, *velere*; *e* is dropped and *r* assimilated; *velerem*, *velrem*, *vellem*; *velere*, *velre*, *velle*. So *nōllem* and *nōlle*, for *nōlerem* and *nōlere*; *māllem* and *mälle*, for *mālerem* and *mālere*.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> nōlī,	nōlīte.
<i>Fut.</i> nōlītō,	nōlītōte,
nōlītō,	nōluntō.

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> velle.	nōlle.	mālle.
<i>Perf.</i> voluisse.	nōluisse.	māluisse.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> volēns.	nōlēns.
----------------------	---------

RULE VII. — Two Accusatives — Person and Thing.

374. Some verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING, admit two Accusatives — one of the *person* and the other of the *thing* :

Mē sententiam rogāvit, he asked me MY OPINION. Cic. *Philosophia nōs rēs omnēs docuit, philosophy has taught us all THINGS.* Cic. *Auxilia rēgem ōrābant, they asked AUXILIARIES from the king.* Liv. *Pācem tē poscimus, we demand PEACE of you.* Verg. *Nōn tē cēlāvi sermōnem, I did not conceal from you THE CONVERSATION.* Cic.

1. In the PASSIVE the PERSON becomes the subject, and the Accusative of the thing is retained :

Mē sententiam rogāvit, he asked me MY OPINION. Cic. *Ego sententiam rogātus sum, I was asked MY OPINION.* Cic. *Artēs ēdoctus fuerat, he had been taught THE ARTS.* Liv.

LESSON XCIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — *Volō, Nōlō, AND Mālō.* — RULE VII. — EXERCISES.

274. *Vocabulary.*

Auctor, ōris, m.	author, advocate.
Crēdō, ere, didī, ditum,	to believe. (Followed by the Dative
Cūr, adv.	why ? [of the person believed].
Exūrō, ere, ussī, ūstum,	to burn up, burn.

Flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to demand.
Libenter, <i>adv.</i>	willingly, gladly.
Malefīcium, īi, n.	mischievousness, harm.
Mālō, mālī, mālūi,	to prefer.
Nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi,	to be unwilling, not to be willing.
Perferō, ferre, tulī, lātum,	to endure. [not to wish.
Permaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūm,	to continue to remain, to remain.
Ūnā, <i>adv.</i>	together.
Unde, <i>adv.</i>	whence, from which place.
Videor, ¹ ēri, visus sum,	to seem, appear.
Volō, velle, volūi,	to wish, to be willing.

275. Translate into English.

1. Caesar dē summīs rēbus cum Ariovistō, rēge Germānōrum, agere volēbat. 2. Num bellī fortūnam tentāre vultis? Patriam dēfendere volumus. Nōlīte dubitāre² libertātem dēfendere. 3. Galba saepius³ fortūnam tentāre nōlēbat. 4. Faciam id quod vultis. 5. Catō esse bonus⁴ volēbat. 6. Hī cīvēs vidērī bonī volunt. 7. Catō esse quam⁵ vidērī bonus mālēbat. 8. Libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. 9. Auctōrēs⁶ bellī esse nōlēbāmus. 10. Auctōrēs⁶ bellī esse nōlēmus. 11. Caesar montem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluit. 12. Cōsīdīus timōre perterritus dīcit montem, quem Caesar ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī.

13. Per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnābuntur, propterea quod aliud iter habent nūllum. 14. Imperātor nōluit cum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre. 15. Dixērunt sibi esse in animō sine ūllō malefīciō iter facere. 16. Gallī servitūtem perferre nōlēbant. In libertāte permanēre

¹ *Videor* is the passive of *videō*, 'to see,' but it is also used as a deponent verb with a special meaning.

² Literally, *be unwilling to hesitate*; render, *do not hesitate*, — a common circumlocution in prohibitions instead of *nē dubitā*, a form used in poetry only; as in English, *do not hesitate*, instead of *hesitate not*.

³ The comparative sometimes has the force of *too*.

⁴ A predicate adjective after *esse*, agreeing with *Catō*.

⁵ *Quam* after *mālō* may be rendered *rather than*.

⁶ See 59, 362.

quam servitūtem perferre mālēbant. Reliquīs cīvitatibus persuāsērunt ut in libertāte permanēre quam servitūtem perferre mālrent. 17. Jūdicem sententiam rogābunt. 18. Cotidiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat. 19. Helvētīi trēs cōpiārum partēs flūmen Ararim¹ trānsdūxerant. 20. Rhodanus inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum fluit. 21. Allobrogibus sēsē persūasūrōs esse exīstimābant utī, oppidīs suis vicīsque exūstīs,² ūnā cum iīs proficīscerentur.

276. Translate into Latin.

1. You were unwilling to ask us our opinion.³ 2. I do not understand why you wish to ask this man his opinion.³ Will you tell me why you wish to ask this man his opinion? 3. How large an army is the general willing to lead across the river?⁴ 4. He prefers to remain in camp rather than to lead his soldiers across this river,⁴ although a bridge has been built⁵ over it.

5. If the Aedui had not told Caesar that they would assist him, he would not have demanded grain of them.⁵ 6. Are you not willing to do that which I demand of you?⁴ 7. You preferred to ask his opinion,⁶ in order that he might believe you to be his friend. 8. If you should persuade us to remain, what should you wish us to do? 9. Do not wish⁷ that which cannot be done. 10. Those who are willing to try the fortune of war must not fear danger. 11. All of us⁸ ought to be willing to defend our country.

¹ A few compounds of *trāns*, *circum*, and *ad*, admit two Accusatives, dependent, the one upon the verb, the other upon the preposition.

² See Suggestion XVI., (3).

³ See 273, 374.

⁴ See 275, sentence 19.

⁵ Use the Ablative Absolute.

⁶ To ask his opinion = to ask him his opinion. 273, 374.

⁷ See 275, sentence 2.

⁸ In Latin, *nōs omnēs*, 'we all,' or simply *omnēs*, agreeing with the subject implied in the ending of the verb.

LESSON XCIV.

IRREGULAR VERBS.—*Fiō* AND *Eō*.—RULES X.
AND XXI.

277. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

294. *Fiō*, *fiērī*, *factus sum*, *to become, be made.*

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.

Pres. *fiō*, *fīs*, *fit*;

Imp. *fiēbam*;¹

Fut. *fiam*;

Perf. *factus sum*;

Plup. *factus eram*;

F. P. *factus erō*;

PLURAL.

fīmus, *fītis*, *fīunt*.

fiēbāmus.

fiēmus.

factī sumus.

factī erāmus.

factī erimur.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. *fiam*;

Imp. *fierem*;

Perf. *factus sim*;

Plup. *factus essem*;

fīāmus.

fiērēmus.

factī sīmus.

factī essēmus.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. *fī*;

fīte.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. *fiērī*.

Perf. *factus esse*.

Fut. *factum irī*.

PARTICIPLE.

Perf. *factus*.

Ger. *faciendus*.

295. *Eō*, *īre*, *ivī*, *itum*, *to go.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres. *eō*, *īs*, *it*;

Imp. *ibam*;¹

Fut. *ibō*;

Perf. *ivī*;

Plup. *iveram*;

F. P. *iverō*;

īmus, *ītis*, *eunt*.

ibāmus.

ibimus.

ivimus.

īverāmus.

īverīnus.

¹ Inflect the several tenses in full.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> eam;	eāmus.
<i>Imp.</i> irem;	irēmus.
<i>Perf.</i> iверim;	iverīmus.
<i>Plup.</i> iвисsem;	iвissēmus.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> ī;	īte.
<i>Fut.</i> itō,	itōte,
itō;	euntō.

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> ire.
<i>Perf.</i> iвisse.
<i>Fut.</i> itūrus esse.

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> iēns,	<i>Gen.</i> euntis.
<i>Fut.</i> itūrus.	

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i> eundi,
<i>Dat.</i> eundō,
<i>Acc.</i> eundum,
<i>Abl.</i> eundō.

SUPINE.

<i>Acc.</i> itum,
<i>Abl.</i> itū.

RULE X. — Accusative of Limit.

380. The PLACE TO WHICH is designated by the Accusative:¹

I. Generally with a preposition — **ad** or **in**:

Legiōnēs ad urbem addūcit, he is leading the legions TO or TOWARD THE CITY. Cic. *In Asiam redit, he returns INTO ASIA.* Nep.

II. In names of towns without a preposition:

Nūntius Rōmam redit, the messenger returns TO ROME. Liv. *Fūgit Tarquiniōs, he fled TO TARQUINII.* Cic.

NOTE. — Verbs meaning *to collect, to come together, etc.*, — *conveniō, cōgō, convocō, etc.* — are usually treated as verbs of *motion*, and thus take the Accusative, generally with a preposition; but verbs meaning *to place* — *locō, collocō, pōnō, etc.*, — are usually treated as verbs of *rest*, and thus take the Ablative (185, 425), generally with a preposition:

¹ Originally the *place to which* was uniformly designated by the Accusative *without* a preposition. Names of towns have retained the original construction, while most other names of places have assumed a preposition.

Ūnum in locum convenīre, to meet IN one PLACE. Caes. In alterius manū vitam pōnere, to place one's life IN THE HAND of another. Cic.

1. In the NAMES OF TOWNS the *Accusative* with *ad* occurs — (1) to denote *to, toward, in the direction of, into the vicinity of*, and (2) in contrast with *ā* or *ab* :

Ad Zamam pervēnit, he came TO THE VICINITY OF ZAMA. Sall. A Diāniō ad Sinōpēn, from Dianium TO SINOPE. Cic.

2. Like NAMES OF TOWNS are used —

1) The *Accusatives domum, domōs, rūs* :

Domum reductus est, He was conducted HOME. Cic. Domōs abducti, led TO THEIR HOMES. Liv. Rūs evolāre, to hasten INTO THE COUNTRY. Cic.

RULE XXI. — Place from which.

412. The PLACE FROM WHICH is denoted by the *Ablative* :

I. Generally *with a preposition* — *ā, ab, dē, or ex* :

Ab urbe proficiscitur, he sets out FROM THE CITY. Caes. Dē forō, from the forum. Cic. Ex Africā, from (out of) Africa. Liv.

II. In NAMES OF TOWNS *without a preposition* :¹

Platōnem Athēnīs arcēssivit, he summoned Plato FROM ATHENS. Nep. Fūgit Corinthō, he fled from Corinth. Cic.

1. Many names of *islands*, and the *Ablatives, domō and rūre*, are used like names of towns :

Domō profūgit, he fled FROM HOME. Cic. Dēlō proficiscitur, he proceeds FROM DELOS. Cic.

LESSON XCV.

IRREGULAR VERBS. — *Fiō* AND *Eō*. — RULES X. AND XXI. — EXERCISES.

278. Vocabulary.

Caedēs, is, <i>f.</i>	slaughter.
Cibāria, ōrum, <i>n. pl.</i>	food, provisions.
Combūrō, ere, <i>bussī, būstum</i> ,	to burn up, burn.
Efferō, ferre, <i>extulī, ēlātum</i> ,	to carry forth.

¹ This was the original construction for all places alike.

Ēgredior, ī, gressus sum,	to go out, go forth, depart.
Eō, ire, ivi or ii, itum,	to go.
Equester, tris, tre,	equestrian; equestre proelium, a cavalry engagement.
Exeō, ire, ii, itum, ¹	to go out, go forth, depart.
Fiō, fieri, factus sum,	to be made; to happen.
Lutetia, ae, f.	Lutetia, a city in Gaul, now Paris.
Melodūnum, ī, n.	Melodunum, a town of the Senones.
Narbō, ōnis, m.	Narbo, a town in southern Gaul.
Nihilum, ī, n.	nothing.
Patior, ī, passus sum,	to suffer, permit.
Peditātus, ūs, m.	infantry.
Plānitiēs, ēi, f.	plain.
Praeterquam, adv.	except.
Tolōsa, ae, f.	Tolosa, a town in southern Gaul.
Trānseō, ire, ii, ¹ itum,	to go over, cross.
Vigilia, ae, f.	watch. ²

279. Translate into English.

1. Helvētīi ē finibus suis exībant. Ē finibus suis exīre cōnābantur. Post Orgetorigis mortem nihilō³ minus ē finibus suis exīre cōnābantur. 2. Id quod cōstituērunt facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. 3. Haec omnia contrā lēgem facta sunt. 4. Illud quod faciendum primum fuit factum est. 5. Id quod vultis nullō modō fierī potest. 6. Nōlīte id velle, quod fierī nōn potest. 7. Caesar suum equitātum contrā hostem ire jubet. 8. Omnēs legiōnēs contrā hostem ībant. 9. Fit equestre proelium in plānitiē; Caesar legiōnēs prō castris cōstituit, nē qua irruptiō ab hostium peditātū fiat; hostēs fugae sēsē mandant; fit māgna caedēs; nōnnūllī fossam trānsīre cōnantur.

10. Divitiacus auxiliī rogandī causā Rōmam⁴ ad senātum profectus est. 11. Labiēnus cum quattuor legiōnibus Lu-

¹ The compounds of *eō* take the contracted form *ii* in the perfect.

² Among the Romans, the night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four *watches* of equal length.

³ Ablative of Difference: *less by nothing*. Render, *none the less*.

⁴ See 277, 380.

tetiam proficiscitur. 12. Ē castris tertiā vigiliā ēgressus Melodūnum vēnit. 13. Gallī per suōs finēs nōs ire patientur. 14. Imperātōrem dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciāmus. 15. Ubi dē hīs rēbus certiōrēs factī sunt, privāta aedificia incendērunt. 16. Lēgātōs, nōbilissimōs civitātis, ad rēgem misērunt. 17. Frūmentum omne, praeterquam¹ quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combussērunt. 18. Suēbī, quī ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertērunt. 19. Dux Rōmānus multōs virōs fortēs Tolōsā et Narbōne² ēvocāvit. 20. Helvētīi trium mēnsium cibāria sibi quemque domō² efferre jussērunt.

280. Translate into Latin.

1. Orgetorix persuaded the Helvetii to go forth from their territory. 2. We shall be informed what they carried from home with them. 3. We shall go to Rome, and remain there the whole winter. 4. We shall send you letters often, that you may be informed in what direction we are going.³ We have heard that you say that you have not been informed by us in what direction we are going. Do you know in what direction we have gone?

5. Caesar was intending to go from Italy to Geneva with five legions. 6. Having accomplished⁴ this, Caesar orders the Helvetii to return to their homes. 7. Do you prefer to go home rather than to remain at Rome?⁵ 8. The Helvetii thought that they should persuade the Sequani to suffer them to go through their territory. 9. Caesar thought that peace should not be made with the Helvetii, unless they returned home. 10. What did the Helvetii attempt to do after the death of Orgetorix? They attempted to persuade their neighbors to burn all their towns.

¹ The construction with *praeterquam* is elliptical; we may supply after it *id frūmentum nōn combussērunt*. Of course the ellipsis need not be supplied in translation.

² See 277, 412.

³ What mood must be used in an Indirect Question?

⁴ Use the Ablative Absolute.

⁵ See 185, 425.

LESSON XCVI.

IMPERSONAL VERBS. — REVIEW OF RULE XLIII. —
RULE XIII.281. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

298. Impersonal Verbs correspond to the English Impersonal with *it*: *licet*, it is lawful; *oportet*, it behooves.¹ They are conjugated like other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular of the Indicative and Subjunctive, and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive:

Decet, decuit, *it becomes.*

Oportet, oportuit, *it behooves.*

Miseret, miseritum est, *it excites pity.*² *Paenitet*, paenituit, *it causes regret.*²

300. Generally Impersonal are several verbs which designate the changes of the weather, or the operations of nature:

Fulminat, it lightens; *grandinat*, it hails; *lucēscit*, it grows light; *pluit*, it rains; *rōrat*, dew falls; *tonat*, it thunders.

301. Many other verbs are often used impersonally:

Accidit, it happens; *appāret*, it appears; *cōstat*, it is evident; *contigit*, it happens; *dēlectat*, it delights; *dolet*, it grieves; *interest*, it concerns; *jurat*, it delights; *patet*, it is plain; *placet*, it pleases; *praestat*, it is better; *rēfert*, it concerns.

1. In the PASSIVE VOICE intransitive verbs can be used only impersonally. The participle is then neuter:

Mihī crēditur, it is credited to me, I am believed; *tibi crēditur*, you are believed; *crēditum est*, it was believed; *certātur*, it is contended; *curritur*, there is running, people run; *pūgnātur*, it is fought, they, we, etc., fight; *vivitur*, we, you, they live.

2. The PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION (266, 234) is often used impersonally. The participle is then neuter:

Mihī scribendum est, I must write; *tibi scribendum est*, you must write; *illi scribendum est*, he must write.

¹ The subject is generally an infinitive or clause, but may be a noun or pronoun denoting a *thing*, but not a *person*: *hōc fieri oportet*, that this should be done is necessary.

² *Mē miseret*, I pity; *mē paenitet*, I repent.

RULE XIII.—Two Datives—To which and For which.

390. Two Datives — the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT OR END FOR WHICH — occur with a few verbs:

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE verbs:

Malō est hominibus avāritia, *avarice is AN EVIL TO MEN* (literally *is TO MEN FOR AN EVIL*). Cic. *Est mihi cūrae*, *it is A CARE TO ME*. Cic. *Domus dēdecori dominō fit*, *the house becomes A DISGRACE TO ITS OWNER*. Cic. *Vēnit Atticis auxiliō*, *he came to the assistance of the Athenians*. Nep. *Hōc illi tribuēbātur ignāviae*, *this was imputed to him as cowardice (for cowardice)*. Cic. *Eis subsidiō missus est*, *he was sent to them as aid*. Nep.

II. With TRANSITIVE verbs in connection with the ACCUSATIVE:

Quinque cohortēs castris praesidiō reliquit, *he left five cohorts FOR THE DEFENCE OF THE CAMP* (literally *TO THE CAMP FOR A DEFENCE*). Caes. *Periclēs agrōs suōs donō rēi publicae dedit*, *Pericles gave his lands to the republic as a present* (literally, *for a present*). Just.

282. Vocabulary.

Accidō, ere, <i>l</i> ,	<i>to fall to, befall; accidit, it happens,</i>
Athēnae, ārum, <i>f. pl.</i>	<i>Athens.</i> [comes to pass.
Athēniēnsis, is, <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>an Athenian.</i>
Atticus, ī, <i>m.</i>	<i>Atticus, a Roman name.</i>
Cōiciō, ¹ ere, cōjēcī, jectum,	<i>to cast, hurl, throw.</i>
Difficilis, e,	<i>difficult.</i>
Impedimentum, ī, <i>n.</i>	<i>hinderance, embarrassment; impedi-</i>
	<i>menta, pl., hinderances; baggage</i>
	<i>(of an army).</i> [against.
Īnferō, ferre, intuli, illātum,	<i>to bear into, bear against, wage</i>
Īnstō, āre, stitī,	<i>to be near, be at hand.</i>
Lūna, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>moon.</i>
Mētior, īri, mēsus sum,	<i>to measure, allot.</i>
Multō, ² adv.	<i>much, far.</i>
Novissimus, a, um, <i>sup. of</i>	
novus,	<i>newest; novissimum āgmen, the rear.</i>
Oportet, ēre, uit,	<i>it behooves, is proper; one ought.</i>

¹ Pronounced as if spelled cōjiciō.

² Originally an Ablative of Difference; literally, *by much*.

Ōrnāmentum, i, n.	ornament, honor.
Plēnus, a, um,	full.
Subsidium, ii, n.	aid, support, reënforcement.
Tēlum, i, n.	dart; weapon.
Titus, i, m.	Titus, a Roman name.

283. *Translate into English.*

1. Caesarī nūntiātum est, equitēs Ariovistī lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs cōicere. 2. Helvētiīs est in animō per agrum Aeduōrum iter facere. Caesarī nūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Aeduōrum iter facere. 3. Germānōs trāns Rhēnum incolere dictum est. 4. Eā nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna. 5. Helvētiī undique locī nātūrā continēbantur. Hāc rē fīēbat ut minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent. 6. Frūmentum militibus mētīrī oportet. Diēs instat, quō diē¹ frūmentum militibus mētīrī oportēbit. 7. Ea rēs Gallīs² māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedimentō.² 8. Legiōnēs duae in novissimō āgmine praesidiō² impedimentīs² erant.

9. Erant itinera duo, quibus Helvētiī domō exīre possent; ūnum³ angustum et difficile; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat; alterum,³ multō facilius. 10. Atticus Athēnīs ita vīxit, ut Athēniēnsibus esset cārissimus. 11. Amīcitia populī Rōmānī mihī² ōrnāmentō² est. 12. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī mihī² ōrnāmentō² et praesidiō² esse oportet. 13. Ariovistus dīxit amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi² ōrnāmentō² et praesidiō² esse oportere. 14. Lēgātīs respondeāmus nōs diem ad dēliberandum sūmptūrōs esse. 15. Titus Labiēnus decimam legiōnem subsidiō² nostrīs² mīsīt. 16. Gallī oppidum Noviodūnum, nē cui⁴ esset ūsuī² Rōmānīs,² incendērunt.

¹ *Quō* is here an adjective agreeing with *diē*. The antecedent is usually expressed but once; here *diē* may be omitted in rendering.

² See 281, 300.

³ Supply *erat*.

⁴ *Cui* is here the indefinite pronoun, agreeing with *ūsuī*.

284. *Translate into Latin.*

1. In the towns of the Gauls were many things which were of great use to the Romans.¹ 2. The friendship of the general ought to be a safeguard to us.¹ 3. We should all live in such a way, as not to be a grief to our friends.¹ 4. It often happens, that what ought to be done is not easy to do. 5. It is our intention to go to Geneva and to Rome² this summer.

6. The friendship of the good is always an honor to us.¹ 7. It was announced to Caesar that the Helvetii had set out from their territory, and that they were attempting to march through the province. 8. It is stated by Caesar that the Helvetii were the bravest of the Gauls. 9. It was the intention of Orgetorix to obtain possession of the sovereignty³ of all Gaul. 10. Let soldiers remain, to be a garrison to the city. 11. The horsemen of Ariovistus hurled stones and darts upon the Romans. 12. Your friendship ought to be a safeguard to me.¹

LESSON XCVII.

IMPERSONAL VERBS. — RULE XX.

285. *Lesson from the Grammar.***RULE XX. — Accusative and Genitive.**

409. The ACCUSATIVE of the PERSON and the GENITIVE of the THING are used with a few transitive verbs:

I. With verbs of reminding, admonishing :

Tē amicitiae commonefacit, he reminds you OF FRIENDSHIP. Cic. *Militēs necessitātis monet, he reminds the soldiers of the necessity.* Ter.

II. With verbs of accusing, convicting, acquitting :

Virōs sceleris arguis, you accuse men OF CRIME. Cic. *Levitātis eum convincere, to convict him of levity.* Cic. *Absolvere injūriæ eum, to acquit him of injustice.* Cic.

¹ See 281, 390.² See 277, 380.³ See 258, 421.

III. With *miseret*, *paenitet*, *pudet*, *taedet*, and *piget* :

Eōrum nōs *miseret*, *we pity THEM* (It moves our pity OF THEM).

Cic. *Cōsiliū* mē *paenitet*, *I repent of my purpose*. Cic. *Mē stultitiæ* meæ *pudet*, *I am ashamed of my folly*. Cic.

NOTE 1. — The *Genitive of the Thing* designates, with verbs of *reminding*, etc., that to which the attention is called; with verbs of *accusing*, etc., the crime, charge; and with *miseret*, *paenitet*, etc., the object which produces the feeling; see examples.

NOTE 2. — The personal verbs included under this rule retain the *Genitive in the Passive* :

Accūsātus est prōditionis, *he was accused OF TREASON*. Nep.

286. Vocabulary.

<i>Ācriter</i> , <i>adv.</i>	<i>sharply, severely.</i>
<i>Anceps</i> , <i>capitis</i> ,	<i>double, twofold; undecided.</i>
<i>Beneficium</i> , <i>ii, n.</i>	<i>benefit, favor.</i>
<i>Celeritās</i> , <i>ātis, f.</i>	<i>celerity, speed.</i>
<i>Commūnis</i> , <i>e</i> ,	<i>common; commūnis rēs, the com-</i>
<i>Incrēdibilis</i> , <i>e</i> ,	<i>incredible. * [mon interest.</i>
<i>Ineō</i> , <i>ire, ii, itum</i> ,	<i>to go into, enter upon, begin, under-</i>
<i>Īnsimulō</i> , <i>āre, āvi, ātum</i> ,	<i>to accuse. [take.</i>
<i>Lēnitās</i> , <i>ātis, f.</i>	<i>smoothness, gentleness.</i>
<i>Licet</i> , <i>ēre, ult</i> ,	<i>it is lawful, is permitted; one may.</i>
<i>Necesse</i> , ¹	<i>necessary.</i>
<i>Paenitet</i> , <i>ēre, ult</i> ,	<i>it causes regret; mē paenitet, I</i>
<i>Petō</i> , <i>ere, ivi or ii, itum</i> ,	<i>to seek, request, ask. [repent.</i>
<i>Prōditiō</i> , <i>ōnis, f.</i>	<i>treason.</i>
<i>Prōsequor</i> , <i>i, secūtus sum</i> ,	<i>to follow up, pursue.</i>
<i>Prōspiciō</i> , <i>ere, spēxi, spectrum</i> ,	<i>to look forward; to look out for.</i>
	(In the latter sense followed by the Dative.)

287. Translate into English.

1. *Ancipitī proeliō diū pūgnātum est.*² *Ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum fortiter pūgnātum est. Ad multam noctem etiam*

¹ *Necesse* is an adjective used only in the Nominative and Accusative Neuter Singular.

² Observe in this sentence and the others in this Lesson, that an impersonal verb can not be rendered literally. Thus, *diū pūgnātum est* would become in English, *a long battle was fought, the fighting went on for a long time.*

ad impedimenta pugnatum est. 2. Proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendebātur. 3. Caesar Titum Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus hostēs prōsequi jussit: ad novissimum agmen ventum est. Ei ad quōs ventum erat fortiter impetum Rōmānōrum sustinuerunt. 4. Rēi frūmentāriae prōspiciendum est. 5. Caesar rēi frūmentāriae prōspiciendum esse existimābat. 6. Dē commūnī rē in colloquiō dicendum est. 7. Vercingetorix prōditiōnis insimulātus est. 8. “Haec,” dixit Vercingetorix, “ā mē beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis insimulātis.”

9. Flūmen est Arar, quod in Rhodanum influit incredibili lēnitāte, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat iudicārī nōn possit. Caesar per explorātōrēs certior factus est, trēs jam cōpiarum partēs Helvētiōs id flūmen trānsdūxisse. 10. Gallōs hūjus cōsiliī paenitēbat. 11. Gallī saepe cōsilia ineunt quōrum cōs paenitet. 12. Saepe cōsilia inīmus quōrum nōs paenitēre necesse est. 13. Nōbis concilium in diem certam¹ indicere licet. 14. Vōbis concilium in diem certam indicere liceat. 15. Gallī petiērunt utī sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere licēret. 16. Militēs cā² celeritāte iērunt ut hostēs impetum legiōnum sustinēre nōn possent.

288. Translate into Latin.

1. The town was reached³ by us an hour before sunset. 2. A long and severe battle took place³ near the camp. 3. I have to speak³ of things which you ought to wish to hear. 4. It should be stated³ that the Gauls already repented of their plan. 5. Caesar told the Gauls that they might³ appoint a council.

6. You cannot bring the war to an end, but you may³ repent of your plans. 7. It cannot be ascertained what the enemy intend to do. 8. It was necessary to provide³ for

¹ Diēs, usually masculine, is feminine when it signifies a day fixed or appointed.

² Literally, that; render, such.

³ In all these cases express the thought impersonally in Latin.

the protection of the camp. 9. Orgetorix (when) accused of treason, was compelled to plead his cause in chains. 10. Crimes should be repented of. 11. The rear of the enemy was reached, and a severe battle took place. 12. Fighting will go on from midday to sunset. 13. As so many have been slain, we may judge how severe a battle has been fought.

LESSON XCVIII.

REVIEW OF RULES LIII., LIV., AND LV. — EXERCISE IN READING AT SIGHT.

289. *Read at Sight, examine carefully, and translate into English.*

Post Orgetorigis mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōstituerant facere cōnābantur, ut ē finibus suis¹ exīrent. Ubi sē¹ ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, vicōs, prīvāta aedificia incendērunt; frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combussērunt, ut parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula essent; trium mēnsium cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre jussērunt. Persuāsērunt finitimīs utī, oppidis suis vicisque exūstis, ūnā cum iis proficēscerentur.

Erant itinera duo, quibus ē finibus suis exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Jūram et flūmen Rhodanum, mōns autem altissimus impendēbat; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius. Allobrogibus sēsē persuāsūrōs esse existimābant, ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Ob eas causās per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnātī sunt.

Caesar, his rēbus audītis, mātūrāvit ab urbe proficēsci et māximīs itineribus in Galliam contendit. Ubi dē ejus ad-

¹ The pupil should exercise especial care in this Exercise to determine the *antecedents* of the pronouns which occur in it, particularly of *suis* and *sui*.

ventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eūm mīsērunt, quī dīcerent, sibi esse in animō iter per prōvinciam facere. Caesar lēgātīs respondit, diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmp-tūrum.

290. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I shall take time for deliberation. 2. I wish to inform you of my arrival. 3. I send you a messenger to inform you of my arrival. 4. We intend to march through your country without (doing) any harm. 5. I intend to march through the province, because I have no other route. 6. Ambassadors were sent to Caesar to say what the Helvetii intended to do.

7. After hearing the words¹ of our friends, we shall set out from this city, and hasten home. 8. We attempted to set out before. 9. I wish you to try to tell me what you intend to do.² 10. Do you think that you will persuade me to tell you what I intended to do?³ 11. Burn your towns and villages, and set out together with us. 12. You will never persuade us to set fire to our towns. 13. Let us always be prepared for danger. 14. We have burned all our grain, except what we carried with us. 15. Let each one take with him from home provisions for six months. 16. How many routes are there by which we can go?

LESSON XCIX.

GERUNDS, GERUNDIVES, AND PARTICIPLES. — REVIEW OF RULES LIX., LX., AND XXXII.

291. *Lesson from the Grammar.*

I. GERUNDS.

541. The GERUND is a verbal noun which shares so largely the character of a verb that it governs oblique cases, and takes adverbial modifiers:

¹ Use the Ablative Absolute.

² Observe that this is an Indirect Question.

*Jūs vocandī*¹ *senātum*, the right of summoning the senate. Liv.
*Beātē vivendī*¹ *cupiditās*, the desire of living happily. Cic.

542. The GERUND has four cases — the *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, and *Ablative* — used in general like the same cases of nouns. Thus —

I. The GENITIVE OF THE GERUND is used with nouns and adjectives:

Ars vivendī, the art of living. Cic. *Studiōsus erat audiendī*, he was desirous of hearing. Nep. *Cupidus tē audiendī*, desirous of hearing you. Cic. *Artem vērā ac falsā dijūdicandī*, the art of distinguishing true things from false. Cic.

II. The DATIVE OF THE GERUND is used with a few verbs and adjectives which regularly govern the Dative:

Cum solvendō nōn essent, since they were not able to pay. Cic.
Aqua utilis est bibendō, water is useful for drinking. Plin.

III. The ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND is used after a few prepositions:²

Ad discendum prōpēnsi sumus, we are inclined to learn (to learning). Cic. *Inter lūdendum*, in or during play. Quint.

IV. The ABLATIVE OF THE GERUND is used (1) as *Ablative of Means*, and (2) with *prepositions*:

Mēns discendō alitur, the mind is nourished by learning. Cic. *Salūtem hominibus dandō*, by giving safety to men. Cic. *Virtūtēs cernuntur in agendō*, virtues are seen in action. Cic. *Dēterrere ā scribendo*, to deter from writing. Cic.

II. GERUNDIVES.

543. The GERUNDIVE, like other participles, agrees with nouns and pronouns:

Inita sunt cōsilia urbis dēlendae, plans have been formed for destroying the city (of the city to be destroyed). Cic. *Numa sacerdotibus creandis animum adjēcit*, Numa gave his attention to the appointment of priests. Liv.

¹ *Vocandī* as a Genitive is governed by *jūs*, and yet it governs the Accusative *senātum*; *vivendī* is governed by *cupiditās*, and yet it takes the adverbial modifier *beātē*.

² Most frequently after *ad*; sometimes after *inter* and *ob*; very rarely after *ante*, *circā*, and *in*.

544. The GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION may be used —

1. In place of a *Gerund* with a direct object. It then takes the case of the *Gerund* whose place it supplies:

Libidō ejus videndi (= *libidō eum videndi*), *the desire of seeing him* (literally, *of him to be seen*). Cic. *Platōnis audiendi* (= *Platōnem audiendi*) *studiosus*, *fond of hearing Plato*. Cic. *Legendis oratoribus* (= *legendō oratōrēs*), *by reading the orators*. Cic.

2. In the *Dative* and in the *Ablative* with a preposition :

Locum oppidō condendō cēperunt, *they selected a place for founding a city*. Liv. *Tempora demetendis fructibus accommodata*, *seasons suitable for gathering fruits*. Cic. *Brūtus in liberandā patriā est interfectus*, *Brutus was slain in liberating his country*. Cic.

III. PARTICIPLES.

548. The PARTICIPLE is a verbal adjective which governs the same cases as the verb :

Animus se nōn vidēs alia cernit, *the mind, though it does not see itself* (literally, *not seeing itself*), *discerns other things*. Cic.

549. PARTICIPLES are often used —

1. To denote, TIME, CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS :

Platō scribēs mortuus est, *Plato died while writing*. Cic. *Itūrī in proelium canunt*, *they sing when about to go into battle*. Tac. *Sol oriēs diem cōficit*, *the sun by its rising causes the day*. Cic. *Militēs renūntiant se perfidiam veritōs revertisse*, *the soldiers report that they returned because they feared perfidy* (having feared). Caes.

2. To denote CONDITION or CONCESSION :

Mendāci homini nē vērū quidem dicentī crēdere nōn solēmus, *we are not wont to believe a liar, even if he speaks the truth*. Cic. *Scripta tua jam diū exspectāns, nōn audeō tamen flāgitāre*, *though I have been long expecting your work, yet I do not dare to ask for it*. Cic.

3. To denote PURPOSE :

Perseus rediit, bellī cāsū tentātūrus, *Perseus returned to try* (about to try) *the fortune of war*. Liv. *Attribuit nōs trucidandōs Cethēgo*, *he assigned us to Cethegus to slaughter*. Cic.

4. To supply the place of RELATIVE CLAUSES :

Omnēs aliud agentēs aliud simulantēs, improbi sunt, *all who do one thing and pretend another are dishonest*. Cic.

5. To supply the place of PRINCIPAL CLAUSES:

Classem devictam cepit, *he conquered and took the fleet* (took the fleet conquered). Nep.

550. The TENSES OF THE PARTICIPLE — *Present, Perfect, and Future* — denote only *relative* time. They accordingly represent the time respectively as *present, past, and future* relatively to that of the principal verb:

Oculus se non videns alia cernit, *the eye, though it does not see itself* (not seeing itself), *discerns other things*. Cic. Platō scribens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing*. Cic. Uva maturata dulcescit, *the grape, when it has ripened* (having ripened), *becomes sweet*. Cic. Sapiens bona semper placitura laudat, *the wise man praises blessings which will always please* (being about to please). Sen.

LESSON C.

GERUNDS, GERUNDIVES, AND PARTICIPLES. — REVIEW
OF RULES LIX., LX., XXXII. — EXERCISES.

292. Vocabulary.

Accipio, ere, cepi, ceptum,	<i>to receive.</i>
Aggredior, i, gressus sum,	<i>to attack.</i>
Ardeo, ere, arsi, arsum,	<i>to burn, to be ardent, be eager.</i>
Concido, ere, idi, cisum,	<i>to fall.</i>
Concido, ere, idi, cisum,	<i>to cut down, destroy, slay.</i>
Consido, ere, sedi, sessum,	<i>to settle, post one's self, encamp.</i>
Crudeliter, adv.	<i>cruelly.</i>
Depopulo, ari, atus sum,	<i>to ravage, lay waste.</i>
Excrucio, are, avi, atum,	<i>to torture.</i>
Frumentatio, onis, f.	<i>foraging, provisioning.</i>
Gratulor, ari, atus sum,	<i>to congratulate; to thank. (Followed by the Dative.)</i>
Initium, ii, n.	<i>beginning.</i>
Insequor, i, secutus sum,	<i>to pursue, follow.</i>
Moror, ari, atus sum,	<i>to delay, tarry.</i>
Perfacilis, e,	<i>very easy.</i>
Pervenio, ire, veni, ventum,	<i>to arrive, come.</i>
Sepultura, ae, f.	<i>burial, interment.</i>

Subveniō, ire, vēnī, ventum, *to come to the help of, succor, aid.*
(Followed by the Dative.)

Triduum, ī, n. *space of three days, three days.*

Ulcīscor, ī, ultus sum, *to avenge one's self on, punish; to take vengeance.*

293. Translate into English.

1. Divitiacus auxiliī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus est. 2. Animī Rōmānōrum ad ulcīscendum ārdēbant. 3. Titūrius in illō locō hiemandī causā cōnsēderat. 4. Reperiēbat in quaerendō Caesar initium fugae factum esse ā Dumnorige. 5. Caesar equitātum ad eam regiōnem dēpopulandam mittit. 6. Fīnitimī lēgātōs ad Aeduōs mittunt subsidium rogātum. 7. Prīncipēs Aeduōrum ad Caesarem veniunt ōrātum ut cīvitātī subveniat. 8. Tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī,¹ prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum² convēnērunt.

9. Caesar ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. 10. Caesar Helvētiōs aggressus³ māgnam eōrum partem concēdit. 11. Gallī dicunt perfacile esse factū frūmentātiōnibus Rōmānōs prohibēre. 12. Centuriō, multīs vulneribus acceptīs,⁴ pūgnāns⁵ concidit. 13. Legiō decima Gallōs īnsequentēs⁶ tardāvit. 14. Cīvēs Rōmānōs crūdēliter excruciatōs⁷ interfēcērunt. 15. Caesar, hōc proeliō factō, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrat. 16. Rōmānī, propter sepultūram occīsōrum trīduum morātī, hostēs sequī nōn potuerant.

294. Translate into Latin.

1. One legion of Caesar's army retarded for three hours the enemy (who were) pursuing. 2. After a beginning of

¹ Literally, 'ambassadors of Gaul'; render, 'FROM Gaul.'

² Supply in English the object, *him*.

³ See Suggestion XIII., 5.

⁴ See Suggestion XVI., (3).

⁵ In English the present participle in such a connection is usually accompanied by *while*.

⁶ See Suggestion XIII., 2.

flight had been made¹ by one division of the enemy, the rest were easily conquered. 3. The Romans defeated the enemy (who were) not informed of their approach. 4. Let us send to our friends, to ask aid against those who have come for the purpose of ravaging our lands. 5. To conquer the brave and the free is not an easy thing to do.

6. For the sake of crossing the river more easily, Caesar had a bridge built over the Rhine. 7. Our soldiers ought to be prepared for setting out from camp, and for fighting with the enemy. 8. In asking aid, the Aedui said that they were eager to take vengeance.² 9. For defending the bridge which had been made, Caesar stationed soldiers on each bank of the river. 10. The Gallic chieftains said to Caesar: "We have been sent to you by our states to congratulate you."³

¹ Use the Ablative Absolute.

² Render, 'for (*ad*) taking vengeance.'

³ See 166, 546.

NARRATIVES FROM CAESAR.

THE EMIGRATION OF THE HELVETII, THEIR DEFEAT
BY THE ROMANS, AND THEIR RETURN TO THEIR
COUNTRY.¹

The Inhabitants of Gaul. The Valor of the Helvetii.

I. Gallia est divisa in partēs trēs, quarum² ūnam³ incolunt
Belgae, aliam³ Aquitānī,⁴ tertiam³ Gallī.⁴ Helvētīī reliquōs
Gallōs virtūte⁵ praeccēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs⁶ cum
Germānīs contendunt.

Orgetorix and His Project of Emigration.

II. Apud Helvētiōs nōbilissimus et dītissimus fuit Orge-
torix. Is,⁷ Messallā et Pisōne cōsulibus,⁸ civitātī⁹ persuāsit
ut dē finibus suis exirent.¹⁰ Helvētīī continentur ūnā ex
parte¹¹ flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum
Helvētium ā Germānīs dividit; alterā ex parte monte Jūrā

¹ From Caesar's "Commentaries on the Gallic War," I., 1-29. For
Suggestions on Exercises in Latin Composition, see page 300.

² Partitive Genitive. 28, 397. ³ Supply *partem* as object of *incolunt*.

⁴ Subject of *incolunt*. Observe that the term *Gallī* is used in two
senses. It properly denotes the inhabitants of all Gaul, but it is often
used, as in this instance, to designate the inhabitants of the third division
of the country, i.e. of Celtic Gaul. ⁵ 231, 424. ⁶ 78, 420.

⁷ *Is* would not be expressed unless it were emphatic, as in English, 'it
was he who,' etc., i.e. it was Orgetorix who originated the project of
emigration. ⁸ 240, 431. This was in the year 61 B. C.

⁹ 54, 384. *Civitātī* is here used as a collective noun: 'the citizens;'
observe that this is shown by the number of *exirent*.

¹⁰ 119, 497; 491.

¹¹ 'On one side.'

quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā¹ lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō quī prōvinciam ab Helvētiīs dividit. His rēbus² fiēbat ut minus facile finitimīs³ bellum inferre possent.⁴ Prō⁵ multitudīne autem hominum et prō glōriā fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur.

The Helvetii Prepare to Leave their Country.

III. His rēbus adductī et auctōritāte⁶ Orgetorigis⁷ permōtī, cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiēscendum pertinērent⁸ comparāre. Ubi jam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt,⁹ oppida sua omnia, vicōs, reliquaque privāta aedificia incendērunt; frūmentum omne, praeterquam¹⁰ quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combussērunt, ut domum reditiōnis spē sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda¹¹ essent.¹²

The Route Selected and the Day Appointed.

IV. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus⁶ domō¹³ exīre possent; ūnum¹⁴ per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, alterum per prōvinciam, multō facilius, quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllis locīs¹⁵ vadō⁶ trānsitur.¹⁶ Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est prōximū-

¹ Supply *ex parte*.

² 158, 413.

³ 54, 384.

⁴ 123, 500.

⁵ *Prō*, 'in proportion to.'

⁶ 78, 420.

⁷ The secret purpose of Orgetorix was to possess himself of sovereign power among the Helvetii, and then to use this valiant and warlike nation, with the aid of a few other tribes, whose chieftains he had won to his purposes, in bringing the whole of Gaul under his control. His treasonable plot was detected; but just before the time appointed for his trial by the Helvetian authorities, he suddenly died, as it was suspected, by his own hand. The Helvetians did not, however, give up their project of emigration.

⁸ *Quae . . . pertinērent*, 'which would be requisite for their departure.' 123, 503.

⁹ 258, 231.

¹⁰ See 279, sentence 17.

¹¹ 291, 544.

¹² 119, 497.

¹³ 277, 412.

¹⁴ *Ūnum*, in apposition with *itinera*. 28, 363.

¹⁵ 185, 423, 2.

¹⁶ *Vadō trānsitur*, 'is crossed by means of a ford,' i.e. 'is fordable.'

que Helvëtiôrum finibus¹ Genâva. Ex eô oppidô pōns ad Helvëtiôs pertinet.² Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs³ existimābant vel vī coāctūrōs,⁴ ut per suōs finēs eōs ire pate-
rentur.⁴ Omnibus rēbus⁵ ad profectiōnem comparātis, diem dixerunt quā diē⁶ ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs convenīrent.⁷ Is diēs erat ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs,⁸ Pisōne, Gabīniō⁹ cōsulibus.

*Caesar Hastens into Gaul, and Receives an Embassy
from the Helvetii.*

V. Caesarī cum nūntiātum esset⁹ eōs per prōvinciam iter facere cōnārī,¹⁰ mātūrāvit ab urbe¹¹ proficīscī, et ad Genāvam¹² pervēnit. Ubi dē ējus adventū Helvëtiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt quī dicerent,¹³ sibi esse in animō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre, ut ējus voluntāte id sibi facere licēret.¹⁴ Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat¹⁵ Lūcium

¹ 141, 391.

² *Ad . . . pertinet*, 'leads over to the Helvetii.'

³ 171, 534.

⁴ 119, 498.

⁵ Ablative Absolute.

⁶ 93, 429.

⁷ 123, 500.

⁸ *Ante . . . Aprilēs*; this whole expression may be regarded as an indeclinable noun, in this instance a *predicate nominative* after *erat*; 59, 362. It means 'the fifth day before the Calends (*the first*) of April,' which according to the Roman reckoning was not the 27th but the 28th day of March. This was in the year 58 B. C.

⁹ 119, 491.

¹⁰ *Eōs . . . cōnārī*: subject of *nūntiātum esset*.

¹¹ *Ab urbe*, i.e. from Rome.

¹² *Ad Genāvam*, 'into the vicinity of Geneva;' 'to Geneva' would be simply *Genāvam*; 277, 380.

¹³ *Quī dicerent*, to say; 119, 497.

¹⁴ *Sibi . . . licēret*, Indirect Discourse. In Direct Discourse, thus: *Nōbis est in . . . facere, proptereā . . . habēmus nūllum; rogāmus ut tuā voluntāte id nōbis facere liceat*. Explain the changes of Mood, etc. 262, 523, 524. Observe that *esse* and *rogāre* are the leading verbs in the principal clauses, and that the subject of *esse* is the clause *iter . . . facere*. — *Rogāre*, 'that they asked;' the subject, if expressed, would be *sē*. — *Ut . . . licēret*; 119, 498. *Licēret* has *id facere* as its subject, and *sibi* as its indirect object; 54, 384. — *Ējus voluntāte*, 'with his (Caesar's) consent,' 158, 413.

¹⁵ *Memoriā tenēbat*: retained in (by means of) memory.

Cassium cōsulem occīsum, exercitumque ejus ab Helvētiis pulsum et sub jugum missum,¹ concēdendum² nōn putābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset,³ dum milītēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit, diem⁴ sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Idūs Aprīlēs⁵ reverterentur.⁶

Caesar takes Measures to prevent the March of the Helvetii.

VI. Intereā cū legiōne,⁷ quam sēcum habēbat, militibusque,⁷ quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō ad montem Jūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dividit, milia⁸ passuum decem novem mūrū fossamque perdūxit. Ubi ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negāvit sē posse iter ullī per prōvinciam dare,⁹ et, sī vim facere cōnārentur,¹⁰ prohibitūrum¹¹ ostendit. Helvētiī perrumpere cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum tēlis repulsī, hōc cōnātū¹² dēstitērunt.

The Helvetii decide to March by a different Route.

VII. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via,¹³ quā, Sēquanīs invītīs, propter angustiās ire nōn poterant. His cum suā

¹ This defeat of the Roman army under Cassius occurred near the Lake of Geneva, 107 B. C. ² *Concēdendum*, i.e. the request of the Helvetii.

³ 110, 497.

⁴ *Diem*, render time.

⁵ *Ad Idūs Aprīlēs*, on the Ides of April, i.e. on the 13th of April.

⁶ *Sī . . . reverterentur*: in Direct Discourse, *sī quid vultis . . . revertimini*, 262, 523, 524. ⁷ Ablative of Means with *perdūxit*.

⁸ *Milia*, 98, 387. These defences extended along the southern side of the Rhone, from the Lake of Geneva to Mount Jura, and commanded all the fords of the Rhone by which the Helvetii could enter the Roman province.

⁹ *Negāvit . . . dare*: said that he could not grant; literally, denied that he was able to give. ¹⁰ 262, 524.

¹¹ *Prohibitūrum*, i.e. *sē prohibitūrum esse*.

¹² 158, 413.

¹³ *Ūna . . . via*: only the way through the Sequani, i.e. the narrow pass along the north bank of the Rhone, between the mountains and the river.

sponte¹ persuādēre nōn possent,² lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Aeduū mīsērunt, ut eō dēprecātōre³ ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.⁴ Dumnorix apud Sēquanōs plūrimū poterat,⁵ et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorigis filiam in mātrimonium dūxerat.⁶ Itaque rem suscēpit⁷ et ā Sēquanīs impetrāvit, ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire paterentur.

Caesar Marches Five Legions of Roman Soldiers into Gaul.

VIII. Caesarī renūntiātum est, Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere.⁸ Id sī fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum periculō provinciae futūrum.⁹ Ob eās causās ēī mūnitiōnī, quam fēcērat, Titum Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Italiam contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōserīpsit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs edūxit, et in ūlteriōrem Galliam cum hīs quinque legiōnibus ire contendit.

Caesar Surprises and Routs One Canton of the Helvetii at the River Arar.

IX. Helvētiī jam per angustias¹⁰ et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trānsdūxerant, et in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant.¹¹ Flūmen est Arar, quod¹² per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit. Id Helvētiī trānsībant.¹³ Ubi Caesar certior factus est, trēs jam cōpiārum partēs¹⁴ Helvētiōs id flūmen¹⁵ trānsdūxisse, quartam vērō partem citrā flūmen¹⁶

¹ *Suā sponte, of themselves.*

² See suggestion xvii, 2.

³ *Eō dēprecātōre, by his intercession; literally, he being an intercessor.*

⁴ 119, 497.

⁵ *Plūrimū poterat: had very great influence.*

⁶ *In mātrimonium dūxerat: had married.*

⁷ *Rem suscēpit: he undertook the service.*

⁸ *Facere: subject of esse.*

⁹ Supply *esse*.

¹⁰ The narrow pass between the Jura and the Rhone.

¹¹ 'Had come,' i. e. during Caesar's absence.

¹² The antecedent is *flūmen*.

¹³ Observe the force of the tense: 'were crossing.'

¹⁴ See 275, sentence 19.

¹⁵ *Citrā flūmen: on this side of the river, i.e. on the east side.*

Ararim reliquam esse, cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs aggressus māgnam eōrum partem concēdit; reliquī fugae sēsē mandārunť. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus; nam omnis cīvitas Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est. Ille pāgus ūnus, patrum nostrōrum memoriā,¹ Lūcium Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat, et ējus exercitum sub jugum mīserat. Ita quae pars cīvitatīs Helvētiaē īnsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea² princeps poenās persolvit.³

Caesar Crosses the Arar, and Receives a Second Embassy from the Helvetii.

X. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequī posset, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrāvit, atque ita exercitum trānsdūxit. Helvētīi ējus adventū commōtī, lēgātōs ad eum misērunt, cūjus lēgātīōnis Diviciō princeps fuit. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit:⁴ Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētīis faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs⁶ Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequi⁶ perseverāret,⁷ reminiscerētur et veteris incommodi⁸ populi Rōmāni et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Caesar respondit: Sī⁹ obsidēs ab iīs sibi darentur, utī ea,¹⁰ quae pollicērentur, factūrōs intellexeret, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum. Diviciō

¹ Patrum . . . memoriā: within the memory of our fathers; 93, 429.

² Render as if it read, ea pars civitatīs Helvētiaē quae . . . intulerat.

³ Princeps persolvit: was the first to pay.

⁴ Ita ēgit: discoursed as follows. The words following. Sī . . . Helvētiōrum, are in Indirect Discourse. The Direct Discourse would be: Sī . . . faciet, . . . ibunt . . . erunt Helvētīi, ubi eōs esse volueris; sīn . . . perseverābis, reminiscere, etc. Explain the changes; 262, 523, 524.

⁵ Ibi futūrōs: would remain there. Supply esse.

⁶ Persequi; supply eōs.

⁷ The subject is Caesar.

⁸ Incommodi populi, etc. This refers to the defeat of Cassius.

⁹ Sī . . . factūrum is in Indirect Discourse. The Direct Discourse would be: Sī . . . mihi dabuntur . . . polliceantur, . . . intellegam, (ego) . . . faciam; 262, 523, 524.

¹⁰ Ea: object of factūrōs (esse), the subject of which is (eōs), referring to the Helvetii.

respondit: Helvētiōs ā mājōribus suis institūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuēssent; ¹ ējus rēi populum Rōmānum esse testem.² Hōc respōnsō ³ datō discessit.

The Helvetii proceed on their March, followed by the Roman Army. A Cavalry Skirmish, in which the Helvetii are Successful.

XI. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movērunt.⁴ Idem fēcit Caesar, equitātumque omnem praemisit, quī vidērent,⁵ quās in partēs hostēs iter facerent.⁶ Quī cupidius ⁷ novissimum āgmen īsecūtī, aliēnō locō ⁸ cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium commīsērunt, et paucī dē nostrīs ⁹ cecidērunt. Quō proeliō ¹⁰ sublātī Helvētīi, quod quīngentis equitibus ¹⁰ tantam multitudinē equitum prōpulerant,¹¹ audācius subsistere, nōnnūquam ex novissimō āgmine proeliō nostrōs lacēssere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat ¹² in praesentiā hostem rapīnis,¹³ pābulātiōnibus, populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs ¹⁴ circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium āgmen et nostrum prīmum ¹⁵ nōn amplius ¹⁶ quīnis aut sēnis milibus ¹⁷ passuum interesset.¹⁸

¹ *Cōsuēssent*, contracted from *cōsuēvissent*. In this verb the Perfect has the sense of a Present, and therefore the Pluperfect of an Imperfect.

² *Ējus . . . testem*: that the Roman people were witnesses of this, alluding to the hostages given by the survivors after the defeat and death of Cassius.

³ Ablative Absolute.

⁴ The subject is *Helvētīi* to be supplied.

⁵ 119, 497.

⁶ 127, 529.

⁷ See 275, sentence 3.

⁸ 185, 425, 2.

⁹ *Paucī dē nostrīs*: a few of our men; see 125, sentence 8.

¹⁰ 78, 420.

¹¹ Is this the reason of Caesar, or of the Helvetii?

¹² The object is the clause *hostem . . . prohibēre*.

¹³ 158, 413.

¹⁴ 98, 379.

¹⁵ *Prīmum*: supply *āgmen*, our van.

¹⁶ *Amplius*: subject of *interesset*.

¹⁷ *Quīnis milibus*; 88, 417. The Distributive implies that the statement is true for each of the fifteen days; 97, 172.

¹⁸ 123, 500.

Caesar Plans an Attack upon the Camp of the Helvetii.

XII. Caesar ab exploratoribus certior factus,¹ hostes sub monte consedissee milia² passuum ab ipsius castris octo, de tertia vigilia Titum Labienum, legatum, cum duabus legionibus summum jugum montis ascendere jussit. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit. Publius Considius, qui rei militaris³ peritissimus habebatur, cum exploratoribus praemissus est.

Caesar's Plan Defeated by the Mistake of Considius.

XIII. Prima luce,⁴ cum summus mons a Tito Labieno teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset,⁵ neque aut ipsius adventus aut Labieni cognitus esset,⁶ Considius equo admissus ad eum accurrit, dixit montem, quem a Labieno occupari voluisset,⁶ ab hostibus teneri; id se a Gallicis armis cognovisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subduxit, aciem instruxit. Labienus, ut erat ei praeceptum⁷ a Caesare, ne proelium committeret, nisi ipsius copiae⁸ prope hostium castra visae essent,⁹ ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupato nostros expectabat proelioque abstinere. Multo denique die⁹ per exploratores Caesar cognovit, et montem a suis teneri, et Helvetios castra movere, et Considium timore perterritum, quod non vidisset, pro viso sibi renuntiasse.¹⁰ Eo die, quo consuebat intervallum,¹¹ hos-

¹ See *certus*, vocabulary. ² 98, 379. ³ See vocabulary. ⁴ 93, 429.

⁵ *Abesset* and *cognitus esset*, as well as *teneretur*, depend upon *cum*.

⁶ 127, 529, II.

⁷ The subject of *erat praeceptum* is the clause *ne . . . committeret*, which also expresses purpose; 119, 497.

⁸ *Ipsius copiae*: his own (Caesar's) forces.

⁹ *Multo die*: late in the day, though only relatively to *prima luce*.

¹⁰ *Quod . . . renuntiasse*: had reported to him what he had not seen, as if seen, literally, for seen. The antecedent of *quod* is the omitted object of *renuntiasse*.

¹¹ *Quo . . . intervallum* = *intervallum quo consuebat*: at the usual distance. See above, XI., last line.

tēs secūtns est, et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra sua posuit.

To secure Supplies, Caesar turns aside from the Pursuit of the Helvetii. The Helvetii change their Route and follow the Roman Army.

XIV. Postrīdiē, quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum cōpi-ōssimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum octōdecim aberat, rēi frūmentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit,¹ iter ab Helvētīs āvertit, āc Bibracte² ire contendit.³ Ea rēs per fugitivōs hostibus nūtiātum est. Helvētīi, seu⁴ quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, sive quod rē⁵ frūmentāriā interclūdī posse⁶ cōfiderent, itinere conversō, nostrōs⁷ ā novissimō āgmine⁸ insequi āc lacēssere coepērunt.

Caesar Prepares for a General Engagement.

XV. Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in prōximum collem subdūxit, equitātumque, quī sustinēret⁹ hostium impetum, mīsīt. Ipse interim in colle mediō¹⁰ triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō jugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā ceteriōre cōscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī iussit. Helvētīi, cum omnibus suis carris secūtī, impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōfertissimā aciē, rejectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

¹ Rēi . . . existimāvit: he thought that he ought to provide supplies. With prōspiciendum supply esse; 281, 301; 54, 384.

² 277, 380.

³ Āvertit āc contendit: no conjunction is expressed, connecting these verbs with existimāvit; we may supply and accordingly.

⁴ Seu . . . cōfiderent: either because they thought, etc., or because they trusted, etc.

⁵ 158, 413.

⁶ Posse: supply cōs, referring to the Romans.

⁷ See 125, sentence 8.

⁸ Ā . . . āgmine: on the rear.

⁹ 119, 497.

¹⁰ In . . . medio: midway up the hill.

In a fierce Battle the Helvetii are totally Defeated and put to Flight.

XVI. Caesar cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs, ē locō superiōre pilis missis, facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā¹ disiectā, gladiis dēstrictis in eōs² impetum fecērunt. Diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est.³ Nam hōc tōtō proeliō,⁴ cum⁵ ab hōrā septimā⁶ ad vesperum pūgnātum esset, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem⁷ etiam ad impedimenta pūgnātum est, proptereā quod prō vallō carrōs objēcerant, et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs⁸ tēla cōiciēbant, et nōnnūllī inter carrōs rotāsque matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant, nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum,⁹ impedimentis¹⁰ castrisque nostrī potitī sunt. Ex eō proeliō circiter milia hominum centum et trīgintā superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam partem¹¹ noctis itinere intermissō, in finēs Lingonum diē quartō pervēnērunt, cum, et propter vulnera militum et propter sepultūram occisōrum nostrī trīduum¹² morātī, eōs sequī nōn potuissent.¹³ Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent,¹⁴ sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum.¹⁴ Ipse, trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coepit.

¹ *Ea* refers to *phalangem*.

² *Eōs* refers to *hostium*.

³ *Pūgnātum est*: they fought, 281, 301.

⁴ 185, 425, 1.

⁵ 254, 515.

⁶ As the Romans divided the day from sunrise to sunset into twelve hours, the seventh hour would be about one o'clock.

⁷ *Ad . . . noctem*: far into the night.

⁸ *In . . . venientēs*: against our men who were advancing.

⁹ 281, 301.

¹⁰ 258, 421.

¹¹ 98, 379.

¹² With *cum*, denoting cause.

¹³ *Qui sī iūvissent*: if they should aid: 127, 529, II.

¹⁴ *Sē . . . habitūrum*: 'that he should regard them as in the same situation as the Helvetii.' *Sē habitūrum* (*esse*) depends upon the verb implied in *litterās . . . mīsit*. Supply, as the object of *habitūrum*, *eos*, referring to *Lingonēs*. *Helvētiōs* is the object of *habēret*, to be supplied.

The Helvetii submit to Caesar's Terms, and return to their Country. One Canton unsuccessfully Attempts to take Refuge in Germany.

XVII. Helvētīi, omnium rērum inopiā adductī, lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad eum mīsērunt. Caesar obsidēs, arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent,¹ poposcit. Dum ea² conquīruntur et cōferuntur, nocte intermissā,³ circiter⁴ hominum mīlia sex ejus pāgī, quī Verbigēnus appellātur, sive timōre perterriti,⁵ nē armīs trāditīs supplicio adficerentur,⁶ sive spē salutis inductī, primā nocte⁷ ex castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressi, ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt. Quod ubi Caesar rescīit,⁸ quōrum⁹ per finēs ierant, hīs¹⁰ utī conquīrerent et redūcerent imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit;¹¹ reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditionem accēpit. Helvētiōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī jussit, et Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent;¹² ipsōs¹³ oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere jussit. Id eā māximē ratiōne¹⁴ fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētīi discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitatem agrōrum Germānī, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsīrent, et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae essent.

¹ 123, 503.

² *Ea*: these, — literally, these things.

³ 240, 431.

⁴ *Circiter*: an adverb, modifying *sex*.

⁵ *Perterriti* agrees with *mīlia* by a construction according to sense.

⁶ *Nē . . . adficerentur* depends upon *timōre*. 'with fear lest,' etc.; 119, 497.

⁷ See 191, foot-note.

⁸ *When Caesar ascertained this.*

⁹ *Quōrum*: the antecedent is *his*.

¹⁰ *His* depends on *imperāvit*; 54, 384.

¹¹ *Reductōs . . . habuit*: when they were brought back, he treated them as enemies: literally, had them in the number of enemies. They were probably sold as slaves.

¹² *Ut . . . facerent*. to furnish a supply, etc.; 119, 498.

¹³ *Ipsōs*: them, emphatic, in distinction from *Allobrogibus*.

¹⁴ *Eā . . . ratiōne*: principally for this reason, explained by *quod nōluit*, etc.

The Numbers of the Helvetii before and after their Disastrous Enterprize.

XVIII. In castris Helvëtiôrum tabulae repertae sunt quibus in tabulis ratiô cōfecta erat, quî numerus¹ domô² exisset.³ Summa erat Helvëtiôrum mīlia ducenta et sexagintā tria. Eôrum, quî domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, repertus est numerus mīlium centum et decem.

CAESAR'S FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN, 55 B. C.⁴

Caesar's Reasons for the Expedition.

I. Caesar in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis⁵ hostibus nostris inde subministrata⁶ auxilia intellegēbat; et si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum⁷ dēficeret,⁸ tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī⁹ fore¹⁰ arbitrābatur, si modo insulam adisset⁸ et genus hominum perspēxisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incōgnita. Neque enim temere praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque his ipsis¹¹ quicquam, praeter ōram maritimam atque eas regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercātōribus,¹² neque quanta esset¹³ insulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incoleant, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent, neque quī essent ad nāvium multitudinem idōneī portūs, reperire poterat.

Preparations for the Expedition.

II. Ad haec cōgnōscenda⁷ Gāium Volusēnum cum nāvi longā praemisit. Huic mandāvit, utī explorātis omnibus

¹ Ratiō, quî numerus: an account showing what number.

² 212, 412, 1.

³ Quî . . . exisset is in apposition with ratiō: 127, 529, I.

⁴ From Caesar's "Commentaries on the Gallic War," IV., 20-36.

⁵ 93, 429. ⁶ Supply esse. ⁷ 291, 543. ⁸ 127, 529, II.

⁹ 281, 390. ¹⁰ 140, 204, 2. ¹¹ His ipsis, i.e. mercātōribus.

¹² Vocātis . . . mercātōribus, Ablative Absolute; although he summoned, etc.

¹³ Quanta esset: object of reperire; 127, 529, I.

rēbus¹ ad sē quam primum² reverterētur.³ Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in Morinōs profectus est, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trājectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimis regiōnibus et, quam⁴ superiōre aestāte effēcerat, clāssē jussit convenīre. Volusēnus, perspectis regiōnibus¹ omnibus, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertit, quaeque ibi perspēxisset⁵ renūntiāvit.

Caesar crosses the Channel.

III. Caesar nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum⁶ tempestātem, tertiā ferē vigiliā⁷ solvit, et hōrā diēi circiter quartā⁸ cum primis nāvibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium cōpiās armātās cōspēxit. Cūjus loci haec erat nātūra, utī ex locis superiōribus in litus tēlum adigī posset.⁹ Hunc ad ēgrediendum⁶ nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, circiter milia¹⁰ passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs cōstituit.¹¹

The Britons Oppose the Landing of the Romans.

IV. At barbari, praemissō equitatū¹ et essedariis, reliquis cōpiis subsecūtī, nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quarum speciēs erat barbaris inūsitātior, paulum removērī ab onerariis nāvibus, et rēmīs incitārī, et ad latus apertum¹² hostium cōstituī, atque inde fundis,¹³ sagittis, tormentis, hostēs prōpelli ac submovērī

¹ Ablative Absolute.

² *Quam primum*: as soon as possible.

³ 119, 497.

⁴ *Quam*: the antecedent is *clāssē*.

⁵ 127, 529, I.

⁶ 291, 542.

⁷ 93, 429.

⁸ About ten o'clock in the morning, probably on the 26th of August. See page 291, foot-note 6.

⁹ 123, 500.

¹⁰ 98, 379.

¹¹ *Apertō . . . cōstituit*: he anchored off an open and level shore; probably on the coast of Deal; 185, 425, 1.

¹² The exposed flank was the right flank, as the shield was carried on the left arm.

¹³ 78, 420.

jussit: quae res magnō usuī nostris¹ fuit. Nam et nāvium figurā² et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitatō genere tormentōrum permōtī, barbarī cōstitērunt ac paulum pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostris militibus³ cunctantibus, māximē propter altitudinem maris, quī⁴ decimae legiōnis aquilam⁵ ferēbat: “Dēsilite,” inquit, “commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere:”⁶ ego certē meum rei publicae atque imperatōri officium praestiterō.” Hōc cum magnā vōce dixisset,⁷ sē ex nāvī prōjēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī universī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōspēxissent,⁷ subsecūtī hostibus appropinquārunt.

The Romans Effect a Landing, and put the Britons to Flight.

V. Pugnātum est ab utrīsq; acriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ordinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere poterant,⁸ magnō opere perturbābantur. Hostēs vērō, nōtis omnibus vadis,⁸ ubi aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōspēxerant,⁹ incitātis equīs,⁸ adoriēbantur; plūrēs¹⁰ paucōs circumstēbant; aliī in universōs¹¹ tela cōiciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset⁷ Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium militibus complērī jussit, et quōs laborantēs cōspēxerat, his subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī simul⁹ in aridō cōstitērunt, in hostēs impetum fecērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt.

The Britons Sue for Peace.

VI. Hostēs, proeliō¹² superatī, statim ad Caesarem legātōs dē pāce misērunt. Caesar obsidēs imperāvit, quōrum illi

¹ 281, 390.

² 158, 413.

³ Ablative Absolute.

⁴ Qui, he who.

⁵ The eagle was the standard of the legion.

⁶ The loss of the eagle was regarded as a great disgrace.

⁷ Temporal clause.

⁸ Caesar's reason.

⁹ Temporal clause.

¹⁰ Plūrēs: several, i. e. of the enemy.

¹¹ In universōs: against our assembled forces, opposed to aliquōs singulārēs.

¹² 185, 425, 1.

partem statim dedērunt, partem paucis diēbus¹ sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt.

The Roman Fleet seriously Damaged by a high Tide and a Storm.

VII. Hīs rēbus pāce² cōfirmātā, post diem quartum, quam³ est in Britanniam ventum,⁴ accidit, ut esset lūna plēna,⁵ quī diēs⁶ maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuēvit; nostrisque id⁷ erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore¹ et longās nāvēs, quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflīctābat. Complūribus nāvibus² frāctis, māgna tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent,⁸ et, quod omnibus cōstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre,⁹ frūmentum hīs in locis in hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

The British Chieftains plot a Renewal of Hostilities.

VIII. Quibus rēbus² cōgnitis, prīncipēs¹⁰ Britanniae, cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānis deesse intellegerent,¹¹ et paucitatem militum ex castrōrum exiguitate cōgnōscerent, optimum factū¹² esse dūxērunt, rebellione² factā, frūmentō¹³ commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre, et rem in hiemem prōducere,¹⁴ quod, hīs² superātis aut reditū¹³ interclūsīs, nēmīnem

¹ 93, 429.

² Ablative Absolute.

³ *Post . . . quam*: on the fourth day after; *diem* is in the Accusative with the preposition *post*, and *quam* is here used as a conjunction with the force of *postquam*; literally, *after the fourth day, after, etc.*

⁴ 281, 301.

⁵ This was on the 30th of August.

⁶ *Qui diēs*: which period, or a period which.

⁷ *Id*: that = this fact, i.e. the fact expressed in *quī . . . cōsuēvit*.

⁸ 123, 500, I.

⁹ *Cōstābat . . . oportēre*: *hiemārī*, used impersonally, is the subject of *oportēre*; 281, 301; *oportēre* is the subject of *cōstābat*.

¹⁰ Subject of *dūxērunt*.

¹¹ Observe mood.

¹² 246, 547.

¹³ 158, 413.

¹⁴ *Rem . . . prōducere*: to protract the war.

postea bellī inferendī¹ causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum² cōnfidēbant.

Caesar Suspects the Plot of the Britons, and Prepares to Meet it.

IX. At Caesar, etsi nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, tamen fore³ id, quod accidit, suspiciābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotidiē in castra cōferēbat, et quae gravissimē afflictae erant nāvēs, eārum⁴ materiā⁵ atque aere ad reliquās re-ficiendās¹ ūtēbātur, et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī,⁶ ex continentī comportārī jubēbat. Itaque, duodecim nāvibus āmissis, reliquīs ut nāvīgārī posset,⁷ effēcit.

The Britons Surprise a Roman Foraging Party. Caesar Hastens to the Rescue.

X. Dum ea geruntur,⁸ legiōne ūnā frūmentātum⁹ missā, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā, iī, qui prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant, Caesarī nūntiāverunt pulverem mājorem, quam cōnsuetūdō ferret,¹⁰ in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem¹¹ legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar suspi-cātus aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsiliū,¹² cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant,¹³ sēcum in eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem cohortēs succēdere,¹⁴ reliquās ar-

¹ 291, 543.

² Supply *esse*.

³ See 140, 204, 2.

⁴ *Quae nāvēs, eārum* = *eārum nāvium, quae*.

⁵ 258, 421.

⁶ 281, 390; one of the two Datives, as here, is often omitted, when it would be some word like *alicui*, to any one.

⁷ *Ut . . . posset* is the object of *effēcit*, 'he made it possible to sail with the rest'; 123, 501. *Nāvīgārī*, used impersonally, is the subject of *posset*; 281, 301.

⁸ Render by imperfect.

⁹ 166, 546.

¹⁰ *Quam cōnsuetūdō ferret*: than usual; literally, than custom bore.

¹¹ *Quam in partem*; render as if it were in *quam*.

¹² *Aliquid . . . cōnsiliū*; *aliquid* is subject of *initum (esse)*; *cōnsiliū* is Partitive Genitive after *aliquid*; 28, 397.

¹³ One cohort guarded each of the four gates of a Roman camp.

¹⁴ *Ex . . . succēdere*: two of the other (six) cohorts to take their place on guard. He could spare only two, instead of four, to guard the gates.

mārī et cōfestim sēsē subsequī jussit. Cum paulō longius ā castris prōcessisset,¹ suōs² ab hostibus premī, atque aegrē sustinēre animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō,³ pars ūna⁴ erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs, noctū in silvīs dēlittuerant; tum dispersōs,⁵ dēpositis armīs,⁶ in metendō⁶ occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs, reliquōs perturbāverant; simul equitātū atque essedis circumdederant.

The Use of War-chariots by the Britons.

XI. Genus hōc est⁷ ex essedis pūgnae: primō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla cōiciunt, atque ipsō terrōre equōrum⁸ et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinnāvērunt,⁹ ex essedis dēsiliiunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt, atque ita currūs collocant, ut, sī illī¹⁰ ā multitūdine hostium premantur,¹¹ expeditum ad suōs² receptum habeant.¹² Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant.

Caesar Rescues his Foraging Party. Storms interfere with Military Operations.

XII. Quibus rēbus¹³ perturbātīs nostrīs² tempore¹⁴ opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque ējus adventū¹⁵ nostrī² sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō³ factō, ad committendum

¹ Temporal clause. ² See 125, sentence 8. ³ Ablative Absolute.

⁴ *Pars ūna*: only one part, i.e. only one place from which grain could be obtained.

⁵ *Dispersōs*; this participle, like *occupātōs*, agrees with *nostrōs*, to be supplied as the object of *adortī*; while scattered, etc.

⁶ 291, 542.

⁷ *Hōc est*: is as follows.

⁸ *Ipsō . . . equōrum*: by the very terror caused by their horses.

⁹ Temporal clause.

¹⁰ *Illī*, i.e. the warriors, in distinction from the drivers, *aurigae*.

¹¹ 127, 529, II.

¹² 123, 500, II.

¹³ 78, 420.

¹⁴ 93, 429.

¹⁵ 185, 425, 1.

proelium¹ aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, brevī tempore² intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs³ tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent,⁴ et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent.

The Britons Combine, and March upon the Roman Camp, but Suffer a total Defeat.

XIII. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt, paucitātemque nostrōrum militum suis praedicāvērunt, et quanta in perpetuum sui liberandī⁵ facultās darētur,⁶ si Rōmānōs castrīs⁷ expulissent,⁸ dēmōstravērunt. His rēbus⁹ celeriter magnā multitudīne² peditātis equitātisque coāctā, ad castra vērunt. Caesar legiōnēs in acie pro castrīs cōstituit. Commissō proeliō,² nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuerunt, ac terga vertērunt. Quos secūtī, complūrēs ex iis occiderunt; deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis² incēnsis, se in castra recēperunt.

The Britons Sue for Peace. Caesar Returns to the Continent.

XIV. Eōdem diē¹⁰ lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem de pāce vērunt. His¹¹ Caesar numerum obsidum, quem antea imperāverat, duplicāvit eosque in continentem addūcī iussit. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus nāvēs solvit, quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervērunt.

¹ 291. 543.

² Ablative Absolute.

³ 98, 379.

⁴ 123, 500, I.

⁵ *Sui liberandi*: of freeing themselves; literally, of the freeing of themselves. *Sui* is in the Genitive plural after *liberandi*, according to Rule XVI., 28, 395. The Gerund usually governs the same case as the verb, but sometimes, by virtue of its substantive nature, it governs the Genitive, especially the Genitive of personal pronouns, *mei*, *nostrī*, *tui*, *vestri*, and *sui*.

⁶ 127, 529, I.

⁷ 153, 413.

⁸ 127, 529, II.

⁹ 78, 420.

¹⁰ 93, 420.

¹¹ 54, 384, II.

SUGGESTIONS ON EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION.

No exercises for Translation into Latin are given in connection with these passages of connected narrative, but it is not intended that this important subject should be neglected. The pupil may now begin Part II. of the "Introduction to Latin Composition"; but an exercise as often as once a week or once a fortnight is recommended, to be prepared *by the teacher*, and based upon some passage of the Latin which the pupils have read. At first the pupils may be permitted to make their translation with the aid of the Latin, but the plan should be adopted early, of assigning the passage to be *committed to memory* by the pupil, and then requiring the translation into Latin within the hour assigned for the exercise, with no aid but the pupil's memory and the knowledge that he has acquired of the language. The following exercise, based upon paragraph II., page 282, is given simply as an illustration.

Translate into Latin.

Caesar says that in the consulship of Messala, Orgetorix, a chieftain (*princeps*¹) of very high birth and of great wealth, persuaded the Helvetii to emigrate from their country. The territory of this tribe (*gēns*) was very limited for its population, and it was separated from the adjacent countries (*terra*) by high mountains and deep rivers. The Rhine hemmed them in on one side, Mount Jura on another, and on a third the Lake of Geneva and the Rhone. Thus (*itaque*) the warlike (*bellicōsus*) Helvetii were not able readily to carry on war against their neighbors.

¹ Words not occurring in the Latin passage may be furnished to the pupil, but in general he should be expected to give familiar words without aid.

SUGGESTIONS TO THE LEARNER.

I. The preparation of a reading lesson in Latin involves:

1. An exact comprehension of the thought expressed in the original.
2. An appropriate expression of that thought in an English translation.

MEANING OF THE LATIN.

II. In preparing your lessons take special note, from the outset, of the more obvious difference between the Latin and the English.

III. The Latin gives new names to persons and things already familiar to you. Therefore store your memory as rapidly as possible with these new names. Learn the vocabularies so thoroughly that you will be able, not only to give with promptness either the English for the Latin or the Latin for the English, but also, what is of supreme importance, to recognize the full meaning in the Latin word itself, without any thought of the English. It is not enough to find English equivalents for Latin words. In your vocabulary, Latin nouns must represent not *mere words*, but *real persons and things*; AGRICOLA, not the English word *husbandman*, but the *husbandman himself*, not the *name*, but the *man*.

IV. Remember that the full meaning of an inflected word can seldom be ascertained from the dictionary alone. Every word of this kind has a significant ending, which

gives it an important part of its meaning. Therefore make yourself so familiar with all the endings of inflection, whether in declension or conjugation, that you will readily distinguish not only the different parts of speech, but also the different forms of the same word.

V. But these endings of inflection should not only enable you to distinguish the parts of speech, should not only tell you the *cases* of *nouns*, and the *voices, moods, tenses, numbers*, and *persons* of *verbs*, but they should also give you the exact *meaning* of all these forms. The meaning is what you must have. It will be of little use to you to know that a verb is in the Imperfect tense, for instance, unless you also know what that tense really means, what it really tells you about the action of the verb.

VI. Again, the dictionary and the grammar combined often fail to meet the needs of the student. If I tell you that *rēgēs* is the first word in a sentence, and then ask you to give me its full and exact meaning, I require an absolute impossibility. The most learned Roman that ever lived could not answer the question. The dictionary can only tell you that the general idea is that designated by our word *king*, while the grammar informs you that *rēgēs* is in the plural number, and that the form may be found in the Nominative, Accusative or Vocative. It will also tell you that, *if* it is in the Nominative, it may be the subject of an action, an appositive, or a predicate Nominative; that *if* it is in the Accusative, it may be the object of an action, an appositive, a predicate Accusative, or the subject of an infinitive; and that, *if* it is in the Vocative, it is used as a form of address; but neither the dictionary nor the grammar can tell you which case it is, or which one of these numerous meanings it actually has. How, then, can you ever ascertain what it really means? Simply by the light which the subsequent words in the sentence will cast upon it.

I now give you the second word in the sentence, *sententiam*, and you have *rēgēs sententiam*. Can you tell the meaning of these words, or of either of them? *Sententiam* must be an Accusative, but as that case may be variously used, its special force in this sentence is still uncertain. The Accusative *sententiam*, however, makes it probable that *rēgēs* is not an Accusative, but either a Nominative or a Vocative. I add *probant* and thus complete the thought: *Rēgēs sententiam probant*. Notice now the *effect* of this last word upon the meaning of the sentence. It shows that the Accusative *sententiam*, which of itself might have various meanings, is here simply the object of the action and that *rēgēs*, which at first covered such a variety of cases is simply the subject of the action. We are now prepared to translate: *The kings approve the opinion*.

VII. From the example just given, observe to what an extent the meaning of a word is determined by the connection in which it is used. Standing alone it may perhaps be any one of three or four cases but as soon as it is combined with other words in a sentence, it stands revealed in the clearest light as a single case with a definite and distinct meaning. Accordingly, in all your reading, as each successive word meets your eye, let it be your unfailing rule to study its *effect* upon the meaning of the sentence, to observe the light which it throws upon the words that precede it and the light which it in turn will derive from those which are to follow; to observe, in fine, how the thought is gradually unfolded.

VIII. In taking up a Latin sentence remember that your object is not primarily to translate it, but *to understand and appreciate the thought in the original*. This should be done, not only without translating it, but even without thinking of the corresponding English words. To this end, you will find it helpful to read over your Latin exercises,

especially the longer passages, somewhat frequently, with the special purpose of appreciating and enjoying the thought in its original form. Under this treatment, the Latin constructions so strange to the beginner, will soon be found to be entirely simple and natural, and the language will in time become a second vernacular, and you will then enjoy fine thoughts in Latin as you enjoy them in English.

IX. But if you would fully appreciate the thoughts of a Latin writer, you must take his words in the order in which he wrote them. The arrangement of the words is an essential part of a Latin sentence and one of the means by which its meaning may be most successfully reached. The Latin order, more flexible than the English, allows a much larger scope for emphasis, and thus shows the relative importance of the several words. In general the subject and its verb, so essential to the thought, are assigned important places, the former at the beginning and the latter at the end of the sentence, yet other words when especially *emphatic* may occupy either of these positions.

X. Finally, never attempt to translate a Latin sentence until you clearly comprehend the exact thought in the original. The habit of starting off blindly to render separate words without any conception of the thought which they are intended to express is fatal to all high scholarship. Therefore, make it your first and chief object to ascertain the exact thought contained in the sentence. To accomplish this object, you will need to attend to the following particulars:

1. The general meaning of the several words as given in the vocabulary.
2. Their more definite meaning as determined by their endings.
3. The exact sense which they assume in consequence of the connection in which they are used.

XI. In the use of the Dictionary, remember that you are to look, not for the particular form which occurs in the sentence, but for the Nominative Singular of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and for the First Person Singular, Present Indicative Active of Verbs. Therefore

1. In Pronouns, make yourself so familiar with their declension that any oblique case will at once suggest the Nominative Singular.

2. In Nouns and Adjectives, make yourself so familiar with the case-endings, that you will be able to drop that of the given case, and substitute for it that of the Nominative Singular.

3. In verbs, change the ending of the given form into that of the First Person Singular of the Present Indicative Active.

TRANSLATION.

XII. In translating, render as literally as possible without doing violence to the English.

In many important idioms of the Latin, a literal translation not only would fail to do justice to the original, but also would be a gross perversion of the mother-tongue. The following suggestions are intended to aid the pupil in disposing of such cases; but even in these, it is earnestly recommended that he should first construe literally, in order that he may be made to feel the force of the Latin construction before attempting a translation.

Participles.

XIII. These are much more extensively used in Latin than in English; hence the frequent necessity, in translating them, of deviating from the Latin construction. They may generally be rendered in some one of the following ways¹ (291, 549).

¹ The pupil must early learn to determine from the context the appropriate rendering in each instance.

1. Literally :

Pyrrhus proeliō fūsus ā Tarentō recessit, *Pyrrhus having been defeated in battle withdrew from Tarentum.*

2. By a Relative Clause :

Omnēs aliud agentēs, aliud simulantēs improbi sunt, *all who do one thing and pretend another are dishonest.*

3. By a Clause with a Conjunction :

1) With a Conjunction of Time, — *while, when, after, etc.*

Ūva mātūrāta dulcēscit, *the grape when it has ripened (having ripened), becomes sweet.*

2) With a Conjunction of Cause, Reason, Manner, — *as, for, since, etc.*

Militēs perfidiam veriti revertērunt, *the soldiers returned, because they feared perfidy.*

3) With a Conjunction of Condition, — *if.*

Accūsātus damnābitur, *if he is accused he will be condemned.*

4) With a Conjunction of Concession, — *though, although.*

Urbem ācerrimē dēfēnsam cēpit, *he took the city, though it was valiantly defended, or though valiantly defended.*

4. By a Verbal Noun :

Ad Rōmā conditam, *to the founding of Rome; literally, to Rome founded.* Ab urbe conditā, *from the founding of the city.* Post rēgēs exāctōs, *after the expulsion of the kings.*

5. By a Verb :

Rēx ēi benignē receptō filiā dedit, *the king received him kindly and gave him his daughter; literally, gave his daughter to him kindly received.*

XIV. Participles with *nōn* or *nihil* are sometimes best rendered by *Participial* nouns dependent upon *without* :

Nōn ridēns, *without laughing.*

XV. Future Participles are sometimes best rendered by *Infinitives*, or by *Participial Nouns* with *for the purpose of* :

Rediit bellī cāsum tentātūrus, *he returned to try (about to try) the fortune of war.*

XVI. The Ablative Absolute is sometimes best rendered (1) by a *Clause with*—*when, while, after, for, since, if, though, etc.*, (2) by a *Noun with a Preposition*,—*in, during, after, by, from, through, etc.*, or (3) by an *Active Participle with its Object*:

Serviō rēgnante, *while Servius reigned, or in the reign of Servius* (literally, *Servius reigning*). Duce Fabiō, *under the command of Fabius* (literally, *Fabius being commander*).

Sometimes, as in the last example, a word denoting the *doer* of an action can be best rendered by the word which denotes the *thing done*. Thus, instead of *commander, consul, king*, we have *command, consulship, reign*.

Subjunctive.

XVII. This may be rendered as follows:

1. With the *Potential* signs, *may, might, would, should*, or with *let*.

Forsitan quaerātis, *perhaps you may inquire*. Hōc nēmō dixerit, *no one would say this*.

2. By the English Indicative. This is generally the best rendering

1) In clauses denoting Cause or Time, as after *cum, quod, quia, quoniam, etc.*

Cum vīta metūs plēna sit, *since life is full of fear*. Cum Rōmam vēnisset, *when he had come to Rome*.

2) In Indirect Questions (127, 529, I.):

Quaeritur, cūr dissentiant, *it is asked why they disagree*.

3) In the Subjunctive in Indirect Clauses (127, 529, II.):

Vereor, nē, dum minuire velim labōrem, augeam, *I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it*.

4) In the Subordinate Clauses of Indirect Discourse (262, 524):

Hippiās glōriātus est anulū quē haberet sē suā manū confēcisse, *Hippias boasted that he had made with his own hand the ring which he wore (had)*.

5) In Relative Clauses defining indefinite antecedents, and sometimes in clauses denoting *result* (123, 503, 500, 501):

Sunt qui putent, there are some who think. Ita vixit ut Athēniensibus esset carissimus, he so lived, that he was very dear to the Athenians.

6) Sometimes in Conditional and Concessive clauses, and in clauses with *Quin* and *Quōminus* (250, 560, 254, 515, 123, 500, II., 119, 497, II.):

Dum metuant, if only (provided) they fear. Sī voluisset, dimicasset, if he had wished, he would have fought. Ut desint virēs, tamen est laudanda voluntās, though the strength fails, still the will should be approved. Adest nēmō, quin videat, there is no one present who does not see.

3. By the Infinitive.¹ This is often the best rendering

1) In Clauses denoting Purpose (119, 497):

Contendit ut vincat, he strives to conquer (that he may conquer). Decemviri creati sunt qui lēgēs scriberent, decemvirs were appointed to prepare the laws (who should prepare).

2) In Clauses denoting Result: hence after *dignus, indignus, idōneus, aptus*, etc. (123, 500, 503):

Nōn is sum qui his ūtar, I am not such a one as to use (he who may use) these things. Fābulae dignae sunt quae legantur, the fables are worthy to be read (which, or that they, should be read).

Infinitive.

XVIII. The Infinitive has a much more extensive use in Latin than in English. The following points require notice.

1. The Infinitive with a Subject is rendered by a *Finite* verb with *that*:

Dixit sē rēgem vidisse, he said that he had seen the king.

2. The Historical Infinitive² is rendered by the Imperfect Indicative:

Iram pater dissimulāre, the father concealed his anger.

¹ Observe, however, that the Infinitive here is not the translation of the Subjunctive alone, but of the Subjunctive with its subject and connective; *ut vincat, to conquer* (literally, *that he may conquer*); *qui ūtar, as to use* (literally, *who should or may use*).

² In lively descriptions the Present Infinitive is sometimes used for the Imperfect or the Perfect Indicative. It is then called the Historical Infinitive, and, like a finite verb, has its subject in the Nominative.

3. The Infinitive is sometimes best rendered by a *Participial noun* with *of*, *with*, etc.

Insimulatur mysteria violasse, he is accused of having violated the mysteries.

Miscellaneous Idioms.

XIX. The following Miscellaneous Idioms are added :

1. *Certiorem facere* should be rendered, *to inform*, and *certior fieri*, *to be informed* :

Caesar certior factus est, Caesar was informed.

2. *Inter sē*, literally *between themselves*, is often best rendered, *from each other, from one another, to each other, to one another, together.*

Omnēs inter sē differunt, they all differ from one another.

3. *Nē* — *quidem*, with one or more words between the parts, should be rendered, *not even, or even — not* :

Nē nōmen quidem, not even the name.

4. When two or more verbs stand together in the same compound tense, the copula (*sum*) is generally expressed with the last only, but in rendering, the copula should be expressed with the first only :

Captus et in vincula cōjectus est, he was taken and thrown into chains.

5. *Quantō* — *tantō*, literally, *by as much as — by so much*, is often best rendered before comparatives, *the — the* :

Quantō diūtius cōsiderō, tantō rēs videtur obscurior, the longer (by as much as the longer) I consider the subject, the more obscure (by so much the more obscure) does it appear.

6. A Clause with *quōminus*, ‘by which the less,’ or ‘that the less,’ may generally be rendered by a *Clause* with *that*, by the *Infinitive*, or by a *Participial noun* with *from*.

Per eum stetit quōminus dimicārētur, it was owing to him (stood through him) that the engagement was not made. Nōn recūsavit quōminus poenam subiret, he did not refuse to submit to punishment. Rēgem impediit quōminus pugnāret, he prevented the king from fighting.

ABBREVIATIONS.

abl.	ablative.
acc.	accusative.
adj.	adjective.
adv.	adverb.
comp.	comparative.
conj.	conjunction.
f.	feminine.
gen.	genitive.
impers.	impersonal.
indef.	indefinite.
interj.	interjection.
interrog.	interrogative.
lit.	literally.

m.	masculine.
n.	neuter.
nom.	nominative.
p.	page.
part.	participle.
pers.	personal.
pl.	plural.
pos.	positive.
prep.	preposition.
pron.	pronoun.
sing.	singular.
sup.	superlative.
w.	with.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A.

Ā, ab. prep. w. abl. *From ; by, in the direction of ; on.*

Abeō, ire, īi, itum. *To go away, depart.*

Abstineō, ēre, uī, tentum. *To abstain, refrain.* **ABSTAIN.**¹

Absum, esse, āfui. *To be absent, distant.* **ABSENT.**

Abundō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To abound, to be well supplied with.* **ABOUND.**

Ac, conj. *And.*

Acceptus, a, um, part. and adj. *Acceptable.* **ACCEPT.**

Accidō, ere, ī. *To fall to, befall, happen ; accidit, it happens, comes to pass ; 281, 301.* **ACCIDENT.**

Accipīō, ere, cēpī, ceptum. *To accept, receive, take, admit.* **ACCEPT.**

Accommodātus, a, um, part. and adj. *Fitted, adapted.* **ACCOMMODATE.**

Accurrō, ere, curri and cucurri, cursum. *To run to, hasten to.*

Accūsātiō, ōnis, f. *Accusation.*

Accūsātor, ōris, m. *Accuser.* **ACCUSATION.**

Accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To accuse, censure, upbraid.* **ACCUSE.**

Ācer, ācris, ācre. *Sharp, severe.*

Acīēs, ēī, f. *Edge, line ; line of battle ; aciem instruere, to form the line of battle.*

Ācriter, adv. *Sharply, briskly, severely, vigorously, violently, harshly ; ācriter pūgnātur, a severe battle is fought ; 281, 301.*

Acūtus, a, um, part. and adj. *Sharpened, sharp.*

Ad, prep. w. acc. *To, toward, for ; at, on, near, in the vicinity of ; according to.*

Adamō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To be greatly pleased with, to like very much.*

Addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum. *To lead to, lead, bring, induce.* **ADDUCE.**

Adeō, ire, īi, itum. *To go to, arrive at, reach, visit.*

Adequītō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To ride toward, ride.*

Adfeciō, ere, fecī, sectum. *To affect, visit.* **AFFECT.**

¹ The words thus added to the definition in SMALL CAPITALS are such as from their form readily suggest the corresponding Latin word.

Adfinitās, ātis, *f.* Connection, relationship. **AFFINITY.**

Adflictō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To trouble; to strand.* **AFFLICT.**

Adfligō, ere, flixī, flictum. *To crush, damage.* **AFFLICT.**

Adhūc, *adv.* *Hitherto, as yet, thus far.*

Adigō, ere, ēgī, āctum. *To drive, impel, hurl, throw.*

Aditus, ūs, *m.* *Approach.*

Adjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūntum. *To join, add, unite.* **ADJOIN.**

Administrō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To administer, manage, execute, direct, perform.* **ADMINISTER.**

Admittō, ere, misi, missum. *To send to, send on, let go, admit; to commit; equō admissō, with his horse at full speed.* **ADMIT.**

Adrior, iri; ortus sum. *To rise upon, attack.*

Aduātuci, ōrum, *m. pl.* *The Aduatuci, a tribe of northern Gaul.*

Adulēscēns, entis, *m. and f.* *Youth, young man, young woman.* **ADOLESCENCE.**

Adventus, ūs, *m.* *Approach, arrival.* **ADVENT.**

Aedificium, ii, *n.* *Building, house.* **EDIFICE.**

Aedificō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To build.* **EDIFICE.**

Aedui, ōrum, *m. pl.* *The Aedui or Aeduans, a tribe of central Gaul.*

Aeduus, a, um. *Aeduan; Aeduus, i, m., an Aeduan, one of the Aedui.*

Aegrē, *adv.* *With difficulty, hardly, scarcely.*

Aequitās, ātis, *f.* *Fairness, calmness, kindness.* **EQUITY.**

Aes, aeris, *n.* *Bronze, copper.*

Aestās, ātis, *f.* *Summer.*

Aestus, ūs, *m.* *Tide.* **ESTUARY.**

Aetās, ātis, *f.* *Age.*

Agedincum, i, *n.* *Agedincum, town in central Gaul.*

Ager, agri, *m.* *Field; agri, pl. fields, lands, country.*

Aggredior, i, gressus sum. *To attack, assail.* **AGGRESSION.**

Āgmen, inis, *n.* *Army on the march, line of march; extrimum āgmen, the extremity of the line, the rear; novissimum āgmen, the rear; primum āgmen, the van.*

Agō, ere, ēgī, āctum. *To lead, drive; to do, act, perform; to treat, plead, discourse, argue.* *grātiās agere, to return thanks.* **ACT.**

Agricola, ae, *m.* *Husbandman, farmer.* **AGRICULTURE.**

Alcēs, is, *f.* *Elk.*

Alesia, ae, *f.* *Alesia, a town in central Gaul.*

Aliēnus, a, um. *Another's; unfavorable, unsuitable.* **ALIEN.**

Aliquamdiū, *adv.* *For a time.*

Aliquis, qua, quid and quod. *Any one.*

Alius, a, ud. 45; 151. *Other, another.* **ALIAS.**

Allobrogēs, um, *m. pl., singular.* *Allobrox, ogis. The Allobroges, a tribe of southeastern Gaul.*

Alō, ere, alui, alitum and altum. *To nourish, support.*

Alpēs, ium, *f. pl.* *Alps.*

Alter, tera, terum. 45, 151. *The other of two, second.*

Altitūdō, inis, *f.* *Height, depth.*

Amicitia, ae, *f.* *Friendship.*

Amicus, a, um. *Friendly; amicus, i, m., friend.* AMICABLE.

Amittō, ere, mīsi, missum. *To lose.*

Amō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To love.*

Amor, ōris, *m.* *Love.*

Amplus, a, um. *Ample, much.* AMPLE.

An, conj. *Or.*

Anceps, ancipitis. *Double, two-fold; doubtful, undecided.*

Ancora, ae, *f.* *Anchor.*

Angustiae, ārum, *f. pl.* *Narrowness; narrow pass, defile.*

Angustus, a, um. *Narrow; limited, contracted; steep.*

Animadvertō, ere, i, sum. *To turn the attention to, observe, notice.* ANIMADVERT.

Animal, ālis, *n.* *Animal.*

Animus, i, *m.* *Mind, heart, soul.*

Annus, i, *m.* *Year.* ANNUAL.

Annuus, a, um. *Annual, yearly, annually, for a year.* ANNUAL.

Ante, adv., and prep. *w. acc.* *Before; ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis, the 28th of March.*

Anteā, adv. *Before, formerly, previously.*

Antequam, conj. *Before.*

Antiquus, a, um. *Ancient, old, former.* ANTIQUE.

Ānulus, i, *m.* *Ring.*

Apertus, a, um, *part. and adj.* *Open, exposed.*

Appellō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To call.* APPEAL.

Appetō, ere, ivi or li, itum. *To seek after, seek.* APPETITE.

Appropinquō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To approach.*

Aprilis, e. *Of April; ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis, the 28th of March.*

Apud, prep. *w. acc.* *In the presence of, near, among, in, with, in the vicinity of; in the works of.*

Aquila, ae, *f.* *Eagle, the standard of the legion.*

Aquilēia, ae, *f.* *Aquileia, a town in northern Italy.*

Aquifer, erī, *m.* *Standard-bearer.*

Aquitāni, ōrum, *m. pl.* *The Aquitani or Aquitanians, the inhabitants of the southwestern division of Gaul.*

Arar, aris, *m.* 128. *The Arar, a river in southeastern Gaul, now the Saône.*

Arbitror, āri, ātus sum. *To think.* ARBITRATE.

Arcēssō, ere, sivi or sli, situm. *To summon, invite.*

Ārdeō, ēre, ārsi, ārsu. *To burn; to be ardent, be eager.* ARDOR.

Āridum, i, *n.* *Dry land.* ARID.

Ariovistus, i, *m.* *Ariovistus, a king of the Germans.*

Arma, ōrum, *n. pl.* *Arms.*

Armō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To arm.*

Arō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To plough.*

Arrogantia, ae, *f.* *Arrogance.*

Artē, adv. *Closely; soundly.*

Artemisia, ae, *f.* *Artemisia, queen of Caria.*

Artificium, li, *n.* *Artifice.*

Arvernī, ōrum, *m. pl.* *The Arverni, a tribe of southern Gaul.*

Arx, arcis, *f.* Citadel. [*cend.*
 Ascendō, ere, ī, cēsum. To as-
 At, *conj.* But, yet.
 Athēnae, ārum, *f. pl.* Athens.
 Athēniēnsis, is, *m. and f.* Athenian.
 Atque, *conj.* And.
 Atticus, ī, *m.* Atticus, a Roman
 name.
 Attingō, ere, tigī, tactum. To
 touch, reach.
 Auctor, ōris, *m.* Author, ad-
 vocate.
 Auctoritās, ātis, *f.* Authority,
 influence, reputation.
 Audācia, ae, *f.* Audacity, bold-
 ness. AUDACITY.
 Audācter, *adv.* Boldly. AUDA-
 CITY.
 Audeō, ēre, ausus sum. To dare,
 venture.
 Audiō, īre, ivi or iī, itum. To
 hear, hear of. AUDIENCE.
 Augeō, ēre, auxi, auctum. To
 augment, increase.
 Aureus, a, um. Golden, gold.
 Auriga, ae, *m.* Charioteer, driver.
 Aurum, ī, *n.* Gold.
 Aut, *conj.* Either, or; aut . . .
 aut, either . . . or.
 Autem,¹ *conj.* But.
 Auxilium, ii, *n.* Aid, help; aux-
 ilia, *pl.*, auxiliaries.
 Avāritia, ae, *f.* Avarice.
 Āvertō, ere, ī, sum. To turn
 aside, turn away; āversus, turn-
 ed away, in retreat, retreating.
 AVERT.
 Avis, is, *f.* Bird.
 Avus, ī, *m.* Grandfather.

B.

Barbarus, a, um. Barbarous,
 rude; barbarus, ī, *m.*, a bar-
 barian. BARBAROUS.
 Beātus, a, um. Blessed, happy,
 prosperous.
 Belgae, ārum, *m. pl.* The Bel-
 gae or Belgians, the inhabitants
 of the northern division of
 Gaul.
 Bellicōsus, a, um. Warlike.
 Bellō, āre, āvi, ātum. To wa-
 ge war, carry on war.
 Bellovacī, ōrum, *m. pl.* The Be-
 lovaci, a tribe of northwestern
 Gaul.
 Bellum, ī, *n.* War.
 Beneficium, ii, *n.* Benefit, favor.
 BENEFICE.
 Bibracte, is, *n.* Bibracte, the
 chief town of the Aedui.
 Bibrax, actis, *n.* Bibrax, a town
 of the Remi.
 Biennium, ii, *n.* Two years, space
 of two years. BIENNIAL.
 Biturigēs, um, *m. pl.* The Bit-
 riges, a tribe of central Gaul.
 Boiī, ōrum, *m. pl.* The Boii,
 a tribe of central Gaul.
 Bonitās, ātis, *f.* Goodness, excel-
 lence.
 Bonus, a, um. 86, 165. Good.
 Brevis, e. Short, brief.
 Breviter, *adv.* Briefly.
 Britannī, ōrum, *m. pl.* Britons.
 Britannia, ae, *f.* Britain.
 Brūtus, ī, *m.* Brutus, a Roman
 name.

¹ Autem is postpositive, i. e. it is placed after one or more words in a clause.

C.

Cabillōnum, ī, n. *Cabillonum*, a town in eastern Gaul.

Cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsum. *To fall.*

Caedēs, is, f. *Slaughter.*

Caesar, aris, m. *Caesar*, the celebrated general, statesman, and author.

Calamitās, ātis, f. *Calamity, disaster.* CALAMITY.

Cantium, ii, n. *Kent.*

Cantus, ūs, m. *Singing, song.*

Capillus, ī, m. *Hair.* CAPILLARY.

Capiō, ere, cēpī, captum. *To take; cōsiliū capere, to take counsel, form a plan.*

Captivus, ī, m. *Captive.*

Caput, itis, n. *Head.* CAPITAL.

Cāria, ae, f. *Caria*, a country in Asia Minor.

Carina, ae, f. *Keel, bottom of a vessel.*

Carō, carnis, f. *Flesh.* CARNAL.

Carrus, ī, m. *Cart, wagon.*

Cārus, a, um. *Dear.*

Cassius, ii, m. *Cassius*, a Roman name.

Castellum, ī, n. *Redoubt.* CASTLE.

Casticus, ī, m. *Casticus*, a Sequanian chieftain.

Castra, ōrum, n. pl. *Camp.*

Cāsus, ūs, m. *Accident, occurrence, emergency, vicissitude, fortune.*

Catēna, ae, f. *Chain.*

Catō, ōnis, m. *Cato*, a Roman name.

Causa, ae, f. *Cause, reason.* CAUSE.

Cecidi. *See cadō.*

Celeritās, ātis, f. *Celerity, speed.* CELERITY.

Celeriter, adv. *Quickly, speedily.* CELERITY.

Celtae, ārum, m. pl. *Celts*, the inhabitants of the central division of Gaul.

Cēnsus, ūs, m. *Census, enumeration.*

Centum, indeclinable. *Hundred.*

Centuriō, ōnis, m. *Centurion.*

Certē, adv. *Certainly, at least.* CERTAIN.

Certus, a, um. *Certain, fixed, appointed; certiōrem facere, to make more certain; to inform.* CERTAIN.

Cevenna, ae, m. *Cevenna*, a mountain range in southern Gaul, now the *Cévennes*.

Cicerō, ōnis, m. *Cicero*; (1) the celebrated orator; (2) a lieutenant under Caesar.

Circiter, adv., and prep. w. acc. *About.*

Circum, prep. w. acc. *Around, about, near, in the vicinity of.*

Circumdō, are, dedi, datum. *To place around; to surround.*

Circummūniō, ire, ivi, itum. *To wall around, to surround.*

Circumsistō, ere, stiti. *To stand around, surround.*

Cis, prep. w. acc. *On this side of.*

Citerior, us, comp. adj., sup. citimus. *Nearer; Gallia citerior, the Roman province of Gaul south of the Alps, Cisalpine Gaul.*

Citrā, prep. w. acc. *On this side of.*

Civis, is, m. and f. *Citizen.*

Civitas, âtis, *f.* *State ; citizens ; citizenship.*

Clâmitô, âre, âvi, âtum. *To exclaim, cry out.*

Clâmor, ôris, *m.* *Shout.*

Clârus, a, um. *Clear ; illustrious, renowned. CLEAR.*

Clâssis, is, *f.* *Fleet.*

Claudô, ere, sî, sum. *To close, shut. CLOSE.*

Clémentia, ae, *f.* *Clemency, mercy. CLEMENCY.*

Cliens, entis, *m. and f.* *Client, dependant. CLIENT.*

Coëmô, ere, êmi, êmptum. *To buy up, buy, purchase, obtain by purchase.*

Coepi, isse.¹ *To begin.*

Coërceô, êre, uî, itum. *To restrain, control. COERCE.*

Côgnôscô, ere, nôvi, itum. *To ascertain.*

Côgô, ere, êgi, âctum. *To drive together, bring together, collect ; to force, compel.*

Cohors, ortis, *f.* *Cohort, a tenth of a legion.*

Cohortatiô, ônis, *f.* *Exhortation, encouragement.*

Cohortor, âri, âtus sum. *To exhort, encourage.*

Côiciô,² ere, jêci, jectum. *To throw, hurl, cast.*

Collis, is, *m.* *Hill.*

Collocô, âre, âvi, âtum. *To place, station. COLLOCATE.*

Colloquium, ii, *n.* *Conversation, conference, interview. COLLOQUY.*

Colônia, ae, *f.* *Colony.*

Combûrô, ere, ussi, ustum. *To burn up, burn. COMBUSTION.*

Comes, itis, *m. and f.* *Companion.*

Commeâtus, ûs, *m.* *Supplies, provisions.*

Commemorâtiô, ônis, *f.* *Mentioning, mention, remembrance. COMMEMORATION.*

Commemorô, âre, âvi, âtum. *To mention ; to speak. COMMEMORATE.*

Commeô, âre, âvi, âtum. *To go back and forth, resort.*

Commilitô, ônis, *m. and f.* *Fellow-soldier.*

Committô, ere, misi, missum. *To commit ; proelium committere, to engage in battle.*

Commîus, ii, *m.* *Commîus, a chieftain of the Atrebates.*

Commovêô, êre, môvi, môtum. *to move, disturb, alarm. COM-MOTION.*

Commûniô, ire, ivi or ii, itum. *To wall around, encompass, surround.*

Commûnis, e. *Common, general ; commûnis rês, common interest.*

Comparô, âre, âvi, âtum. *To prepare, raise.*

Compello, ere, puli, pulsum. *To drive. COMPEL.*

Compleô, êre, êvi, êtum. *To fill, cover. COMPLETE.*

Complûrês, plûra or plûria. *Very many, many, several.*

¹ Not used in the Present system.

² Pronounced as if spelled côiiciô.

Comportō, āre, āvī, ātum. To bring together, gather.

Cōnātus, ūs, m. Undertaking, attempt, purpose.

Concedō, ere, cessī, cessum. To concede, grant, permit. CONCEDE.

Concidō, ere, ī. To fall.

Concidō, ere, ī, sum. To cut down, destroy, kill, slay.

Conciliō, āre, āvī, ātum. To win, secure. CONCILIATE.

Concilium, lī, n. Council, meeting. COUNCIL.

Conclāmō, āre, āvī, ātum. To shout, call out.

Concursus, ūs, m. Running together, running about, running to and fro, agitation. CONCOURSE.

Condōnō, āre, āvī, ātum. To condone, pardon, forgive. CONDONE.

Conducō, ere, dūxī, ductum. To lead together. CONDUCT.

Cōnferō, ferre, contulī, collātum. To carry together, bring together, gather, collect. CONFER.

Cōnfertus, a, um. Dense, crowded, compact.

Cōnfestim, adv. Hastily, speedily.

Cōnfielō, ere, fēcī, fectum. To make out, make, complete, accomplish, finish, bring to a close.

Cōnfidō, ere, fisus sum.¹ To trust, be confident; to have confidence in, rely upon. CONFIDE. (Fol-

lowed by the Ablative or by the Dative.)

Cōnfirmō, āre, āvī, ātum. To confirm, strengthen, establish, assure, fix; to comfort. CONFIRM.

Cōnfligō, ere, flixī, flictum. To contend, fight. CONFLICT.

Conjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnetum. To join, unite. CONJOIN.

Conjūnx, ugis, m. and f. Spouse; husband; wife.

Conjūrātīō, ōnis, f. Conspiracy.

Conjūrō, āre, āvī, ātum. To conspire.

Cōnor, āri, ātus sum. To attempt, try.

Conquirō, ere, sīvī or slī, sītum. To search for, seek.

Cōnsciūs, a, um. Conscious, aware. CONSCIOUS.

Cōnscribō, ere, scripsī, scriptum. To enrol, enlist. CONSCRIPT.

Cōnsequor, ī, secūtus sum. To pursue, follow, overtake.

Cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātum. To save, preserve, spare. CONSERVE.

Cōnsidius, lī, m. Considius, an officer in Caesar's army.

Cōnsidō, ere, sēdī, sessum. To sit down, settle, post one's self, encamp.

Cōnsilium, lī, n. Counsel, plan. COUNSEL.

Cōnsimilis, e. Similar, like.

Cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitum. To get a footing, stand firm. CONSIST.

Cōnspectus, ūs, m. Sight, view. CONSPICUOUS.

¹ See 259.

Cōspiciō, ere, spēxī, spectrum.

To behold. CONSPICUOUS.

Cōstanter, adv. Consistently, uniformly. CONSTANT.

Cōstantia, ae, f. Constancy, steadfastness. CONSTANCY.

Cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtum. To station, place; to determine, decide. CONSTITUTE.

Cōnstō, āre, stitī, stātum. To stand firm; to be established, be evident, be plain, be manifest, be admitted. CONSTANT.

Cōnsuēscō, ere, suēvi, suētum. To become accustomed; cōnsuēvi, I have become accustomed, I am accustomed.

Cōnsuētūdō, inis, f. Custom, usage.

Cōnsul, ulis, m. Consul, one of the two presidents of the Roman commonwealth.

Cōsulō, ere, uī, sultum. To consult.

Cōsultō, āre, āvi, ātum. To consult.

Cōsultum, ī, n. Decree.

Contendō, ere, ī, tentum. To contend; to hasten. CONTEND.

Contentus, a, um. Content, contented, satisfied. CONTENT.

Continēns, entis, f. Continent, mainland. CONTINENT.

Continenter, adv. Continually, incessantly.

Contineō, ēre, uī, tentum. To retain, restrain, confine, keep, enclose, surround. CONTAIN.

Continuus, a, um. Continuous, successive. CONTINUOUS.

Contrā, adv., and prep. w. acc. Against, contrary to, over

against, opposite, in opposition. CONTRARY.

Contrahō, ere, traxī, tractum. To contract.

Contrōversia, ae, f. Controversy, dispute. CONTROVERSY.

Conveniō, ire, vēnī, ventum. To come together, meet, come. CONVENE.

Conventus, ūs, m. Convention, meeting, assembly, council. CONVENTION.

Convertō, ere, ī, sum. To turn, change. CONVERT.

Convocō, āre, āvi, ātum. To call together, assemble. CONVOKE.

Cōpia, ae, f. Abundance, supply, number; pl., supplies; forces, troops. CAPIOUS.

Cōpiōsus, a, um. Well-supplied, wealthy. CAPIOUS.

Corōna, ae, f. Crown, garland. CROWN.

Cotidiānus, a, um. Daily.

Cotidiē, adv. Daily.

Cotta, ae, m. Cotta, a lieutenant under Caesar.

Crassus, ī, m. Crassus, a Roman name.

Crēber, bra, brum. Frequent.

Crēdō, ere, didī, ditum. To believe. CREED. (Followed by the Dative.)

Creō, āre, āvi, ātum. To create, make, appoint, elect. CREATE.

Crūdēlis, e. Cruel.

Crūdēliter, adv. Cruelly.

Culpa, ae, f. Fault, blame. CULPABLE.

Cultus, ūs, m. Cultivation, refinement, civilization.

Cum, prep. w. abl. With.

Cum, *conj.* *When, while; since, as; although.*

Cunctor, *āri, ātus sum.* *To hesitate.*

Cupidē, *adv.* *Eagerly.*

Cupidus, *a, um.* *Desirous.*

Cuplō, *ere, ivi or iī, itum.* *To desire.*

Cūr, *conj.* *Why.*

Cūra, *ae, f.* *Care.*

Cūrō, *āre, āvi, ātum.* *To care, care for; aliquid faciendum cūrō, to have a thing done.*

Currus, *ūs, m.* *Chariot.*

Cūstōdlō, *ire, ivi or iī, itum.* *To guard.* CUSTODY.

Cȳrus, *ī, m.* *Cyrus, king of Persia.*

D.

Dē, *prep. w. abl.* *Of, from; about, in regard to, concerning; in the course of; for.*

Dēbeō, *ēre, uī, itum.* *To owe; ought.* DEBT.

Decem, *indeclinable.* *Ten; decem novem, nineteen.*

Dēcernō, *ere, crēvi, crētum.* *To decide, decree.*

Dēcertō, *āre, āvi, ātum.* *To contend, struggle, fight.*

Decimus, *a, um.* *Tenth.* DECIMAL. *[sion.]*

Dēcrētum, *ī, n.* *Decree, deci-*

Dēditlō, *ōnis, f.* *Surrender.*

Dēlūcō, *ere, dūxī, ductum.* *To lead forth, conduct.* DEDUCE.

Dēfendō, *ere, ī, fēsum.* *To defend.*

Dēfēnsor, *ōris, m.* *Defender.*

Dēfessus, *a, um.* *Tired, exhausted, weary.*

Dēficiō, *ere, fēcī, fectum.* *To fail, to be insufficient.* DEFICIENT.

Deinde, *adv.* *Then, in the next place.*

Dēlectō, *āre, āvi, ātum.* *To delight, please.*

Dēleō, *ēre, ēvi, ētum.* *To destroy.*

Dēliberō, *āre, āvi, ātum.* *To deliberate.*

Dēligō, *ere, lēgī, lēctum.* *To choose, elect, select.*

Dēligō, *āre, āvi, ātum.* *To fasten, moor.*

Dēlitēscō, *ere, lituī.* *To hide.*

Dēmetō, *ere, messuī, messum.* *To cut down, reap.*

Dēminuō, *ere, uī, ūtum.* *To diminish, lessen.*

Dēmōnstrō, *āre, āvi, ātum.* *To demonstrate, show.* DEMONSTRATE.

Dēmum, *adv.* *At length.*

Dēnique, *adv.* *Finally, at length.*

Dēpōnō, *ere, posuī, positum.* *To lay down, lay aside.* DEPOSE.

Dēpopulor, *āri, ātus sum.* *To ravage, lay waste.* DEPOPULATE.

Dēprecātor, *ōris, m.* *Pleader, spokesman, agent; eō dēprecātōre, by his intercession.* DEPRECATE.

Dēsignō, *āre, āvi, ātum.* *To designate, indicate.* DESIGNATE.

Dēsillō, *ire, uī, sultum.* *To leap out, leap forth, leap down.*

Dēsistō, *ere, stitī, stitum.* *To desist, cease.* DESIST.

Dēstringō, *ere, strinxī, strictum.* *To unsheathe, draw.*

Dēsum, esse, fui. To be wanting, to fail. (Followed by the Dative.)

Dēterreō, ēre, uī, itum. To deter.

Dētineō, ēre, uī, tentum. To detain.

Dētrimentum, ī, n. Detriment, loss, disadvantage. DETRIMENT.

Dicō, ere, dīxī, dictum. To say, speak, mention, state; to appoint; causam dicere, to plead a cause, make a defence.

Diēs, ēī, m. Day; time; multō diē, long after sunrise; ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs, the 28th of March.

Difficilis, e. Difficult.

Difficultās, ātis, f. Difficulty.

Diligenter, adv. Diligently, attentively. DILIGENT.

Diligentia, ae, f. Diligence, carefulness. DILIGENCE.

Dionysius, ii, m. Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse.

Discedō, ere, cessī, cessum. To withdraw, depart, swerve.

Discipulus, ī, m. Pupil. DISCIPLE.

Disiciō,¹ ere, jēcī, jectum. To break asunder, separate.

Dispergō, ere, sī, sum. To scatter, disperse. DISPERSE.

Dissentiō, ōnis, f. Dissension, disagreement. DISSENSION.

Distineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum. To keep apart, separate.

Diū, adv., comp. diūtius, sup. diūtissimē. Long, for a long time; quam diū, as long as.

Dives, itis, comp. divitior or ditior, sup. divitissimus or ditissimus. Rich, wealthy.

Divicō, ōnis, m. Divico, an Helvetian chieftain.

Dividō, ere, vīsī, visum. To divide, separate. DIVIDE.

Divinus, a, um. Divine, religious. DIVINE.

Divitiacus, ī, m. Divitiacus, an Aeduan chieftain.

Dō, dare, dedi, datum. To give; in fugam dare, to put to flight.

Doceō, ēre, uī, doctum. To teach, inform.

Doctrina, ae, f. Learning. DOCTRINE.

Doctus, a, um, part. and adj. Learned.

Dolor, ōris, m. Pain, grief.

Domus, ūs, f. House; home; domī, at home.

Dōnō, āre, āvī, ātum. To present.

Dōnum, ī, n. Gift, present.

Dormiō, ire, ivī or ii, itum. To sleep. DORMANT.

Druidēs, um, m. pl. Druids, the priests of the Gauls.

Dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum. To doubt, hesitate.

Ducentī, ae, a. Two hundred.

Dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum. To lead. DUCT.

Dum, conj. While; until.

Dumnorix, igis, m. Dumnorix, an Aeduan chieftain.

Duo, ae, o. 97, 175. Two.

Duodecim, indeclinable. Twelve.

Duodēquadrāgintā, indeclinable. Thirty-eight.

¹ Pronounced as if spelled *disjiciō*.

Duplex, leis. *Double.*

Duplicō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To double.*

DUPLICATE.

Dux, ducis, m. and f. *Leader.*

E.

Ē, prep. w. abl. *See Ex.*

Ēducō, ere, dūxī, ductum. *To lead out. EDUCÉ.*

Effeminō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To effeminate, enervate. EFFEMINATE.*

Efficiō, ere, fecī, factum. *To make, construct, effect, produce, occasion, bring about. EFFECT.*

Ego, mei, pers. pron. 102, 184. *I, myself.*

Ēgredior, ī, gressus sum. *To go out, go forth, depart, disembark. EGRESS.*

Ēgregiē, adv. *Excellently. EGREGIOUS.*

Ēgregius, a, um. *Distinguished. EGREGIOUS.*

Ēiciō,¹ ere, jeci, jectum. *To cast out, drive out, expel. EJECT.*

Enim,² conj. *For.*

Ēnūtiō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To announce, report, disclose.*

Eō, ire, ivi or ii, itum. 277, 295. *To go.*

Epistula, ae, f. *Letter, epistle. EPISTLE.*

Eques, itis, m. *Horseman; pl., horsemen, cavalry.*

Equester, tris, tre. *Equestrian; equestre proelium, cavalry engagement.*

Equitātus, ūs, m. *Cavalry.*

Equus, ī, m. *Horse.*

Eram. *See Sum.*

Ērigō, ere, rēxi, rēctum. *To erect, raise; sē ērigere, to lift one's self, rise. ERECT.*

Ērudiō, ire, ivi or ii, itum. *To instruct. ERUDITE.*

Esseda, ae, f. *War-chariot, chariot.*

Essedārius, ii, m. *Chariot-fighter, a warrior who fought in a war-chariot.*

Et, conj. *And; et . . . et, both . . . and.*

Etiam, adv. *Also, even.*

Etsi, conj. *Although.*

Ēvocō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To summon forth, call out. EVOKE.*

Ex, ē, prep. w. abl. *Out of, from, of.*

Excēdō, ere, cessī, cessum. *To withdraw. .*

Excitō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To excite, arouse. EXCITE.*

Excruciō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To torture. EXCRUCIATING.*

Excursiō, ōnis, f. *Sally, sortie. EXCURSION.*

Excūsō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To excuse.*

Exemplum, ī, n. *Example.*

Exeō, ire, ii, itum. *To go out, go forth, depart. EXIT.*

Exercitus, ūs, m. *Army.*

Exigō, ere, ēgī, āctum. *To complete, finish, end. EXACT.*

Exiguitās, ātis, f. *Smallness, small size.*

¹ Pronounced as if spelled ējiciō.

² Enim is posipositive; see page 274, foot-note.

Exiguus, a, um. *Restricted, limited, scanty, small, brief.*

Existimō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To think.*

Expeditus, a, um, *part. and adj.*
Unembarrassed, ready, quick.

EXPEDITE.

Expellō, ere, pulī, pulsum. *To expel, drive out.* EXPEL.

Explōrātor, ōris, m. *Scout.* EXPLORER.

Explōrō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To explore, investigate.* EXPLORE.

Expōnō, ere, posuī, positum. *To expose, arrange.* EXPOSE.

Expūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To take by storm, storm.*

Exspectō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To expect, await.* EXPECT.

Exspoliō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To rob, deprive.*

Exsul, ulis, m. *and f.* Exile.

Exterus, a, um, *comp.* exterior, *sup.* extrēmus and extimus. *Outer; extrēmus, extreme; outermost extremity of.*

Extrā, *prep. w. acc.* Beyond, outside of.

Exūrō, ere, ussi, ūstum. *To burn up, burn.*

F.

Fabius, ii, m. *Fabius, a celebrated general.*

Fābula, ae, f. *Fable, story.* FABLE.

Facile, *adv.* Easily. FACILE.

Facilis, e, *comp.* faciliior, *sup.* facillimus. *Easy.* FACILE.

Facinus, oris, n. *Misdeed, crime.*

Faciō, ere, fecī, factum. *To do, make; iter facere, to march; vim facere, to use force.* FACT.

Facultās, ātis, f. *Ability, opportunity, means; pl., means, wealth.* FACULTY.

Falsus, a, um. *False.*

Famēs, is, f. *Hunger.*

Familiāris, e. *Domestic, private; res familiāris, private property.*

Faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautum. *To favor.* (Followed by the Dative.)

Fēliciter, *adv.* Happily, successfully. FELICITOUS.

Fēlix, icis. *Happy, fortunate.*

Ferāx, ācis. *Productive, fertile.*

Ferē, *adv.* Almost, nearly.

Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum. 269, 292. *To bear, carry, present, bring; to endure; lēgem ferre, to propose a law.*

Fertilis, e. *Fertile.*

Fertilitās, ātis, f. *Fertility.*

Ferus, a, um. *Fierce, savage.*

Fidēlis, e. *Faithful.* FIDELITY.

Fidēs, ēi, f. *Faith, confidence, trust; pledge.*

Fidus, a, um. *Faithful.*

Figūra, ae, f. *Figure, form, shape.* FIGURE.

Filia, ae, f. *Daughter.* FILIAL.

Filius, ii, m. 32, 51, 5. *Son.* FILIAL.

Fingō, ere, finxī, fictum. *To form, fashion; vultum fingere, to control the countenance.*

Finiō, ire, ivī or ii, itum. *To bound, limit, end.* FINAL.

Finis, is, m. *and f.* End, limit; finēs, m. pl., boundaries; territory.

Finitimus, a, um. *Neighboring.*

Fiō, fieri, factus sum. 277, 294. *To be made; to happen, come to pass.*

Firmiter, adv. *Firmly.*

Flaccus, i, m. *Flaccus, a Roman name.*

Flāgitō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To demand.*

Flūctus, ūs, m. *Wave.* **FLUCTUATE.**

Flūmen, inis, n. *Stream, river.*

Fluō, ere, flūxī, flūxum. *To flow.*

Fore. See 140, 204, 2.

Forsitan, adv. *Perhaps.*

Fortis, e. *Brave.*

Fortiter, comp. *fortius, sup. fortissimē, adv.* *Bravely, valiantly.*

Fortitūdō, inis, f. *Fortitude, courage.* **FORTITUDE.**

Fortūna, ae, f. *Fortune.*

Fossa, ae, f. *Ditch, moat.* **FOSS.**

Frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctum. *To break, crush, wreck.* **FRACTURE.**

Frāter, tris, m. *Brother.* **FRA-
TERNAL.**

Fremitus, ūs, m. *Din, noise.*

Frētus, a, um. *Relying on, trusting to.*

Frūmentārius, a, um. *Pertaining to grain; rēs frūmentāria, grain, supplies.*

Frūmentātiō, ōnis, f. *Foraging, provisioning.*

Frūmentor, āri, ātus sum. *To gather grain, forage.*

Frūmentum, i, n. *Grain.*

Fuga, ae, f. *Flight; in fugam dare, to put to flight.*

Fugitivus, i, m. *Runaway, deserter.* **FUGITIVE.**

Funda, ae, f. *Sling.*

Futūra, a, um. See *Sum.*

G.

Gabinus, ii, m. *Gabinus, a Roman name.*

Gāius, ii, m. *Galus, a Roman name.*

Galba, ae, m. *Galba, a lieutenant under Caesar.*

Gallia, ae, f. *Gaul.*

Gallicus, a, um. *Gallie.*

Gallus, i, m. *Gaul, a Gaul.*

Gemma, ae, f. *Gem.*

Genāva, ae, f. *Geneva.*

Gener, erī, m. *Son-in-law.*

Gēns, gentis, f. *Race, tribe, nation.*

Genus, eris, n. *Kind, class.*

Germānia, ae, f. *Germany.*

Germānus, a, um. *German; Germānus, i, m., a German.*

Gerō, ere, gessi, gestum. *To bear, conduct, carry on, wage, do; to hold.*

Gladius, ii, m. *Sword.*

Glōria, ae, f. *Glory.*

Gnaeus, i, m. *Gnaeus, a Roman name.*

Graecia, ae, f. *Greece.*

Graecus, a, um. *Greek, Grecian.*

Grātia, ae, f. *Gratitude, favor; pl., thanks.* **GRACE.**

Grātulor, āri, ātus sum. *To congratulate; to thank. (Followed by the Dative.)*

Grātus, a, um. *Acceptable, pleasing.*

Gravis, e. *Heavy, severe, grave.* **GRAVE.**

Graviter, adv. *Severely, grievously.*

Gubernātor, ōris, m. *Pilot.* **GUBERNATORIAL.**

II.

- Habeō, ēre, uī, itum. *To have, hold, regard, regard as.*
 Habitō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To reside, live, dwell.*
 Hannibal, alis, m. *Hannibal, a celebrated Carthaginian general.*
 Harūdēs, um, m. pl. *The Harudes, a tribe of southwestern Germany.*
 Helvētīi, ōrum, m. pl. *The Helvetii or Helvetians, a people inhabiting Switzerland.*
 Helvētius, a, um. *Helvetian.*
 Hērēditās, ātis, f. *Inheritance.*
 Hērōdotus, ī, m. *Herodotus, a Greek historian.*
 Hiberna, ōrum, n. pl. *Winter quarters.*
 Hīc, haec, hōc. 102, 186. *This, this one, the latter, he, she, it.*
 Hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To winter, pass the winter.*
 Hiems, emis, f. *Winter.*
 Historia, ae, f. *History.*
 Homō, inis, m. and f. *Man, human being, person.*
 Honor, ōris, m. *Honor.*
 Hōra, ae, f. *Hour.*
 Hortor, āri, ātus sum. *To exhort, urge.*
 Hospes, itis, m. and f. *Guest; host.*
 Hostis, is, m. and f. *Enemy.*
 Hūc, adv. *Hither; to this place.*
 Hūmānitās, ātis, f. *Culture, refinement. HUMANITY.*
 Hūmānus, a, um. *Humane; civilized. HUMANE.*

I.

- Ibī, adv. *There.*
 Idem, eadem, idem. 102, 186. *Same, the same.*
 Idōneus, a, um. *Suitable, fit, proper.*
 Idūs, uum, f. pl. *Ides, the 15th of March, May, July and October; in other months the 13th.*
 Ieram, īi. See Eō.
 Igitur, conj. *Therefore.*
 Ignis, is, m. *Fire.*
 Ignōrō, āre, āvī, ātum. *Not to know, to be ignorant of.*
 Ignōsco, ere, nōvī, nōtum. *To pardon, forgive.*
 Ille, a, ud. 102, 186. *That, that one, the former, he, she, it.*
 Illō, adv. *Thither, to that place.*
 Impedimentum, ī, n. *Hinderance, embarrassment; pl., hinderances; baggage.*
 Impediō, ire, ivi or īi, itum. *To impede, hinder, embarrass. IMPEDE.*
 Impeditus, a, um, part. and adj. *Impeded, hindered, embarrassed; entangled. IMPEDED.*
 Impendeō, ēre. *To overhang. IMPEND. (Followed by the Dative.)*
 Imperātor, ōris, m. *General, commander.*
 Imperātum, ī, n. *Order, bidding, command; imperātum facere, to do one's bidding, execute one's order.*
 Imperitus, a, um. *Unskilful, ignorant.*
 Imperium, īi, n. *Command, sway, government, empire.*

Imperō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To order, command.*

Impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To obtain one's request.*

Impetus, ūs, m. *Attack, charge.*
IMPETUOUS.

Importō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To bring in, import.* IMPORT.

Improbis, a, um. *Wicked, unprincipled.*

Imprōvisus, a, um. *Unforeseen, unexpected; dē imprōvisō, unexpectedly, suddenly.*

In, prep. w. acc. and abl.; see page 58, foot-note 1. *In, into, to; for; over, across.*

Incendium, ī, n. *Fire, burning, conflagration.* INCENDIARY.

Incendō, ere, ī, cēsum. *To set on fire, fire, burn.* INCENSE.

Incitō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To impel, urge on, urge forward.* INCITE.

Incōgnitus, a, um. *Unknown.*

Incolō, ere, ul, cultum. *To inhabit, dwell.*

Incolūmis, e. *Unharmed, safe.*

Incommodum, ī, n. *Misfortune, disaster, defeat.*

Incrēdibilis, e. *Incredible.*

Inde, adv. *Thence, from that place.*

Indicō, ere, dixī, dictum. *To appoint.*

Indignus, a, um. *Unworthy.*

Indūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum. *To lead into, lead on, induce.* INDUCE.

Ineō, īre, īī, itum. *To go into, enter upon, begin, initiate, undertake.*

Inermis, a, um. *Unarmed.*

Infelix, icis. *Unhappy, unfortunate.*

Īnferō, ferre, intulī, illātum. *To bear into, wage into, wage against, wage upon, wage; to inflict upon, inflict.*

Īnficiō, ere, fēci, fectum. *To stain, color, dye.*

Īnfluō, ere, flūxī, flūxum. *To flow into, empty, flow.*

Ingrātus, a, um. *Ungrateful, unpleasant, disagreeable.*

Inimicus, ī, m. *Enemy, personal enemy.*

Iniquus, a, um. *Unequal; unfair, unjust; unfavorable, disadvantageous.*

Initium, īī, n. *Beginning.* INITIATE.

Injūria, ae, f. *Injury, wrong.* INJURY.

Inopia, ae, f. *Lack, want, need, scarcity.*

Inquam.¹ *I say; inquit, present: he says; perfect: he said, said he.*

Īnsequor, ī, secūtus sum. *To follow close upon, follow up, follow, pursue.*

Īnsignis, e. *Marked, signal, remarkable.*

Īnsimulō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To accuse.*

Īnsinuō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To introduce, insinuate; sū insin-*

¹ *Inquam* is a defective verb. It is used in a few parts only of the active voice.

- uare, *to make one's way, force one's self.* **INSINUATE.**
- Īnsistō, ere, stitī. *To stand, get a foothold.* **INSIST.**
- Īnstituō, ere, ui, ūtum. *To begin, proceed; to train, instruct.* **INSTITUTE.**
- Īnstō, āre, stitī, stātum. *To be near, be at hand.* **INSTANT.**
- Īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctum. *To construct, draw up, array; aciem instruere, to form the line of battle.*
- Īnsuētus, a, um. *Unaccustomed.*
- Insula, ae, f. *Island.*
- Integritās, ātis, f. *Integrity, uprightness.* **INTEGRITY.**
- Intellegō, ere, lēxi, lēctum. *To understand.* **INTELLECT.**
- Inter, prep. w. acc. *Among; inter sē, among themselves; with each other, with one another, together; inter sē dare, to exchange.*
- Intercedō, ere, cessī, cessum. *To come between, intervene.* **INTERCEDE.**
- Intercludō, ere, sī, sum. *To cut off.*
- Interdicō, ere, dixī, dictum. *To forbid, prohibit, exclude.* **INTERDICT.**
- Intereā, adv. *Meantime, in the meanwhile.*
- Intereō, ire, ii, itum. *To perish.*
- Interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum. *To kill, slay, put to death.*
- Interim, adv. *Meanwhile, in the mean time.*
- Interior, us, comp. adj. **86.** 166. *Interior, inner.*
- Intermittō, ere, misi, missum. *To send between; to intermit, interrupt; pass., to be brought between, to intervene.* **INTERMIT.**
- Interpōnō, ere, posui, positum. *To interpose, suggest, present.* **INTERPOSE.**
- Intersum, esse, fui. *To be between, intervene; interest, impersonal, it interests, concerns.* **INTEREST.**
- Intervallum, i, n. *Interval, space between.*
- Inūsitātus, a, um. *Unwonted, unfamiliar, strange.*
- Inūtilis, e. *Useless.*
- Inuitus, a, um. *Unwilling.*
- Ipsē, a, um. **102.** 186. *Self, he, she, it; Ille ipse, that very.*
- Irācundus, a, um. *Passionate, violent.*
- Irrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum. *To break in, rush in.*
- Irruptiō, ōnis, f. *A breaking in, an attack.* **IRRUPTION.**
- Is, ea, id. **102.** 186. *That, this, that one, this one, he, she, it.*
- Iste, a, ud. **102.** 186. *That of yours, that, that one, he, she, it.*
- Ita, adv. *So, in such a way, thus.*
- Ītalia, ae, f. *Italy.*
- Itaque, conj. *And so, therefore.*
- Item, adv. *Also, likewise.*
- Iter, itineris, n. *March, journey; way, route; magna itinera, forced marches; iter facere, to march.*

J.

Jaciō, ere, jēci, jactum. *To throw.*

Jam, adv. *Already, now.*

Jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussum. *To order, command.*

Jūdex, icis, m. and f. *Judge.*

Jūdicium, ii, n. *Judgment, decision.*

Jūdicō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To judge.*

Jugum, i, n. *Yoke; ridge, height.*

Jumentum, i, n. *Draught animal, beast of burden.*

Jūra, ae, m. *Jura, a mountain range in western Gaul.*

Jussī. See jubeō.

Jūstitia, ae, f. *Justice.*

Juvenis, is, m. and f. *Youth, a youth. JUVENILE.*

Juvō, āre, jūvi, jūtum. *To aid, help, assist.*

K.

Kalendae, ārum, f. pl. *Calends, the first day of the month; ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs, the 28th of March. CALENDAR.*

Karthāgō, inis, f. *Carthage.*

L.

Labiēnus, i, m. *Labienus, a lieutenant under Caesar.*

Labor, ōris, m. *Labor, toil, effort, exertion.*

Labōrō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To labor, struggle, to be in trouble. LABOR.*

Lacēssō, ere, sivi or sili, situm. *To harass, provoke, assail, attack.*

Lacrima, ae, f. *Tear.*

Lacrimō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To weep.*

Lacus, ōs, m. *Lake.*

Lapis, idis, m. *Stone.*

Largior, iri, itus sum. *To bestow, make gifts.*

Largiter, adv. *Largely, widely, extensively; largiter posse, to have extensive influence.*

Lātē, adv. *Widely; longē lātēque, far and wide.*

Latinus, i, m. *Latinus, king of the Laurentians in central Italy.*

Latinus, a, um. *Latin.*

Lātitudō, inis, f. *Width, breadth.*

LATITUDE.

Latrō, ōnis, m. *Robber, brigand.*

Lātus, a, um. *Broad, wide, extensive.*

Latus, eris, n. *Side.*

Laudō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To praise.*

LAUD.

Lāvinia, ae, f. *Latinia, daughter of King Latinus.*

Lēgatiō, ōnis, f. *Embassy.*

Lēgātus, i, m. *Ambassador; lieutenant. LEGATE.*

Legiō, ōnis, f. *Legion.*

Legō, ere, lēgi, lēctum. *To read.*

Lemannus, i, m. *Lemannus, Lemman, Lake of Geneva.*

Lēnitās, ātis, f. *Smoothness, gentleness.*

Leō, ōnis, m. *Lion.*

Levitās, ātis, f. *Levity, fickleness, impulsiveness. LEVITY.*

Lēx, lēgis, f. *Law.*

Lībenter, adv. *Willingly, gladly.*

Līber, bri, m. *Book.*

Līber, era, erum. *Free.*

Liberālītās, ātis, f. *Liberality.*

Liberi, òrum, *m. pl.* Children.
 Liberò, àre, àvi, àtum. *To liberate, free.* LIBERATE.
 Libertàs, àtis, *f.* Liberty, freedom. LIBERTY.
 Liceor, èri, itus sum. *To bid at auction.*
 Licet, ère, licuit, *impers.* It is lawful, is permitted, one may.
 Ligàrius, ii, *m.* Ligarius, a prominent Roman in whose behalf Cicero pleaded before Caesar.
 Liger, is, *m.* The Liger, a river in southwestern Gaul, now the Loire.
 Lingonès, um, *m. pl.* The Lingones, a tribe of central Gaul.
 Lingua, ae, *f.* Tongue, language.
 Liscus, i, *m.* Liscus, a chieftain of the Aedui.
 Litavicus, i, *m.* Litavicus, an Aeduan chieftain.
 Littera, ae, *f.* Letter; *pl.*, letters; a letter, epistle.
 Litus, oris, *n.* Shore.
 Locus, i, *m.*, *pl.* loca, òrum, *n.* Place, position. LOCAL.
 Longè, *adv.* Long, far, by far. LONG.
 Longinquus, a, um. Distant, remote.
 Longus, a, um. Long.
 Lúcius, ii, *m.* Lucius, a Roman name.
 Lûna, ae, *f.* Moon. LUNAR.
 Lutetia, ae, *f.* Lutetia, a town in central Gaul, now Paris.
 Lûx, lûcis, *f.* Light, daylight; prima lûx, daybreak.

M.

Magistràtus, ùs, *m.* Magistracy, magistrate.
 Māgnitūdō, inis, *f.* Size, magnitude, height. MAGNITUDE.
 Māgnus, a, um, *comp.* major, superlative. Great, large; numerous; loud; mājorès, *m. and f. pl.*, elders; ancestors, forefathers.
 Maleficium, ii, *n.* Mischief, harm.
 Mālō, mälle, mālui. 273, 293. *To prefer.*
 Mandò, àre, àvi, àtum. *To commission, order, entrust, consign, commit, betake.* MANDATE.
 Maneò, ère, mānsi, mānsum. *To remain.* MANSE.
 Manus, ùs, *f.* Hand; band; in manibus, in hand; at hand, close at hand.
 Mārcus, i, *m.* Marcus, a Roman name.
 Mare, is, *n.* Sea.
 Maritimus, a, um. Maritime, pertaining to the sea; òra maritima, sea-coast. MARITIME.
 Mātara, ae, *f.* Javelin, pike.
 Māter, tris, *f.* Mother.
 Māteria, ae, *f.* Timber. MATERIAL.
 Maticō, ònis, *m.* Matisco, a town in southwestern Gaul.
 Mātrimōnium, ii, *n.* Marriage, in mātrimōnium dúcere, to marry. MATRIMONY.
 Mātūrè, *adv.* Early, promptly. MATURE.

Mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To hasten.* MATURE.

Mātūrus, a, um. *Early.* MATURE.

Mausōlus, ī, m. *Mausolus, king of Caria.*

Māximē, sup. adv. *Most, very greatly, chiefly, especially.*

Māximus, a, um. *See māgnus.*

Medius, a, um. *Middle, middle of; 191, foot-note.*

Melodūnum, ī, n. *Melodunum, a town in central Gaul.*

Memoria, ae, f. *Memory, recollection.* MEMORY.

Menapli, ōrum, m. pl. *The Menapii, a tribe of northern Gaul.*

Mēns, mentis, f. *Mind, intellect.* MENTAL.

Mēnsis, is, m. *Month.*

Mercātor, ōris, m. *Merchant, trader.*

Meridiēs, ēī, m. *Midday, noon.* MERIDIAN.

Meritō, adv. *Deservedly.* MERIT.

Messālla, ae, m. *Messala, a Roman name.*

Mētiōr, īrī, mēnsus sum. *To measure, allot.*

Metō, ere, messuī, messum. *To reap, harvest, gather grain.*

Meus, a, um. 185. *My, mine.*

Miles, itis, m. and f. *Soldier.* MILITIA.

Militāris, e. *Military; rēs militāris, military affairs.*

Mille, pl. milia, lum, n. 247, foot-note. *Thousand; mille passūs, a thousand paces, a (Roman) mile.*

Minus, comp. adv. *Less; sup. minimē, least, very little, by no means.*

Mittō, ere, misi, missum. *To send.* MISSION.

Mōbilitās, ātis, f. *Mobility, rapidity.* MOBILITY.

Modestē, adv. *Modestly.* MODEST.

Modo, adv. *Only.*

Modus, ī, m. *Measure; manner.*

Molestē, adv. *With trouble; molestē ferre, to be vexed at, annoyed at.*

Moneō, ēre, ui, itum. *To advise, warn.*

Mōns, montis, m. *Mountain.* MOUNT.

Morini, ōrum, m. pl. *The Morini, a tribe of northern Gaul.*

Moror, āri, ātus sum. *To tarry, delay, wait.*

Mors, mortis, f. *Death.* MORTAL.

Mōtus, ūs, m. *Movement, motion.* MOTION.

Moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum. *To move, remove.* MOVE.

Mulier, eris, f. *Woman.*

Multitūdō, inis, f. *Multitude; the multitude, common people, populace.* MULTITUDE.

Multō, adv. *By much, by far.*

Multum, adv., comp. plūs, sup. plurimum. *Much.*

Multus, a, um, comp. plūs, n. (pl. plūrēs, plūra), sup. plurimus. *Much; many; multō diē, long after day break.*

Mūniō, irē, ivi or ii, itum. *To fortify.* MUNITION.

Mūnitiō, ōnis, f. *Fortification; opus mūnitiōnis, fortified work.* MUNITION.

Mūrus, ī, m. *Wall.*

N.

Nactus, a, um. See *nancīscor*.
 Nam, namque, *conj.* For; for indeed.

Nancīscor, ī, nactus sum. To get, obtain, secure.

Narbō, ōnis, m. Narbo, a town in southern Gaul.

Nātiō, ōnis, f. Nation.

Nātūra, ae, f. Nature.

Nauta, ae, m. Sailor.

Nāvālis, e. Naval.

Nāvigium, īi, n. Vessel, ship.

Nāvigō, āre, āvi, ātum. To sail. NAVIGATE.

Nāvis, is, f. Ship, vessel; nāvis longa, ship of war; nāvis onerāria, transport vessel, transport. NAVY.

-Ne, *conj.* Interrogative particle. See 106, 351, 1 and 2.

Nē, *adv.* and *conj.* With the Imperative or the Subjunctive of Desire, not; with the Subjunctive of Purpose, that not, lest; after words of fearing, lest, that.

Necesse, 286. Necessary.

Neglegō, ere, lēxi, lēctum. To neglect, disregard.

Negō, āre, āvi, ātum. To deny, refuse; to say not.

Negōtium, īi, n. Business, occupation; negōtium dare, to entrust a task or enterprise.

Nēmō,¹ inis, m. and f. No one, nobody.

Nepōs, ōtis, m. Grandson.

Nēquāquam, *adv.* By no means.
 Neque, *conj.* Neither, nor, and not; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.

Nervii, ōrum, m. pl. The Nervii, a tribe of northern Gaul.

Nēve, *conj.* Nor, and not.

Nex, necis, f. Death, putting to death.

Nihil, indeclinable, nihilum, ī, n. Nothing.

Nisi, *conj.* Unless.

Nōbilis, e. Noble, of high birth. NOBLE.

Nōbilitās, ātis, f. Nobility; the nobility, nobles. NOBILITY.

Noctū, *adv.* By night.

Nocturnus, a, um. Nocturnal, by night. NOCTURNAL.

Nōlō, nolle, nōlui, 273, 293. To be unwilling, not to be willing, not to wish.

Nōmen, inis, n. Name; suum nomine, on his own account. NOMINAL.

Nōminō, āre, āvi, ātum. To name. NOMINATE.

Nōn, *adv.* Not.

Nōndum, *adv.* Not yet.

Nōnne, *conj.* Interrogative particle. Not? See 106, 351, note 2.

Nōnnūllī, ae, a. Some.

Nōnnūquam, *adv.* Sometimes.

Nōnus, a, um. Ninth.

Nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtum. To become acquainted with; nōvī, I have become acquainted with. = I know.

¹ Nēmō generally wants the Genitive and Ablative; they are supplied by these cases of *nūllus*

Noster, tra, trum. 102, 185. *Our, ours.*

Nōtus, a, um, part. and adj. *Known.*

Novem, indeclinable. *Nine; decem novem, nineteen.*

Noviodūnum, i, n. *Noviodunum, a town of northwestern Gaul.*

Novus, a, um. *New; res novae, change of affairs, revolution; novissimum āgmen, rear.*

Nox, noctis, f. *Night.*

Nūbēs, is, f. *Cloud.*

Nūbō, ere, nūpsi, nūptum. *To veil one's self; to assume the bridal veil for = to marry.*

NUPTIAL. (Followed by the Dative.)

Nūdō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To bare, expose, strip.*

Nūllus, a, um. 45, 151. *Not any, no, none.*

Num, conj. Interrogative particle. For meaning in direct questions, see 106, 351, 1, note 3; in indirect questions, *whether.*

Numa, ae, m. *Numa, the second of the legendary kings of Rome.*

Numerus, i, m. *Number.*

Nunc, adv. *Now, at this time.*

Nūnquam, adv. *Never.*

Nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To announce.*

Nūntius, ii, m. *Messenger; tidings.*

Nūper, adv. *Recently, of late.*

Nūtrix, icis, f. *Nurse.*

O.

Ob, prep. w. acc. *On account of, for.*

Obiciō,¹ ere, jēci, jectum. *To throw against, throw up. OBJECT.*

Observō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To observe, keep, comply with. OBSERVE.*

Obses, idis, m. and f. *Hostage.*

Obseidō, ēre, sēdi, sessum. *To besiege.*

Obsidiō, ōnis, f. *Siege, blockade.*

Obsignō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To seal, sign and seal.*

Obtineō, ēre, ui, tentum. *To obtain, hold. OBTAIN.*

Occāsus, ūs, m. *Setting; solis occāsus, sun-set.*

Occidō, ere, i, sum. *To kill, slay.*

Occultō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To hide. OCCULT.*

Occupō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To occupy, seize, take possession of; to busy. OCCUPY.*

Ōceanus, i, m. *Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean.*

Octāvus, a, um. *Eighth. OCTAVE.*

Octo, indeclinable. *Eight.*

Octōdecim, indeclinable. *Eighteen.*

Octōdūrus, i, m. *Octodurus, a town in Gaul, now Martigny.*

Oculus, i, m. *The eye, sight.*

Ōdi, isse. *To hate, detest.*

Officium, ii, n. *Duty, allegiance. OFFICE.*

Omninō, adv. *In all, only.*

Omnis, e. *All.*

¹ Pronounced as if spelled objiciō.

Onerārius, a, um. *Pertaining to burdens, carrying cargoes; onerāria nāvis, a transport vessel, transport.*

Opera, ae, f. *Work; operam dare, to take pains, endeavor.*

Oportet, ēre, uit, *impers.* *It behooves, is proper, is necessary, is fitting; one ought.*

Oppidum, I, n. *Town.*

Opportūnus, a, um. *Opportune, appropriate. OPPORTUNE.*

Oppugnātiō, ōnis, f. *Assault, attack.*

Oppugnō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To assault, attack.*

Optimus, a, um. *See bonus.*

Opus, eris, n. *Work, task; art; operis mūnitiō, fortified work; magnō opere, greatly.*

Ōra, ae, f. *Coast.*

Ōrātiō, ōnis, f. *Oration, speech. ORATION.*

Ōrātor, ōris, m. *Orator.*

Orbis, is, m. *Circle, circuit; orbis terrae, orbis terrārum, the world. ORB.*

Ōrdō, inis, m. *Rank. ORDER.*

Orgetorix, igis, m. *Orgetorix, an Helvetian chieftain.*

Ōrnāmentum, ī, n. *Ornament, honor. ORNAMENT.*

Ōrō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To ask, beg, plead.*

Ostendō, ere, ī, tentum or tēsum. *To show, explain, make known, declare.*

P.

Pābulātiō, ōnis, f. *Foraging.*

Pābulum, ī, n. *Fodder.*

Paene, adv. *Almost, nearly.*

Paenitet, ēre, nit, *impers.* *I causes regret; mē paenitet, repent.*

Pāgus, i, m. *Division, canton.*

Pār, paris. *Equal, a match for*

Parātus, a, um, part. and adj. *Prepared, ready.*

Parcō, ere, peperci, parsum. *To spare. (Followed by the Dative.)*

Pāreō, ēre, uī, itum. *To obey. (Followed by the Dative.)*

Parō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To prepare*

Pars, partis, f. *Part, division, quarter, direction. PART.*

Passus, ūs, m. *Pace; mille passūs, a (Roman) mile; duo milia passuum, two miles.*

Pāstor, ōris, m. *Shepherd.*

Pater, tris, m. *Father. PATER NAL.*

Patienter, adv. *Patiently.*

Patior, ī, passus sum. *To suffer, permit.*

Patria, ae, f. *Native country, one's country, country.*

Pauci, ae, a. *Few.*

Paucitās, ātis, f. *Fewness, small number.*

Paulātim, adv. *Little by little, by degrees, gradually.*

Paulō, adv. *A little.*

Paulum, adv. *A little, somewhat*

Pāx, pācis, f. *Peace.*

Pedes, itis, m. *Foot-soldier; pl. foot-soldiers; infantry.*

Peditātus, ūs, m. *Infantry.*

Pedius, ii, m. *Pedius, a lieutenant under Caesar.*

Pellis, is, f. *Skin.*

Pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsum. *To drive, rout.*

- Pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsūm. *To weigh; to pay.*
- Per, prep. w. acc. *Through, by, over, by means of; on account of.*
- Perdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductum. *To lead through, extend, construct.*
- Perequitō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To ride through, ride.*
- Perfacilis, e. *Very easy.*
- Perferō, ferre, tuli, lātum. *To endure.*
- Perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum. *To accomplish. PERFECT.*
- Perfringō, ere, frēgi, frāctum. *To break through.*
- Perfuga, ae, m. *Deserter, fugitive.*
- Perfugiō, ere, fūgi. *To flee for refuge, flee, escape.*
- Periculōsus, a, um. *Perilous, dangerous. PERILOUS.*
- Periculum, i, n. *Peril, danger. PERIL.*
- Peritus, a, um. *Skilful, skilled, expert; with gen. skilled in.*
- Permaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūm. *To continue to remain, to remain. PERMANENT.*
- Permoveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtum. *To move, induce, influence; to disturb, daunt, alarm.*
- Perpetuus, a, um. *Perpetual, endless, uninterrupted; in perpetuum, for ever. PERPETUAL.*
- Perrumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptum. *To break through, force a passage, force one's way.*
- Persequor, ī, secūtus sum. *To follow up, pursue, persecute; to avenge. PERSECUTE.*
- Persevērō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To persevere, persist. PERSEVERE.*
- Persolvō, ere, ī, solūtum. *To pay.*
- Perspiciō, ere, spēxi, spectum. *To examine, investigate, perceive. PERSPICUOUS.*
- Persuadeō, ēre, si, sum. *To persuade.*
- Perterreō, ēre, ui, itum. *To terrify greatly, terrify, frighten.*
- Pertineō, ēre, ui, tentum. *To pertain, tend; to extend, reach. PERTAIN.*
- Perturbātiō, ōnis, f. *Disturbance, agitation. PERTURBATION.*
- Perturbō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To disturb, throw into confusion. PERTURB.*
- Perveniō, ire, vēni, ventum. *To arrive, come, reach.*
- Pēs, pedis, m. *Foot; pedibus, on foot; pedem referre, to retreat. PEDAL.*
- Petō, ere, ivi or ii, itum. *To seek, request, ask.*
- Phalanx, angis, f. *Phalanx, line.*
- Pilum, i, n. *Javelin, spear.*
- Pisistratus, ī, m. *Pisistratus, tyrant of Athens.*
- Pisō, ōnis, m. *Piso, a Roman name.*
- Placeō, ere, ui, itum. *To please. (Followed by the Dative.)*
- Plānitēs, ēi, f. *Plain.*
- Plānus, a, um. *Flat, level. PLANE.*
- Platō, ōnis, m. *Plato, a celebrated Greek philosopher.*
- Plēbs, ēbis, f. *The common people, populace. PLEBEIAN.*
- Plēnus, a, um. *Full.*

Plêrumque, adv. *As a general thing, generally.*

Plêrusque, aque, umque. *The larger or greater part, the most.*

Plûs, plûris, n., pl. plûrês, plûra, *comp. of multus. More; several. PLURAL.*

Plûs, adv., comp. of multum, sup. plurimum. *More; plûs posse, to have greater power or influence; plurimum posse, to have very great power or influence.*

Pœna, ae, f. *Penalty, punishment, satisfaction.*

Pœta, ae, m. *Poet.* [ise.

Polliceor, êri, itus sum. *To promise.*

Pompêius, ii, m. *Pompey, a celebrated general and statesman.*

Pônô, ere, posui, positum. *To place; castra pônere, to pitch a camp, encamp.*

Pôns, pontis, m. *Bridge.*

Populatiô, ônis, f. *Ravaging, devastating, laying waste.*

Populus, i, m. *People, a people.*

Porta, ae, f. *Gate. PORTAL.*

Portô, âre, âvi, âtum. *To carry, bring, take.*

Portôrium, ii, n. *Tax, toll, duty on imports or exports.*

Portus, ûs, m. *Port, harbor. PORT.*

Poscô, ere, poposci. *To demand.*

Possum, posse, potui. 269, 290. *To be able; can; multum posse, to have great power or influence.*

Post, adv. *After, afterward.*

Post, prep. w. acc. *After, behind.*

Posteâ, adv. *Afterward.*

Posteâquam, conj. *After.*

Posterus, a, um, comp. *posterior sup. postrêmus and postumus.*

Subsequent, following, next.

Postquam, conj. *After.*

Postridiê, adv. *On the following day.*

Postulô, âre, âvi, âtum. *To demand.*

Potêns, entis. *Powerful. POTENT.*

Potentâtus, ûs, m. *Power, dominion, control.*

Potentia, ae, f. *Power, influence. POTENCY.*

Poteram. *See possum.*

Potestâs, âtis, f. *Power.*

Potior, iri, itus sum. *To gain — take — obtain possession of, to obtain.*

Potui. *See possum.*

Praecedô, ere, cessi, cessum. *To surpass. PRECEDE.*

Praecept, ipitis. *Precipitate, headlong. PRECIPITATE.*

Praecipio, ere, cêpi, ceptum. *To enjoin upon, direct. PRECEPT.*

Praecipitô, âre, âvi, âtum. *To precipitate, throw, hurl. PRECIPITATE.*

Praedicô, âre, âvi, âtum. *To assert, state. PREDICATE.*

Praeficiô, ere, fêci, fectum. *To place in command of, in charge of, over. (Followed by the Dative.)*

Praemittô, ere, misi, missum. *To send on — ahead — forward — in advance.*

Praemium, ii, n. *Reward. PREMIUM.*

Praepônô, ere, posui, positum. *To place over or in command of. (Followed by the Dative.)*

Praesēns, entis. Present.

Praesentia, ae, f. Presence; in praesentiā, at present, for the present.

Praesidium, li, n. Garrison, defence, guard, safeguard, protection.

Praestō, āre, stitī, stitum or stātum. To stand before, excel; to furnish, discharge, fulfil, present, manifest, show, put forth.

Praesum, esse, fui. To be in charge or command of, to superintend. (Followed by the Dative.)

Praeter, prep. w. acc. Except.

Praeterquam, adv. Except.

Praetor, ōris, m. Praetor, a Roman magistrate.

Premō, ere, pressi, pressum. To press, press hard, distress. PRESS.

Pretiosus, a, um. Precious, valuable. PRECIOUS.

Pretium, ii, n. Price.

Primō, adv. First, at first. PRIME.

Primum, sup. adv., pos. wanting, comp. prius. First. PRIME.

Primus, a, um, sup., pos. wanting, comp. prior. First; the first part of; primum āgmen, the van; prima lūx, daybreak. PRIME.

Princeps, ipis. First; princeps, ipis, m., leader, chief, chieftain. PRINCIPAL.

Principātus, ūs, m. Sovereignty, dominion.

Prior, us, comp. adj., pos. wanting, sup. primus. Former.

Pristinus, a, um. Ancient, primitive. PRISTINE.

Prius, comp. adv., pos. wanting, sup. primum. Before, sooner; prius quam, sooner than, before.

Priusquam, conj. Before.

Privātum, adv. Privately, in a private capacity. PRIVATE.

Privātus, a, um, part and adj. Private; privātus, i, m., private citizen. PRIVATE.

Privō, āre, āvī, ātum. To deprive.

Prō, prep. w. abl. For; in proportion to, considering; before.

Probō, āre, āvī, ātum. To prove; to approve. PROBATE.

Prōcēdō, ere, cessi, cessum. To proceed, advance. PROCEED.

Procillus, i, m. Procillus, a prominent Gaul.

Prōditio, ōnis, f. Treason.

Prōditor, ōris, m. Traitor.

Prōdō, ere, didi, ditum. To betray.

Prōducō, ere, dūxi, ductum. To lead forth, lead on; to protract. PRODUCE.

Proelior, āri, ātus sum. To fight.

Proelium, ii, n. Battle, engagement.

Profectio, ōnis, f. Departure, starting, setting out.

Prōficiō, ere, fēci, fectum. To accomplish, effect.

Proficiscor, i, profectus sum. To start, set out, depart, proceed.

Profugiō, ere, fūgi. To flee away, flee, escape.

Prōgredior, i, gressus sum. To go forward, advance. PROGRESS.

Prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum. *To prohibit, check, prevent, keep.*
PROHIBIT.

Prōiciō,¹ ere, jēcī, jectum. *To cast forth, throw forward, throw down.* **PROJECT.**

Prōmissus, a, um, *part. and adj.*
Hanging down, long.

Prōnūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To proclaim, state.* **PRONOUNCE.**

Prope, *adv., comp. propius, sup. proximē. Near.*

Prope, *prep. w. acc. Near.*

Propello, ere, ulī, ulsum. *To drive forward, repulse, rout.* **PROPEL.**

Propior, us, *comp. adj., pos. wanting, sup. proximus. Nearer.*

Prōponō, ere, posuī, positum. *To set forth.* **PROPOSE.**

Propter, *prep. w. acc. On account of.*

Propterea, *adv. For this reason; propterea quod, for this reason, that; because.*

Prōpulsō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To repulse.*

Prōra, *ae, f. Prow.*

Prōsequor, ī, secūtus sum. *To follow up, pursue.* **PROSECUTE.**

Prōspiciō, ere, spēcī, spectrum. *To look forward; to look out for. (Followed by the Dative.)*
PROSPECT.

Prōvideō, ēre, vidī, vīsum. *To look out for, provide. (Followed by the Dative.)* **PROVIDE.**

Prōvincia, *ae, f. Province.*

Prōximē, *sup. adv., pos. prope. Most recently, last.*

Prōximus, a, um, *sup. adj., pos. wanting, comp. propior. Nearest, next, adjacent.*

Pūblicus, a, um. *Public.*

Publius, ī, m. *Publius, a Roman name.*

Pudor, ōris, m. *Shame, respect.*

Puella, *ae, f. Girl.*

Puer, erī, m. *Boy.* **PUERILE.**

Pugna, *ae, f. Fight, fighting, battle.*

Pūgnō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To fight.*

Pulcher, chra, chrum. *Beautiful.*

Pulsus, a, um. *See pellō.*

Pulvis, eris, m. *Dust.*

Putō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To think.*

Q.

Quaerō, ere, sīvī or slii, situm. *To inquire, ask, seek.* **QUEST.**

Quam, *adv. How; w. sup., as . . . as possible; quam primum, as soon as possible.*

Quam, *conj. Than.*

Quantus, a, um. *How great; as great.*

Quārē, *conj. Wherefore, why.*

Quārtus, a, um. *Fourth; quartus decimus, fourteenth.*

Quattuor, *indeclinable. Four.*

-Que, *conj. enclitic. 103. And.*

Queror, ī, questus sum. *To complain.*

Quī, quae, quod. **106, 187. Who, that, which.**

Quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam. **106, 190. A certain, a certain one, some.**

Quin, *conj. That not, but, that.*

¹ Pronounced as if spelled prōjiciō.

Quindecim, *indeclinable. Fifteen.*

Quingenti, *ae, a. Five hundred.*

Quini, *ae, a. 97, 172, 3. Five by five, five each, five.*

Quinque, *indeclinable. Five.*

Quintus, *a, um. Fifth; ante diem quintum Kalendās Apriles, the 28th day of March.*

Quintus, *i, m. Quintus, a Roman name.*

Quis, quae, quid, *interrog. pron. 106, 188. Who, what, which?*

Quis, quae, quid, *indef. pron. 106, 190. One, any one, anything.*

Quisquam, quaequam, quicquam, *indef. pron. Any, anyone.*

Quisque, quaeque, quodque and quidque, *indef. pron. Each, every, each one, every one.*

Quō, *adv. Whither, to which place, to what place.*

Quō, *conj. That; quō minus, that not, so that not.*

Quoad, *conj. Until.*

Quod, *conj. That; because.*

Quoque, *adv. Also.*

Quot, *indeclinable. How many.*

R.

Rapina, *ae, f. Robbery, pillaging. RAPINE.*

Ratiō, *ōnis, f. Reasoning, reason; account, reckoning; method, way.*

Rebelliō, *ōnis, f. Rebellion.*

Receptus, *ūs, m. Retreat.*

Recipiō, *ere, cēpī, ceptum. To recover, retake, betake; to re-*

ceive; sē recipere, to retire, return, betake one's self.

Recūsō, *āre, āvi, ātum. To reject.*

Reddō, *ere, didi, ditum. To give back, restore, return.*

Redeō, *ire, li, itum. To go back, return.*

Redimō, *ere, ēmi, ēmptum. To buy up, buy, purchase. REDEEM.*

Reditiō, *ōnis, f. Going back, return.*

Reditus, *ūs, m. Return.*

Reducō, *ere, dūxi, ductum. To lead back.*

Referō, *ferre, rettulī, relātum. To draw back, bring back; pedem referre, to retreat.*

Reficiō, *ere, fēcī, sectum. To repair.*

Refugiō, *ere, fūgi. To flee back, flee. REFUGE.*

Rēgina, *ae, f. Queen.*

Regiō, *ōnis, f. Direction; region. REGION.*

Rēgnō, *āre, āvi, ātum. To reign, rule. REIGN.*

Rēgnum, *i, n. Kingdom, regal power. REIGN.*

Regō, *ere, rēxi, rēctum. To rule.*

Rēiciō,¹ *ere, jēcī, jectum. To drive back, repulse. REJECT.*

Relinquō, *ere, liqui, lictum. To leave. RELINQUISH.*

Reliquus, *a, um. Remaining, the rest of, the other, left.*

Remaneō, *ēre, mānsi, mānsum. To remain.*

Rēmi, *ōrum, m. pl. The Remi, a tribe of northern Gaul.*

¹ Pronounced as if spelled *rējiciō*.

Reminiscor, i. *To remember.* REMINISCENCE.

Removeō, ēre, mōvi, mōtum. *To remove.*

Rēmus, i, m. *Oar.*

Renovō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To renew.* RENOVATE.

Renūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To report.* RENOUNCE.

Repellō, ere, reppuli, repulsum. *To drive back, repel, repulse.* REPEL.

Reperiō, ire, repperi, repertum. *To find, discover.*

Repetō, ere, ivi, or ii, itum. *To seek, exact.* REPEAT.

Reportō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To carry back.* REPORT.

Rēs, rēi, f. *Thing, affair; reason; rēs militāris, military affairs.*

Resciscō, ere, scivi or scii, scitum. *To learn, ascertain.*

Respiciō, ere, spēxi, spectrum. *To regard, look upon.* RESPECT.

Respondeō, ēre, i, spōnsum. *To answer.* RESPOND.

Restituō, ere, ui, ūtum. *To restore.* RESTITUTION.

Ratineō, ēre, ui, tentum. *To retain, keep.* RETAIN.

Rettuli. *See referō.*

Revertor, i, reverti, reversum.¹ *To return.* REVERT.

Rēx, rēgis, m. *King.* REGAL.

Rhēnus, i, m. *The Rhine.*

Ruodanus, i, m. *The Rhone.*

Ripa, ae, f. *Bank.* RIPARIAN.

Rōbur, oris, n. *Oak.*

Rogō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To ask.*

Rōma, ae, f. *Rome.*

Rōmānus, a, um. *Roman; Rōmānus, i, m., a Roman.*

Rōmulus, i, m. *Romulus, the legendary founder of Rome.*

Rota, ae, f. *Wheel.* ROTATE.

Rūmor, oris, m. *Rumor, report.*

Rūrsus, adv. *Again.*

S.

Sabinus, i, m. *Sabinus, a lieutenant under Caesar.*

Sacrificium, ii, n. *Sacrifice.*

Saepe, adv. *Often.*

Sagitta, ae, f. *Arrow.*

Salus, ūtis, f. *Safety, salvation, escape.*

Santonēs, um, m. pl. *The Santones or Santoni, a tribe of central Gaul.*

Sānus, a, um. *Sound, sane.* SANE.

Sapiēns, entis. *Wise.*

Sapienter, adv. *Wisely.*

Sapientia, ae, f. *Wisdom.*

Satis, adv. *Enough; satis habere or dūcere, to regard it as sufficient.*

Scapha, ae, f. *Skiff, boat.*

Schola, ae, f. *School.*

Scientia, ae, f. *Knowledge, skill.* SCIENCE.

Sciō, ire, ivi or ii, itum. *To know.*

Scribō, ere, scripsi, scriptum. *To write.* SCRIBE.

¹ *Revertor* is deponent in the present system. The other forms are in the active voice.

Secundus, a, um. *Second.*

Sed, conj. *But.*

Sēdēs, is, f. *Seat, abode; locus*
 āc sēdēs, *place of abode.* SEAT.

Sēditiōsus, a, um. *Seditious.*

Segusiāni, ōrum, m. pl. *The Se-*
gusiani, a tribe of southeastern
Gaul.

Sēmentis, is, f. *Sowing, planting.*

Semper, adv. *Always, ever.*

Senātus, ūs, m. *Senate.*

Sēni, ae, a. 97, 172, 3. *Six by six,*
six each, six.

Senonēs, um, m. pl. *The Senones,*
a tribe of central Gaul.

Sententia, ae, f. *Thought, opinion,*
plan. SENTENCE.

Sentiō, ire, sēnsi, sēnsū. *To*
think. SENSE.

Septem, indeclinable. *Seven.*

Septimus, a, um. *Seventh.*

Sepultūra, ae, f. *Burial.* SEPUL-
 TURE.

Sēquani, ōrum, m. pl. *The Se-*
quani or Sequanians, a tribe of
eastern Gaul.

Sēquanus, a, um. *Sequanian;*
 Sēquanus, i, m., *a Sequanian,*
one of the Sequani.

Sequor, i, secūtus sum. *To fol-*
low. SEQUENCE.

Sermō, ōnis, m. *Discourse, con-*
versation. SERMON.

Serviō, ire, ivi or ii, itum. *To*
serve, subserve, be devoted to.
 SERVE.

Servitūs, ūtis, f. *Servitude, slav-*
ery. SERVITUDE.

Servō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To keep,*
preserve.

Servus, i, m. *Slave.* SERVE.

Sēsē. See 102, 184, 4.

Seu, conj. *Or if; seu . . . sive,*
either . . . or.

Sevērus, a, um. *Severe.*

Sex, indeclinable. *Six.*

Sexāgintā, indeclinable. *Sixty.*

Sextus, a, um. *Sixth.*

Si, conj. *If.*

Sicilia, ae, f. *Sicily.*

Significō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To*
signify, indicate. SIGNIFY.

Signum, i, n. *Standard; signa*
ferre, to carry the standards =
to advance. SIGN.

Silva, ae, f. *Wood, forest.* SYL-
 VAN.

Similis, e. *Like.* SIMILAR.

Simpliciter, adv. *Simply.*

Simul, simul atque, conj. *As*
soon as.

Sin, conj. *But if.*

Sincērē, adv. *Truthfully.* SIN-
 CERE.

Sine, prep. w. abl. *Without.*

Singularis, e. *Single, singly, in-*
dividual, separate; singular,
remarkable. SINGULAR.

Sive, conj. *Or if; sive . . .*
sive, either . . . or.

Socer, eri, m. *Father-in-law.*

Sōcratēs, is, m. *Socrates, a cele-*
brated Greek philosopher.

Sōl, sōlis, m. *Sun.*

Sōlum, adv. *Only, alone.*

Solvō, ere, i, solūtum. *To loose;*
with nāvēs expressed or under-
stood, to set sail. SOLVE.

Spatium, ii, n. *Space, interval,*
distance; time. SPACE.

Speciēs, ēi, f. *Look, appearance.*

Spēs, spēi, f. *Hope.*

Spiritus, ūs, m. *Breath; pl., airs,*
haughtiness. SPIRIT.

Spoliō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To despoil, rob, deprive.* SPOIL.

Spōns, spontis, *f.* *Used in gen. and abl. sing. only.* Sponte, suā sponte, *by one's own agency, by one's self, unassisted.*

Stabilitās, ātis, *f.* *Stability, firmness.* STABILITY.

Statim, *adv.* *Immediately.*

Statiō, ōnis, *f.* *Station, post, guard.* STATION.

Statuō, ere, uī, ūtum. *To determine, decide.*

Stipendium, ii, *n.* *Tax, tribute.* STIPEND.

Stō, āre, steti, stātum. *To stand.*

Streptus, ūs, *m.* *Din, noise.*

Studeō, ēre, uī. *To desire.* STUDY. (Followed by the Dative.)

Studium, ii, *n.* *Desire, zeal.* STUDY.

Sub, *prep. w. acc. and abl.* *Under, up to, towards.*

Subducō, ere, dūxī, ductum. *To draw up; to withdraw, lead off.*

Subeō, ire, ii, itum. *To undergo.*

Subiciō,¹ ere, jēcī, jectum. *To throw under, cast under, throw, thrust; to subject.* SUBJECT.

Subitō, *adv.* *Suddenly.*

Sublātus, a, um. *See tollō.*

Sublevō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To assist, support.*

Subministrō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To furnish, supply.*

Submittō, ere, misī, missum. *To send up to, send.* SUBMIT.

Submoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum. *To remove, dislodge.*

Subsequor, i, secūtus sum. *To follow close upon, follow.* SUBSEQUENT.

Subsidium, ii, *n.* *Support, reënforgement, aid.* SUBSIDIARY.

Subsistō, ere, stitī. *To make a stand; audācius subsistere, to make a bolder stand.* SUBSIST.

Subveniō, ire, vēni, ventum. *To come to the help of, succor, aid.*

Succēdō, ere, cessī, cessum. *To go up, come up, approach, succeed.* SUCCEED.

Sudēs, is, *f.* *Stake.*

Suebi, ōrum, *m. pl.* *The Suebi, Sueri or Suabians, a powerful German tribe.*

Suessiōnēs, um, *m. pl.* *The Suessiones, a tribe of northern Gaul.*

Sui. 102, 184. *Of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves, of him, of her, of it, of them.*

Sulla, ae, *m.* *Sulla, a celebrated Roman general and statesman.*

Sulpicius, ii, *m.* *Sulpicius, a lieutenant under Caesar.*

Sum, esse, fui. 140, 204. *To be.*

Summa, ae, *f.* *Sum, sum total, total.* SUM.

Summus, a, um, *sup. of superus.* *Highest, greatest; the summit of, top of.*

Sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum. *To take.*

Sūmptus, ūs, *m.* *Expense.*

Superbus, a, um. *Proud.* SUPERB.

Superior, us, *comp. of superus.* *Upper, higher; superior; previous.*

¹ Pronounced as if spelled *subjiciō*.

Superō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To surpass; to conquer.*

Supersum, esse, fui. *To survive.*

Superus, a, um, *comp.* superior, *sup.* suprēmus and summus. *Upper.* See superior and summus.

Supplicātiō, ōnis, *f.* Thanksgiving.

Supplicium, ii, *n.* Punishment.

Suprā, *adv.* Above.

Suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum. *To take up, undertake.*

Suspiciō, ōnis, *f.* Suspicion.

Suspikor, āri, ātus sum. *To suspect.*

Sustineō, ēre, uī, tentum. *To sustain, resist, withstand.* SUSTAIN.

Suus, a, um. *His, her, hers, its, their.*

T.

Tabula, ae, *f.* Table, tablet, record, document. TABLE.

Taceō, ēre, uī, itum. *To be silent, to keep silent.* TACIT.

Tam, *adv.* So, to such an extent.

Tamen, *adv.* Yet, still, nevertheless.

Tamesis, is, *m.* Thames.

Tametsi, *conj.* Although.

Tantus, a, um. *So great; as great.*

Tardō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To retard, check, hinder, impede.* TARDY.

Telum, i, *n.* Dart, weapon.

Temerārius, a, um. *Rash.*

Temere, *adv.* Rashly, unnecessarily.

Temperantia, ae, *f.* Temperance, self-control. TEMPERANCE.

Tempestās, ātis, *f.* Weather; tempest, storm. TEMPEST.

Templum, i, *n.* Temple.

Tempus, oris, *n.* Time. [*restrain.*]

Teneō, ēre, uī, tentum. *To hold,*

Tentō, āre, āvī, ātum. *To try.*

Tenuis, e. *Thin; feeble.*

Tergum, i, *n.* Back; terga vertere, *to turn the back = to retreat, flee.*

Terra, ae, *f.* Earth; land.

Terreō, ēre, uī, itum. *To terrify, frighten.* TERROR.

Terror, ōris, *m.* Terror, dread.

Tertius, a, um. *Third.*

Testāmentum, i, *n.* Will. TESTAMENT.

Testis, is, *m. and f.* Witness.

Tigurinus, i, *m.* Tigurinus, one of the four cantons of the Helvetii.

Timeō, ēre, uī. *To fear.* TIMID.

Timor, ōris, *m.* Fear. TIMID.

Titūrius, ii, *m.* Titurius, a lieutenant under Caesar.

Titus, i, *m.* Titus, a Roman name.

Tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum. *To lift up; to remove, take away; to exalt, encourage.*

Tolōsa, ae, *f.* Tolosa, a town in southern Gaul.

Tormentum, i, *n.* A military engine for throwing heavy missiles.

Tōtus, a, um. 43, 151. *All, the whole of.* TOTAL.

Trādō, ere, didī, ditum. *To give up, surrender.* TRADITION.

Trāgula, ae, *f.* Javelin, dart.

Trājectus, ūs, m. *Passage, crossing.*

Trānō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To swim across.*

Trāns, prep. w. acc. *Across, over, beyond.*

Trānsducō, ere, dūxī, ductum. *To lead across, lead, conduct.*

Trānsēō, ire, ii, itum. *To go over, cross.* TRANSIT.

Trānsiciō,¹ ere, jēcī, jectum. *To pierce, transfy.*

Transportō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To carry over, take over, bring over, transport.* TRANSPORT.

Trēs, tria. 97, 173. *Three.*

Trēveri, ōrum, m. pl. *The Treveri, a tribe of northeastern Gaul.*

Tribūnus, i, m. *Tribune, one of the six principal officers of the legion.*

Triduum, i, n. *Three days, space of three days.*

Trigintā, indeclinable. *Thirty.*

Trīnī, ae, a. 97, 172, 3. *Three by three, three each, threefold, triple, three.*

Triplex, icis. *Threefold, triple.* TRIPLE.

Tū, tuī. 102, 184. *Thou, you.*

Tullia, ae, f. *Tullia, a Roman name.*

Tum, adv. *Then.*

Turma, ae, f. *Troop.*

Turris, is, f. *Tower.*

Tūtō, adv. *Safely.*

Tūtus, a, um. *Safe.*

Tuus, a, um. 102, 185. *Thy, thine, your, yours.*

Tyrannus, i, m. *Tyrant.*

U.

Ubi, adv. and conj. *Where; when.*

Ubii, ōrum, m. pl. *The Ubii, a tribe of western Germany.*

Uleiscor, i, ultus sum. *To take vengeance on, punish; to avenge.*

Ūllus, a, um. 45, 151. *Any, any one.*

Ūterior, us, comp. adj. 86, 166. *Farther; Gallia Ūterior, Farther Gaul, Transalpine Gaul.*

Ūnā, adv. *Together.*

Unde, adv. *Whence, from which place, from which.*

Ūndecimus, a, um. *Eleventh.*

Undique, adv. *On every side, on all sides; from every side, from all sides.*

Ūniversus, a, um. *All, all together.* UNIVERSE.

Unquam, adv. *Ever, at any time.*

Ūnus, a, um. 97, 175. *One, single.* UNIT.

Urbs, urbis, f. *City.* URBANE.

Usipetēs, um, m. pl. *The Usipetes, a tribe of northwestern Germany.*

Usque, adv. *Even.*

Ūsus, ūs, m. *Use, usage, experience; advantage.* USE.

Ut, utī, conj. *That, in order that.*

Ut, adv. *As.*

Uter, tra, trum. 45, 151. *Which (of two).*

Uterque, utraque, utrumque, inflected like uter. *Each; both.*

Ūtills, e. *Useful.* UTILITY.

¹ Pronounced as if spelled trānsjiciō.

Ūtilitās, ātis, *f.* Usefulness; interest, expediency. UTILITY.

Utinam, interj. *O that! would that!*

Ūtor, ī, ūsus sum. *To use.*

Utrum, conj. *Whether; utrum . . . an, whether . . . or.*

Uxor, ōris, *f.* Wife.

V.

Vacō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To be without, be free from; to be vacant, empty, unoccupied. VACATE.*

Vacuus, a, um. *Vacant, empty, deserted, abandoned.*

Vadum, ī, *n.* Ford; shoal.

Valeō, ēre, uī, itum. *To avail, prevail, have force or influence.*

Vallum, ī, *n.* Rampart.

Vastō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To lay waste.*

-Ve, conj. enclitic.¹ *Or.*

Vectigal, ālis, *n.* Tax; revenue.

Vel, conj. *Either; or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or.*

Vellem. See volō.

Veneti, ōrum, *m. pl.* The Veneti, a tribe of western Gaul.

Venetia, ae, *f.* Venetia, the country of the Veneti.

Veniō, ire, vēnī, ventum. *To come, arrive.*

Ventus, ī, *m.* Wind.

Vēr, vēris, *n.* Spring. VER-NAL.

Veragrī, ōrum, *m. pl.* The Veragrī, a tribe of southeastern Gaul.

Verbigēnus, ī, *m.* Verbigenus,

one of the four cantons of the Helvetii.

Verbum, ī, *n.* Word. VERB.

Vercingetorix, igis, *m.* Vercingetorix, a Gallic chieftain.

Vergobretus, ī, *m.* Vergobretus, the title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui.

Vērō, adv. and conj. *In truth, indeed; but.*

Versor, āri, ātus sum. *To be busied, occupied, engaged. VERSED.*

Vertō, ere, ī, sum. *To turn; terga vertere, to turn the back = to retreat, flee.*

Vērūm, ī, *n.* Truth.

Vērus, a, um. True.

Vesontio, ōnis, *m.* Vesontio, a town in eastern Gaul, now Besançon.

Vesper, erī, *m.* Evening.

Vester, tra, trum. 102, 185. Your, yours.

Vestio, ire, ivī or ii, itum. *To clothe.*

Veterānus, a, um. Veteran.

Vetus, eris. Old, ancient; former.

Via, ae, *f.* Way.

Viātor, ōris, *m.* Traveller.

Vicis, gen., nom. wanting, *f.* Turn; in vicem, in turn.

Victor, ōris, *m.* Conqueror.

Victōria, ae, *f.* Victory.

Victōria, ae, *f.* Victoria.

Vicus, ī, *m.* Village.

Videō, ēre, vidī, visum. *To see.*

Videor, erī, visus sum.² *To seem.*

Vigilla, ae, *f.* Watch.³ VIGIL.

Viginti, indeclinable. Twenty.

¹ See 103, foot-note 2.

² See 274.

³ See 276.

Vinciō, ire, vinxi, vinetum. *To bind, confine.*

Vincō, ere, vici, victum. *To conquer.*

Vinculum, i, n. *Fetter, bond, chain.*

Vindex, icis, m. and f. *Defender.*

Vir, viri, m. *Man.*

Virgō, inis, f. *Maiden. VIRGIN.*

Virtus, ūtis, f. *Virtue, valor, courage, bravery. VIRTUE.*

Vis, vis, f. *Force, violence; vim facere, to use violence; virēs, ium, pl., strength.*

Visus, a, um. *See videō.*

Vita, ae, f. *Life. VITAL.*

Vitō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To avoid, shun.*

Vitrum, i, n. *Woad, a plant used for dyeing blue.*

Vivō, ere, vixi, victum. *To live.*

Vocō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To call, summon.*

Volō, velle, volui. **273, 293.** *To wish, to be willing.*

Voluntas, ātis, f. *Wish, goodwill, consent. VOLUNTARY.*

Volusēnus, i, m. *Volusenus, an officer in Caesar's army.*

Vōx, vōcis, f. *Voice, utterance. VOICE.*

Vulgō, adv. *Commonly, as a general thing, universally.*

Vulnerō, āre, āvi, ātum. *To wound.*

Vulnus, eris, n. *Wound.*

Vultis. *See volo.*

Vultus, ūs, m. *Countenance, face; vultum fingere, to control the countenance.*

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

A. See page 18, foot-note 4.

Able, to be able. *Possum, posse, potui.* 269, 290.

About, concerning. *Dē, prep. w. abl.* About, around, *circum, prep. w. acc.*

Above. *Suprā, adv.*

Acceptable. *Grātus, a, um; acceptus, a, um.*

Accomplish. *Perficiō, ere, feci, factum; cōficiō, ere, feci, factum.*

Accordance, in accordance with. Often expressed by the Ablative. 158, 413.

Accuse. *Accūsō, āre, āvi, ātum; insimulō, āre, āvi, ātum.* 285.

Across, over. *In, w. abl.* To lead across, *trānsducō, ere, cūxi, ductum.* See 275, 19.

Adopt. *Capiō, ere, cēpi, captum; ineō, ire, ii, itum.*

Advance, to advance. *Signa fero, ferre, tulī, lātum; prōgredior, ī, prōgressus sum.*

Advise. *Moneō, ēre, uī, itum.*

Aedui. *Aeduī, ōrum, m. pl.*

Affair. *Rēs, rēi, f.; military affairs, rēs militāris.*

After. *Post, adv.; posteāquam, postquam, conj.*

Against. *Contrā, prep. w. acc.; in, prep. w. acc.; to wage against, inferō, ferre, intuli, illātum.*

Ahead, to send ahead. *Praemittō, ere, misi, missum.*

Aid. *Auxilium, ii, n.* To aid, *juvō, āre, jūvi, jūtum.*

All. *Omnis, e; tōtus, a, um, 45, 151; ūniversus, a, um; on all sides, undique.*

Alone. *Sōlum, adv.*

Already. *Jam, adv.*

Also. *Etiam, adv. and conj.; quoque, adv.*

Although. *Etsi, tametsi, conj. 254, 515.*

Always. *Semper, adv.*

Ambassador. *Lēgātus, i, m.*

Among. *Apud, prep. w. acc.; in, prep. w. acc. and abl.*

An. See page 25, foot-note 1.

Ancient. *Pristinus, a, um; antiquus, a, um.*

And. *Et; que, 103; atque, ac; conj.*

Animal. *Animal, ālis, n.*

Announce. *Nūntiō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Answer. *Respondeo, ere, i, sponsum.*

Any. *Ullus, a, um, 45, 151*; anything, n. of *quis* or *aliquis, 106, 190.*

Appoint. *Indicō, ere, dixi, dictum.*

Approach. *Adventus, ūs, m.* To approach, *succidō, ere, cessi, cessum.*

Approve. *Probō, āre, acī, ātum.*

Aquitani. *Aquitāni, ōrum, m. pl.*

Arar. *Arar, aris, m. 128*

Ariovistus. *Ariovistus, i, m.*

Arms. *Arma, ōrum, n. pl.*

Army. *Exercitus, ūs, m.*

Arouse. *Excitō, āre, acī, ātum.*

Arrival. *Adventus, ūs, m.*

Arrogance. *Arrogantia, ae, f.*

Art, work. *Opus, eris, n.*

Artemisia. *Artemisia, ae, f.*

As. *Ut*; as not to, *ut nōn, 123, 500*; as soon as, *simul, simul atque, conj.*

Ascend. *Ascendō, ere, i, scēsum.*

Ascertain. *Cōgnōscō, ere, nōvi, nitum.*

Ask. *Rogō, āre, avi, ātum*; to ask for, *rogō.*

Assail. *Aggredior, i, gressus sum.*

Assault. *Oppugnō, āre, avi, ātum.*

Assemble, come together. *Conveniō, ire, vēni, ventum.*

Assist. *Juvō, āre, jūvi, jūtum.*

Assure. *Cōfirmō, āre, acī, ātum.*

At. *Ad, prep. w. acc.; in, prep. w. abl.*; often expressed by the Locative or by the Locative Ablative, **185, 425**; at length, *dēmum, adv.*

Attack. *Impetus, ūs, m.* To attack, *oppugnō, āre, acī, ātum*; *aggredior, i, gressus sum.*

Attempt. *Cōnatus, ūs, m.* To attempt, *cōnor, acī, ātus sum.*

Audacity. *Audacia, ae, f.*

Authority. *Auctoritās, atis, f.*

Avail. *Valeō, ēre, uī, itum.*

Avoid. *Vitō, āre, avi, ātum.*

Avenge. *Persequor, i, secutus sum.*

Await. *Expectō, āre, acī, ātum.*

B.

Back, to lead back. *Reducō, ere, dūxi, ductum*; to drive back, *repellō, ere, reppuli, repulsum*; *repulsō, āre, avi, ātum.*

Band. *Manus, ūs, f.*

Bank. *Ripa, ae, f.*

Barbarian. *Barbarus, i, m.*

Barbarous. *Barbarus, a, um.*

Battle. *Proelium, ii, n.*; *pugna, ae, f.*; line of battle, *aciēs, ēi, f.*; a battle takes place, *pugnātur.*

Be. *Sum, esse, fui, 140, 204*; to be able, *possum, posse, potui, 269, 290*; to be eager, *ardeō, ēre, arsi, arsum*; to be free from, *vacō, āre, avi, ātum*; to be from, to be distant from, *absum, abesse, afui*; to be greatly pleased with, *adamō, āre, avi, ātum*; to be in command of, *praesum, esse, fui*; to be silent, *taceō, ēre, uī, itum*; to be unwilling, *nolō, nolle, nolui, 273, 293*; to be well supplied, *abundō, āre, avi, ātum*; to be willing, *volō, velle, volui, 273, 293.*

Bear. *Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.*
269, 292.

Beautiful. *Pulcher, chra, chrum.*

Because. *Quod, conj.*

Before. *Ante, adv., and prep.*
w. acc.; *prō, prep. w. abl.;*
antequam, priusquam, con-
junction.

Beg. *Orō, āre, āvī, ātum; rogō,*
āre, āvī, ātum.

Beginning. *Initium, tī, n.*

Behind. *Post, prep. w. acc.*

Belgae, Belgians. *Belgae, arum,*
m. pl.

Believe. *Credō, ere, didi, ditum.*
(Followed by the Dative of the
person.)

Besiege. *Obseidō, ēre, sedī, ses-*
sum.

Betake one's self. *Sē mandō,*
āre, āvī, ātum; sē recipiō, ere,
cēpī, ceptum.

Beyond, across. *Trāns, prep. w.*
acc.

Bid. *Liceor, ērī, itus sum.*

Bird. *Avīs, is, f.*

Bituriges. *Biturigēs, um, m. pl.*

Blame. *Culpa, ae, f.*

Book. *Liber, brī, m.*

Boundary, natural boundaries.
Nātūra locī.

Boy. *Puer, erī, m.*

Brave. *Fortis, e.*

Bravely. *Fortiter, adv.*

Bravery. *Virtūs, ūtis, f.*

Bridge. *Pōns, pontis, m.*

Bring. *Portō, āre, āvī, ātum;*
to bring over, *trānsportō, āre,*
āvī, ātum; to bring to an end,
cōnflcō, ere, fecī, sectum.

Britons. *Britannī, ōrum, m. pl.*

Brother. *Frāter, trīs, m.*

Build. *Aedificō, āre, āvī, ātum;*
to make, *faciō, ere, fecī, fac-*
tum.

Burn. *Exūrō, ere, ussi, ūstum;*
combūrō, ere, ussi, ūstum; to
set on fire, *incendō, ere, ī, cēn-*
sum.

But. *Autem, conj.,* see foot-note,
p. 316; *sed, conj.*

Buy up. *Redimō, ere, emī, emp-*
tum.

By. *Ā, ab, prep. w. abl.;* often
expressed by the Ablative alone;
78, 420; by far, *longē, multō,*
adv.

C.

Caesar. *Caesar, aris, m.*

Calamity. *Calamitās, ātis, f.*

Call, name. *Appellō, āre, āvī,*
ātum; nōminō, āre, āvī, ātum;
to call together, *convocō, āre,*
āvī, ātum.

Camp. *Castra, ōrum, n. pl.*

Can. *Possūm, posse, potui.* 269,
290.

Canton. *Pāgus, ī, m.*

Captive. *Captivus, ī, m.*

Carry, take. *Portō, āre, āvī, ātum;*
to bear, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum;*
to carry over, *trānsportō, āre,*
āvī, ātum.

Carthage. *Karthāgō, inis, f.*

Cassius. *Cassius, ī, m.*

Cause. *Causa, ae, f.*

Celts. *Celtae, arum, m. pl.*

Censure. *Accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Centurion. *Centuriō, ōnis, m.*

Check. *Tardō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Chief. *Princeps, ipis; summus,*
a, um; a chief, chieftain, prin-
ceps, *ipis, m.*

Cicero. *Cicerō, ōnis, m.*
 Citizen. *Civis, is, m.*
 City. *Urbs, urbis, f.*
 Civilization. *Hūmānitās, ātis, f.*
 Civilized. *Hūmānus, a, um.*
 Close. *Claudō, ere, sī, sum.*
 Clothe. *Vestiō, ire, iti or ii, itum.*
 Cloud. *Nūbēs, is, f.*
 Collect. *Cōgō, ere, coēgi, coāctum.*
 Come. *Veniō, ire, vēni, ventum.*
 Command. *Jubeō, ēre, jussi, jussum; imperō, āre, āvi, ātum; to be in command, praesum, esse, fui; to place in command, praeficiō, ere, feci, sectum; under one's command, dux in Ablative Absolute.*
 Commander. *Imperātor, ōris, m.*
 Commit. *Admittō, ere, misi, missum.*
 Companion. *Comes, itis, m. and f.*
 Compel. *Cōgō, ere, coēgi, coāctum.*
 Concerning. *Dē, prep. w. abl.*
 Conduct. *Dēducō, ere, dūxi, ductum.*
 Confidence. *Fidēs, ēi, f.*
 Congratulate. *Grātulor, āri, ātus sum. (Followed by the Dative.)*
 Conquer. *Superō, āre, āvi, ātum; vincō, ere, vici, victum.*
 Conqueror. *Vīctor, ōris, m.*
 Consider, think. *Putō, āre, āvi, ātum; arbitror, āri, ātus sum; existimō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
 Conspire. *Conjūrō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
 Consul. *Cōsul, ulis, m.*
 Consult. *Cōsulō, ere, uī, sultum.*

Contented. *Contentus, a, um.*
 Continually. *Continenter, adv.*
 Contrary to. *Contrā, prep. w. acc.*
 Convention. *Conventus, ūs, m.*
 Conversation. *Sermō, ōnis, m.*
 Council. *Concilium, ii, n.; conventus, ūs, m.*
 Counsel. *Cōsillium, ii, n.*
 Country. *Terra, ae, f.; fields, agri, ōrum, m. pl.; one's country, native country, patria, ae, f.*
 Courage. *Virtūs, ūtis, f.*
 Crassus. *Crassus, i, m.*
 Crime. *Facinus, oris, n.*
 Cross. *Trāseō, ire, ii, itum.*
 Crown. *Corōna, ae, f.*
 Custom. *Mōs, mōris, m.*
 Cut off. *Interclūdō, ere, sī, sum.*

D.

Daily. *Cotidiē, adv.*
 Danger. *Periculum, i, n.*
 Dare. *Audeō, ēre, ausus sum.*
 See 259, *cōnfido.*
 Dart. *Telum, i, n.*
 Daughter. *Filia, ae, f.*
 Daunt. *Perterreō, ēre, uī, itum.*
 Day. *Diēs, ēi, m. and f.*
 Daybreak. *Prima lūx.*
 Daylight. *Lūx, lūcis, f.*
 Dear. *Cārus, a, um.*
 Death. *Mors, mortis, f.; to put to death, interficiō, ere, feci, sectum.*
 Decide. *Cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtum; statuō, ere, uī, ūtum.*
 Defeat. *Superō, āre, āvi, ātum; vincō, ere, vici, victum.*
 Defence, in defence of. *Prō, prep. w. abl.*

Defend. *Dēfendō, ere, ī, fēnsum.*

Deliberate. *Dēliberō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Deliberation. Gerund of *dēliberō.*

Delight. *Dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Demand. *Postulō, āre, āvī, ātum; flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Deserter. *Fugitivus, ī, m.*

Deservedly. *Meritō, adv.*

Desire. *Studium, ī, n.* To desire, *studeō, ēre, uī* (followed by the Dative); *cupiō, ere, ivi* or *ii, itum.*

Desirous. *Cupidus, a, um.*

Detain. *Dētineō, ēre, uī, tentum.*

Deter. *Dēterreō, ēre, uī, itum.*

Determine. *Cōstituō, ere, uī, ātum.*

Detest. *Ōdī, isse.*

Devastate. *Vastō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Difficulty. *Difficultās, ātis, f.*

Diminish. *Dēminuō, ere, ī, ātum.*

Direction. *Pars, partis, f.*

Disposition. *Animus, ī, m.*

Distant, to be distant. *Absum, esse, āfui.*

Distress. *Premō, ere, pressī, pressum.*

Disturb. *Perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum; commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum.*

Divide. *Dividō, ere, vīsī, vīsum.*

Divine. *Divīnus, a, um.*

Division. *Pars, partis, f.*

Divitiacus. *Divitiacus, ī, m.*

Do. *Faciō, ere, fecī, factum; gerō, ere, gessī, gestum.*

Double. *Duplex, icis.*

Doubt. *Dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Draw up. *Instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctum.*

Drive back. *Repello, ere, reppulī, repulsum; to drive out, ēlciō, ere, fecī, jectum.*

Druids. *Druidēs, um, m. pl.*

Dumnorix. *Dumnoriz, igtis, m.*

During. Usually expressed by the Accusative. 98, 379.

Dwell. *Incolō, ere, uī, cultum; habitō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

E.

Each. *Uterque, traque, trumque*, inflected like *uter*, 45, 151; with each other, *inter sē.*

Eager, to be eager. *Ārdeō, ēre, ārsī, ārsūm.*

Easily. *Facile, adv.*

Easy. *Facilis, e; very easy, perfacilis, e.*

Eight. *Octo*, indeclinable.

Eighth. *Octāvus, a, um.*

Either. *Aut, conj.; either . . . or, aut . . . aut.*

Embassy. *Lēgātīō, ōnis, f.*

Enclose. *Contineō, ēre, uī, tentum.*

End, to bring to an end. *Cōnficiō, ere, fecī, fectum.*

Endure. *Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.* 269, 292.

Enemy. *Hostis, is, m. and f.; inimicus, ī, m.*

Enervate. *Effeminō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Enlist, enrol. *Cōscribō, ere, scripsī, scriptum.*

Entangled. *Impeditus, a, um.*

Establish. *Cōfirmō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Even. *Etiam, adv.*

Ever, always. *Semper, adv.*

Excellently. *Ēgregiō*, adv.
 Except. *Praeterquam*, adv. See
 279, sentence 17.

Exchange. *Inter sē dō, dare, de-
 di, datum*.

Exile. *Exsul, ulis, m. and f.*

Expect. *Expectō, āre, āvi, ātum*.

Expense. *Sūmptus, ūs, m.*

Experience. *Usus, ūs, m.*

Explore. *Explorō, āre, āvi, ātum*.

Expose. *Nūdō, āre, āvi, ātum*.

F.

Faithful. *Fidus, a, um; fidēlis, e.*

False. *Falsus, a, um*.

Far. *Longē, adv.*

Father. *Pater, tris, m.*

Father-in-law. *Socer, erī, m.*

Favor. *Grātia, ae, f.* To favor,
faveō, ēre, fāvi, fautum. (Fol-
 lowed by the Dative.)

Fear. *Timor, ōris, m.* To fear,
timeō, ēre, uī.

Fertile. *Fertilis, e.*

Fertility. *Fertilitās, ātis, f.*

Few. *Paucī, ae, a.*

Field. *Ager, grī, m.*

Fierce. *Ferus, a, um*.

Fifth. *Quīntus, a, um*.

Fight. *Pugnō, āre, āvi, ātum;*
 fighting goes on, *pūgnatur;*
 281, 301.

Fill. *Compleō, ēre, ēvi, ētum*.

Find. *Reperiō, īre, repperī, re-
 pertum*.

Finish. *Cōficiō, ere, fecī, sec-
 tum*.

Fire. *Ignis, is, m;* to set on fire,
incendō, ere, ī, cēsum.

First. *Primus, a, um*.

Five. *Quīque*, indeclinable.

Flight. *Fuga, ae, f.*

Flow. *Fluō, ere, flūxi, flūzum*.

Foe. *Inimicus, ī, m.*

Follow. *Sequor, ī, secūtus sum*.

Foot. *Pēs, pedis, m.*

Foot-soldier. *Pedes, itis, m.*

For. *Prō, prep. w. abl.; ad, prep.*
w. acc.; for, on account of, *ob*,
prep. w. acc.; for is often ex-
 pressed by the Dative, 54, 384;
 for, during, *per, prep. w. acc.;*
 often expressed by the Accusa-
 tive alone, 98, 379; to ask for,
rogō, āre, āvi, ātum; to wait
 for, *expectō, āre, āvi, ātum*.

Force. *Cōgō, ere, coēgi, coāctum*.

Forced marches. *Māgna itinera*.

Forces. *Cōpia, ae, arum, f. pl.*

Forest. *Silva, ae, f.*

Form line of battle. *Acie, in-
 struō, ere, strūxi, strūctum*.

Formerly. *Anteā, adv.*

Forth, to go forth. *Exeō, īre,
 ii, itum;* to lead forth, *ēducō,
 ere, dūxi, ductum*.

Fortification. *Mūnitio, ōnis, f.*

Fortify. *Mūniō, īre, ivi or ii,
 itum*.

Fortune. *Fortūna, ae, f.*

Forward, to send forward. *Prae-
 mittō, ere, misi, missum*.

Fourteenth. *Quārtus decimus,
 quārta decima, quārtum deci-
 mum*.

Free. *Liber, era, erum;* to be free
 from, *vacō, āre, āvi, ātum*. To
 free, *liberō, āre, āvi, ātum*.

Freedom. *Libertās, ātis, f.*

Frequent. *Crēber, bra, brum*.

Frequently. *Saepe, adv.*

Friend. *Amicus, ī, m.*

Friendly. *Amicus, a, um*.

Friendship. *Amicitia*, *ae*, *f*.
 From. *Ā*, *ab*, *dē*, prep. w. *abl.* ;
 to be distant from, *absum*, *esse*,
āfui.
 Front, in front of. *Prō*, prep. w.
abl.
 Future. *Reliquum tempus* ; for
 the future, in future, *in reli-*
quum tempus.

G.

Galba. *Galba*, *ae*, *m*.
 Garrison. *Praesidium*, *ii*, *n*.
 Gate. *Porta*, *ae*, *f*.
 Gaul, the country. *Gallia*, *ae*, *f*.
 Gaul, a Gaul, *Gallus*, *i*, *m*.
 Gem. *Gemma*, *ae*, *f*.
 General. *Inperātor*, *ōris*, *m*.
 Geneva. *Genāva*, *ae*, *f*.
 German. *Germānus*, *i*, *m*.
 Gift. *Dōnum*, *i*, *n*.
 Girl. *Puella*, *ae*, *f*.
 Give. *Dō*, *dare*, *dedi*, *datum* ;
 to give up, *trādō*, *ere*, *didī*,
ditum ; *reddō*, *ere*, *didī*, *ditum*.
 Glory. *Glōria*, *ae*, *f*.
 Go. *Eō*, *ire*, *ivī* or *ii*, *itum*, **277**,
295 ; to go forth, *ezeō*, *ire*, *ii*,
itum ; fighting goes on, *pūgnā-*
tur, **281**, **301**.
 Gold. *Aurum*, *i*, *n*.
 Golden, gold. *Aureus*, *a*, *um*.
 Good. *Bonus*, *a*, *um*, comp.
melior, sup. *optimus*.
 Grain. *Frūmentum*, *i*, *n*.
 Grandson. *Nepōs*, *ōtis*, *m*.
 Great. *Māgnus*, *a*, *um* ; so great,
tantus, *a*, *um*.
 Greatly, to be greatly pleased
 with. *Adamō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.
 Greece. *Graecia*, *ae*, *f*.

Greek. *Graecus*, *a*, *um* ; a Greek,
Graecus, *i*, *m*.
 Grief. *Dolor*, *ōris*, *m*.
 Guard. *Cūstōdiō*, *ire*, *ivī* or *ii*,
itum.
 Guest. *Hospes*, *itis*, *m*. and *f*.

H.

Hand. *Manus*, *ūs*, *f*.
 Happen. *Fiō*, *feri*, *factus sum*.
277, **294**.
 Happily. *Fēliciter*, adv.
 Harbor. *Portus*, *ūs*, *m*.
 Harm. *Malefīcium*, *ii*, *n*.
 Hasten. *Contendō*, *ere*, *i*, *tum* ;
mātūrō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.
 Have. *Habeō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itum* ; to
 have power, *possum*, *posse*,
potuī, **269**, **290** ; to have to,
 often expressed by the Gerund-
 ive, **266**, **234**.
 He. *Is*, *ea*, *id* ; *ille*, *illa*, *illud* ;
hic, *haec*, *hōc* ; **102**, **186** ; often
 only implied in the ending of
 the verb.
 Hear. *Audiō*, *ire*, *ivī* or *ii*, *itum*.
 Height. *Altitudō*, *inis*, *f*.
 Help. *Auxilium*, *ii*, *n*. To help,
juzō, *āre*, *jūvī*, *jūtum*.
 Helvetii. *Helvētīi*, *ōrum*, *m*. pl.
 Hesitate. *Dubitō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.
 High. *Altus*, *a*, *um*.
 Hill. *Collis*, *is*, *m*.
 Himself. *Suī*, **102**, **184** ; *ipse*, *a*,
um, **102**, **186**.
 His. *Suus*, *a*, *um* ; sometimes ex-
 pressed by the genitive of *is* or
ille ; sometimes not expressed
 in Latin.
 Hold. *Teneō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *tentum* ; to
 regard, *habeō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itum*.

Home. *Domus, ūs, f.*; at home, *domi*, **185**, 426; homeward, home, *domum*, **277**, 380.

Honor, ornament. *Ōrnāmentum, ī, n.*

Hope. *Spēs, spēs, f.*

Horse. *Equus, ī, m.*

Horseman. *Eques, itis, m.*

Hostage. *Obses, idis, m. and f.*

Hour. *Hōra, ae, f.*

How. *Quam, adv.*; how large, *quantus, a, um*; how many, *quot*, indeclinable.

Hundred. *Centum*, indeclinable.

Hurl. *Cōiciō, ere, jēcī, jectum.*

I.

I. *Ego, meī. 102, 184.*

If. *Sī, conj. 250, 507.*

Implore. *Implōrō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Import. *Importō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

In. *In, prep. w. acc. and abl.*; in front of, *prō, prep. w. abl.*; in regard to, *dē, prep. w. abl.*; in the vicinity of, *ad, apud, circum, prep. w. acc.*; to plead in chains, *ex tīnculis*; in such a way, *ita, adv.*

Incessantly. *Contīnenter, adv.*

Inflict. *Īnferō, ferre, intulī, illātum*; to inflict punishment, *sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum*, with *supplicium*; literally, to take punishment.

Inform. *Certiōrem faciō, ere, fēcī, factum*; to be informed, *certior fierī*.

Inhabit. *Incolō, ere, uī, cultum*; *habitō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Inhabitant. *Is quī incolit*, literally, *he who inhabits*.

Inquire. *Quaerō, ere, sīcī or sīi, situm.*

Intend. *In animō esse, w. Dative*; I intend, *mihi in animō est*; to intend is often expressed by the future active participle, **266**, 233.

Intention, it is my intention. *Mihi in animō est.*

Interest, to be for one's interest. *Interest, esse, fuit. 281*, 301.

Interior of. *Interior, us*, in agreement with noun.

Into. *In, prep. w. acc.*

Island. *Īnsula, ae, f.*

It. *Is, ea, id*; *ille, a, ud*; *hic, haec, hoc*; **102**, 186; often only implied in the ending of the verb.

Italy. *Ītalia, ae, f.*

Its. *Suus, a, um*; sometimes expressed by the genitive of *is* or *ille*; sometimes not expressed in Latin.

J.

Judge. *Jūdex, icis, m. and f.* To judge, *jūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

Justice. *Jūstitia, ae, f.*

K.

Keep. *Teneō, ēre, uī, tentum*; *contineō, ēre, uī, tentum*; *retineō, ēre, uī, tentum*; *habeō, ēre, uī, itum*; to prevent, *prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum.*

Kent. *Cantium, iī, n.*

King. *Rēx, rēgis, m.*

Know. *Sciō, īre, īvī or iī, itum*; *intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctum.*

Knowledge. *Scientia, ae, f.*

L.

- Lake. *Lacus*, ūs, m.
 Land. *Terra*, ae, f.; lands, fields, *agrī*, ōrum, m. pl.
 Large. *Māgnus*, a, um, comp. *mājor*, sup. *māximus*; how large, *quantus*, a, um.
 Last, nearest. *Prōximus*, a, um.
 Latinus. *Latinus*, ī, m.
 Lavinia. *Lāvinia*, ae, f.
 Law. *Lēx*, lēgis, f.
 Lay waste. *Vastō*, āre, āvī, ātum.
 Lead. *Dūcō*, ere, dūxī, ductum; to lead across, *trānsdūcō*, ere, dūxī, ductum; to lead back, *redūcō*, ere, dūxī, ductum; to lead out, *ēdūcō*, ere, dūxī, ductum.
 Leader. *Princeps*, ipis, m. and f.; *dux*, ducis, m. and f.
 Learning. *Doctrina*, ae, f.
 Leave. *Relinquō*, ere, liquī, licitum.
 Legion. *Legiō*, ōnis, f.
 Lemannus. *Lemannus*, ī, m.
 Length, at length. *Dēmum*, adv.
 Letter of the alphabet. *Littera*, ae, f.; letter, epistle, *epistula*, ae, f.; *litterae*, ārum, f. pl.
 Liberty. *Libertās*, ātis, f.
 Lieutenant. *Lēgātus*, ī, m.
 Life. *Vita*, ae, f.
 Like very much. *Adamō*, āre, āvī, ātum.
 Line. *Actēs*, ēī, f.; line of battle, *aciēs*; line of march, *āgmen*, inis, n.
 Listen to. *Audiō*, īre, īvī or īī, itum.
 Live. *Vivō*, ere, vixī, vīctum.
 Long. *Longē*, adv.; a long time,

diū, comp. *diūtius*, sup. *diūtissimē*, adv.

Love. *Amor*, ōris, m. To love, *amō*, āre, āvī, ātum.

M.

- Magistrate. *Magistrātus*, ūs, m.
 Make. *Faciō*, ere, fēcī, factum; to make war, *gerō*, ere, gessi, gestum; *inferō*, ferre, intulī, illātum.
 Man. *Homō*, inis, m. and f.; *vir*, viri, m.
 Many, much. *Multus*, a, um; how many, *quot*, indeclinable.
 March. *Iter*, itineris, n.; forced marches, *māgna itinera*; line of march, *āgmen*, inis, n. To march, *iter faciō*, facere, fēcī, factum.
 Marcus. *Mārcus*, ī, m.
 Match, a match for. *Pār*, paris.
 May. *Licet*, ēre, licuit, 281, 301.
 Menapil. *Menapii*, ōrum, m. pl.
 Merchant. *Mercātor*, ōris, m.
 Messenger. *Nūntius*, īī, m.
 Midday. *Meridiēs*, ēī, m.
 Mile. *Mille passūs*; 247, footnote.
 Military. *Militāris*, e; military affairs, *rēs militāris*.
 Mind. *Animus*, ī, m.; *mens*, mentis, f.
 Moat. *Fossa*, ae, f.
 Month. *Mēnsis*, is, m.
 Mother. *Māter*, tris, f.
 Mountain. *Mōns*, montis, m.
 Much, to like very much, *adamō*, āre, āvī, ātum.
 Must. Often expressed by the Gerundive. 266, 234.

My. *Meus, a, um.* 102, 185.
 Myself. *Ego, mei, 102, 184; ipse, a, um, 102, 186.*

N.

Name. *Nōminō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
 Nation. *Gēns, gentis, f.; nātiō, ōnis, f.*
 Natural boundaries. *Nātūra loci.*
 Nature. *Nātūra, ae, f.*
 Navigate. *Nāvigō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
 Navigation. Gerund of *nāvigō.*
 Near. *Apud, ad, prep. w. acc.*
 Nearer. *Propior, us.*
 Nearly. *Ferē, adv.; paene, adv.*
 Neighbor. *Finitimus, i, m.*
 Neighboring. *Finitimus, a, um; prōximus, a, um.*
 Nervil. *Nerviī, ōrum, m. pl.*
 Never. *Nūquam, adv.*
 New. *Novus, a, um.*
 Next. *Prōximus, a, um.*
 No. *Nūllus, a, um, 45, 151; nihil w. Partitive Genitive, 28, 397.*
 Noble. *Nōbilis, e.*
 Not. *Nōn, adv.; w. imperative or subjunctive of desire, nē, adv.; not? nōnne? conj., interrogative particle; not yet, nōndum, adv.*
 Number. *Numerus, i, m.*

O.

Obey. *Pāreō, ēre, uī, itum.* (Followed by the Dative.)
 Observe. *Observō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
 Obtain possession of. *Potior, iri, itus sum; 258, 421; to obtain one's request, impetrō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Occupy. *Occupō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
 Octodurus. *Octōdūrus, i, m.*
 Of. *Dē, ē, ex, prep. w. abl.; out of, ē, ex; in front of, prō, prep. w. abl.*
 Off, to cut off. *Intercludō, ere, si, sum.*
 Often. *Saepe, adv.*
 On, at. *Ad, prep. w. acc.; in, prep. w. abl.; on the side of, ā, ab, prep. w. abl.; on all sides, undique, adv.; fighting goes on, pugnatur, 281, 301.*
 One. *Ūnus, a, um; 97, 175; that one, is, ea, id; ille, a, ud; 102, 186.*
 Open. *Apertus, a, um.*
 Opinion. *Sententia, ae, f.*
 Or. *Aut, conj.; in questions, an, conj.*
 Oration. *Ōrātiō, ōnis, f.*
 Orator. *Ōrātor, ōris, m.*
 Order. *Imperō, āre, āvi, ātum; jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussum; in order that, ut, conj. 119, 497.*
 Other. *Alius, a, ud; 45, 151; the remaining, reliquus, a, um; with each other, inter sē.*
 Ought. *Dēbeō, ēre, uī, itum; often expressed by the Gerundive, 266, 234.*
 Our. *Noster, tra, trum.*
 Out of. *Ex, ē, prep. w. abl.; to lead out, educō, ere, dūxi, ductum; to set out, proficiscor, i, profectus sum.*
 Over. *Per, trāns, prep. w. acc.; a bridge over, in, prep. w. abl.; to bring over, carry over, trānsportō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
 Owe. *Dēbeō, ēre, uī, itum.*
 Own. *Suus, a, um.*

P.

Pain. *Dolor, ōris, m.*
 Part. *Pars, partis, f.*
 Pass the winter. *Hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
 Passionate. *Īrācundus, a, um.*
 Patiently. *Patienter, adv.*
 Peace. *Pāx, pācis, f.*
 Pedius. *Pedius, īi, m.*
 Penalty. *Pœna, ae, f.*
 People. *Populus, ī, m.*
 Peril. *Periculūm, ī, n.*
 Perilous. *Periculōsus, a, um.*
 Persuade. *Persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsum.* (Followed by the Dative of the person.)
 Pisistratus. *Pisistratus, ī, m.*
 Place. *Locus, ī, m., pl. loca, ōrum, n.;* a battle takes place, *pūgnātur.* To place, *pōnō, ere, posuī, positum; collocō, āre, āvī, ātum; cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtum;* to place in command, *præficiō, ere, fecī, sectum.*
 Plan. *Cōsiliūm, īi, n.; sententia, ae, f.*
 Plato. *Platō, ōnis, m.*
 Plead. *Dicō, ere, dixī, dictum; agō, ere, egī, āctum.*
 Pleased, to be greatly pleased with. *Adamō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
 Plough. *Arō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
 Poet. *Pœta, ae, m.*
 Pompey. *Pompēius, īi, m.*
 Populace. *Plēbs, plēbis, f.*
 Position. *Locus, ī, m., pl. loca, ōrum, n.*
 Possess. *Habeō, ēre, uī, itum; sum, esse, fui in w. abl.;* he possesses wisdom, *sapientia in eō est.*

Possession, to obtain possession of. *Potior, iri, itus sum, 258, 421;* to take possession of, *occupō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
 Power. *Potentia, ae, f.;* regal power, *rēgnum, ī, n.;* to have power, *possum, posse, potui, 269, 290.*
 Praise. *Laudō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
 Prefer. *Malō, malle, mālui. 273, 293.*
 Prepare. *Parō, āre, āvī, ātum; comparō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
 Prepared. *Parātus, a, um.*
 Present. *Dōnō, āre, āvī, ātum.*
 Present, for the present. *In præsentia.*
 Prevail. *Valeō, ēre, uī, itum.*
 Prevent. *Prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum.*
 Previously. *Anteā, adv.*
 Price. *Pretium, īi, n.*
 Propose a law. *Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, 269, 292.*
 Protect, fortify. *Muniō, ire, iri or īi, itum.*
 Protection. *Praesidium, īi, n.*
 Provide. *Prōspiciō, ere, spēxi, spectrum; prōvideō, ēre, vīdi, visum.* (Followed by the Dative.)
 Province. *Prōvincia, ae, f.*
 Provisions. *Cibāria, ōrum, n. pl.*
 Punishment. *Supplicium, īi, n.*
 Pupil. *Discipulus, ī, m.*
 Purpose. *Cōsiliūm, īi, n.; cōnātus, ūs, m.;* for the purpose of, *causā w. Genitive.*
 Pursue. *Sequor, ī, secutus sum; insequor, ī, secutus sum; persequor, ī, secutus sum.*
 Put to death. *Interficiō, ere, fecī, sectum; occidō, ere, ī, sum.*

Q.

- Quarters, winter quarters. *Hiberna*, ōrum, n. pl.
 Queen. *Rēgina*, ae, f.
 Quickly. *Celeriter*, adv.

R.

- Rampart. *Vallum*, ī, n.
 Rash. *Temerārius*, a, um.
 Rather than. *Quam*, conj.
 Ravage. *Dēpopulor*, āri, ātus sum.
 Reach, arrive at. *Adeō*, ire, īi, itum; *veniō*, ire, vēni, ventum; *perteniō*, ire, tēni, tentum; to extend, *pertineō*, ēre, uī, tentum.
 Read. *Legō*, ere, lēgi, lēctum.
 Readily. *Facile*, adv.
 Ready. *Parātus*, a, um.
 Rear. *Notissimum āgmen*, *notissimī āgminis*, n.
 Reason. *Causa*, ae, f.; *rēs*, rēi, f.
 Recollection. *Memoria*, ae, f.
 Reference, with reference to. *Dē*, prep. w. abl.
 Refinement. *Cultus*, ūs, m.
 Regal power. *Rēgnum*, ī, n.
 Regard, to regard as. *Habeō*, ēre, uī, itum *prō* w. abl.; in regard to, *dē*, prep. w. abl.
 Region. *Regiō*, ōnis, f.
 Reject. *Recūsō*, āre, āvī, ātum.
 Rely upon. *Confidō*, ere, fīsus sum. See 259.
 Remain. *Maneō*, ēre, mānsī, mānsūm; *permaneō*, ēre, mānsī, mānsūm; *remaneō*, ēre, mānsī, mānsūm; to remain silent, *taceō*, ēre, uī, itum.

- Remember. *Reminiscor*, ī. 258, 231.
 Remi. *Rēmī*, ōrum, m. pl.
 Remove. *Moveō*, ere, mōvi, mōtum; *remoteō*, ēre, mōvi, mōtum.
 Renew. *Renovō*, āre, āvī, ātum.
 Renowned. *Clārus*, a, um.
 Repent. *Paenitet*, ēre, uīt; I repent, *mē paenitet*. 281, 301; 285, 409.
 Report. *Rūmor*, ōris, m. To report, *nūntiō*, āre, āvī, ātum; *ēnūntiō*, āre, āvī, ātum.
 Repulse. *Prōpulsō*, āre, āvī, ātum; *repellō*, ere, reppulī, repulsum.
 Reputation. *Auctōritās*, ātis, f.
 Request, to obtain one's request. *Impetrō*, āre, āvī, ātum.
 Reside. *Habitō*, āre, āvī, ātum.
 Rest of. *Reliquus*, a, um.
 Restore. *Restituō*, ere, uī, ūtum.
 Retain. *Retineō*, ēre, uī, tentum.
 Retard. *Tardō*, āre, āvī, ātum.
 Return. *Redeō*, ire, īi, itum; *revertor*, ī, *revertī*, *reversum*, deponent in present system.
 Revenue. *Vectigal*, ālis, n.
 Revolution. *Rēs novae*.
 Rhine. *Rhēnus*, ī, m.
 Rhone. *Rhodanus*, ī, m.
 Ride toward. *Adequitō*, āre, āvī, ātum.
 River. *Flūmen*, inis, n.
 Roman. *Rōmānus*, a, um; a Roman, *Rōmānus*, ī, m.
 Rome. *Rōma*, ae, f.
 Romulus. *Rōmulus*, ī, m.
 Route. *Iter*, *itineris*, n.
 Rule. *Regō*, ere, rēxi, rēctum.
 Rumor. *Rūmor*, ōris, m.

S.

Safe. *Tūtus, a, um.*

Safeguard. *Praesidium, īi, n.*

Safety. *Salūs, ūtis, f.*

Same. *Īdem, eadem, idem.* 102, 186.

Santones. *Santonēs, um, m. pl.*

Say. *Dicō, ere, dixi, dictum.*

School. *Schola, ae, f.*

Scout. *Explōrātor, ōris, m.*

Sea. *Mare, is, n.*

Second. *Secundus, a, um.*

Secure, win. *Conciliō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

See. *Videō, ēre, vidī, visum.*

Seek. *Petō, ere, ivi or ii, itum; quaerō, ere, sivi or sīi, situm.*

Seize. *Occupō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Select. *Dēligō, ere, lēgi, lēctum.*

Senate. *Senātus, ūs, m.*

Send. *Mittō, ere, misi, missum; to send ahead, send forward, praemittō, ere, misi, missum.*

Separate. *Dividō, ere, visi, visum.*

Servitude. *Servitūs, ūtis, f.*

Set fire to. *Incendō, ere, i, cēsum.*

Set out. *Profciscor, i, profectus sum.*

Setting. *Occāsus, ūs, m.*

Setting out. *Profectiō, ōnis, f.*

Settle. *Cōsidō, ere, sedī, sessum.*

Seventh. *Septimū, a, um.*

Several. *Complūrēs, a or ia, tum.*

Severe. *Ācer, cris, cre; sevērus, a, um.*

Severely. *Ācriter, adv.; graviter, adv.*

Shepherd. *Pāstor, ōris, m.*

Ship. *Nāvis, is, f.; nāvigium, īi, n.; ship of war, longa nāvis.*

Shut in. *Contineō, ēre, uī, tentum.*

Side, part. *Pars, partis, f.; on all sides, undique, adv.*

Sight. *Cōspectus, ūs, m.*

Signal. *Īsignis, e.*

Silent, to be silent, to remain silent. *Taceō, ēre, uī, itum.*

Since. *Cum, conj.*

Singing. *Cantus, ūs, m.*

Single, one. *Ūnus, a, um.* 97, 175.

Six. *Sex, indeclinable.*

Sixth. *Sextus, a, um.*

Skilful. *Peritus, a, um.*

Skin. *Pellis, is, f.*

Slave. *Servus, i, m.*

Slavery. *Servitūs, ūtis, f.*

Slay. *Occidō, ere, i, sum; interficiō, ere, feci, fectum.*

Sleep. *Dormiō, ire, ivi or ii, itum.*

Small. *Parvus, a, um.* 96, 165.

So, to such an extent. *Tam, adv.; in such a way, ita, adv.; so great, tantus, a, um.*

Soldier. *Miles, itis, m. and f.*

Son. *Filius, īi, m.* 32, 51, 5.

Son-in-law. *Gener, eri, m.*

Soon, as soon as. *Simul, simul atque, conj.*

Soul. *Animus, i, m.*

Soundly. *Artē, adv.*

Sovereignty. *Principātus, ūs, m.*

Space. *Spatium, īi, n.; locus, i, m.*

Spare. *Parcō, ere, pepercī, parsum.* (Followed by the Dative.)

Speak. *Dicō, ere, dixi, dictum.*

Speedily. *Celeriter, adv.*

Spirit. *Animus, i, m.*

State. *Civitas, ātis, f.* To state, say, *dicō, ere, dixi, dictum.*

- Station. *Collocō, āre, āvi, ātum* ;
cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtum.
- Stone. *Lapis, idis, m.*
- Storm. *Tempestās, ātis, f.* ; to
 take by storm, *expugnō, āre,*
āvī, ātum.
- Story. *Fābula, ae, f.*
- Stricken with fear. *Tīmōre per-*
territus, a, um.
- Strip. *Nūdō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
- Successfully. *Feliciter, adv.*
- Successive. *Continuus, a, um.*
- Such, so great. *Tantus, a, um* ;
 in such a way, *ita, adv.*
- Suebi. *Suēbī, ōrum, m. pl.*
- Suffer. *Patior, i, passus sum.*
- Summer. *Aestās, ātis, f.*
- Summon. *Vocō, āre, āvi, ātum.*
- Sun. *Sōl, sōlis, m.*
- Sunset. *Sōlis occāsus, ūs, m.*
- Supplied, to be well supplied.
Abundō, āre, āvi, ātum.
- Supply, supplies. *Commeātus, ūs,*
m. ; supply of grain, supplies,
rēs frūmentāria.
- Support. *Alō, ere, uī, alitum*
 and *altum.*
- Surpass. *Praecēdō, ere, cessī,*
cessum ; *praestō, āre, stitī,*
stitum and *stātum.*
- Surround. *Contineō, ēre, uī,*
tentum.
- Suspicion. *Suspiciō, ōnis, f.*
- Sustain. *Sustineō, ēre, uī, ten-*
tum.
- T.
- Take. *Capiō, ere, cēpī, captum* ;
sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum ;
 to carry, *portō, āre, āvi, ātum* ;
 to take by storm, *expugnō, āre,*
āvī, ātum ; to take possession
 of, *occupō, āre, āvi, ātum* ; to
 take from, *efferrō, ferre, extulī,*
elātum ; to take vengeance on,
ulciscor, i, ultus sum ; a battle
 takes place, *pugnātur*, 281, 301.
- Teach. *Doceō, ēre, uī, dōctum.*
- Tell. *Dicō, ere, dixī, dictum.*
- Temple. *Templum, i, n.*
- Ten. *Decem*, indeclinable.
- Tend. *Pertineō, ēre, uī, tentum.*
- Tenth. *Decimus, a, um.*
- Terrify. *Terreō, ēre, uī, itum* ;
 to terrify greatly, *perterreō,*
ēre, uī, itum.
- Territory. *Fīnēs, ium, m. pl.*
- Thames. *Tamesis, is, m.*
- Than. *Quam, conj.*
- That. *Ille, a, ud* ; *is, ea, id* ;
 102, 186 ; that of yours, *iste, a,*
ud, 102, 186 ; that, relative, *quī,*
quae, quod, 106, 187 ; that, re-
 peating a previous noun, is often
 not to be rendered into Latin ;
 that, in order that, *ut, quō,*
quōminus, conj. 119, 497.
- The. See page 25, foot-note 1.
- Their. *Suus, a, um* ; sometimes
 expressed by the genitive of *is*
 or *ille*, 102, 186 ; sometimes
 not expressed in Latin.
- Then. *Tum, adv.*
- There. *Ibī, adv.*
- Therefore. *Igitur, conj.*
- Thing. *Rēs, rēi, f.*
- Think. *Putō, āre, āvi, ātum* ;
arbitror, āri, ātus sum ; *exis-*
timō, āre, āvi, ātum.
- Third. *Tertius, a, um.*
- This. *Hic, haec, hōc.* 102, 186.
- Thou. *Tū, tuī.* 102, 184.
- Three. *Trēs, tria.* 97, 175.
- Through. *Per*, prep. w. acc.

Throw. *Jaciō, ere, jēci, jactum.*

Tidings. *Nūntius, īi, m.*

Time. *Tempus, oris, n.; diēs, ēi, f.* (although, when meaning *day*, usually masculine); for a long time, *diū, comp. diūtius, sup. diūtissimē, adv.*

To. *Ad, prep. w. acc.; often expressed by the Dative, 54, 384; with reference to, dē, prep. w. abl.; to set fire to, incendō, ere, ī, cēsum.*

Together. *Ūnā, adv.; to call together, convocō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Top of. *Summus, a, um.*

Toward. *Ad, prep. w. acc.*

Tower. *Turris, is, f.*

Town. *Oppidum, ī, n.*

Traitor. *Prōditor, ōris, m.*

Traveller. *Viātor, ōris, m.*

Treason. *Prōditiō, ōnis, f.*

Tribe. *Gēns, gentis, f.*

Tribune. *Tribūnus, ī, m.*

Triple. *Triplex, icis.*

True. *Vērus, a, um.*

Truth. *Vērum, ī, n.*

Try. *Tentō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Tullia. *Tullia, ae, f.*

Two. *Duo, ae, o, 97, 175.*

Tyrant. *Tyrannus, ī, m.*

U.

Under. *Sub, prep. w. acc. and abl.; under the command of, dux, in the Ablative Absolute; under the command of Caesar, Caesare duce.*

Understand. *Intellegō, ere, lēxi, lēctum.*

Undertake. *Suscipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptum.*

Unfortunate. *Infelix, icis.*

Unite. *Conjungō, ere, jūnzi, jūnctum.*

Unless. *Nisi, conj. 250, 507.*

Unskilled. *Imperitus, a, um.*

Until. *Dum, quoad, conj. 337, 510.*

Unwilling, to be unwilling. *Nolo, nolle, nolui. 273, 293.*

Unworthy. *Indignus, a, um.*

Up, to draw up. *Instruō, ere, strūxi, strūctum; to give up, trādō, ere, didi, ditum.*

Upbraid. *Accūsō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Upon. *In, prep. w. acc. and abl.; against, in, contrā, prep. w. acc.*

Urge. *Hortor, āri, ātus sum.*

Use. *Ūsus, ūs, m. To use, ūtor, ī, ūsus sum.*

Useful. *Ūtilis, e.*

Usipetes. *Usipetēs, um, m. pl.*

V.

Valor. *Virtūs, ūtis, f.*

Valuable. *Pretiosus, a, um.*

Venetl. *Venetī, ōrum, m. pl.*

Vengeance, to take vengeance on. *Ulciscor, ī, ultus sum.*

Vergobretus. *Vergobretus, ī, m.*

Very. *Often expressed by the sup.; very easy, perfacilis, e; to like very much, adamō, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Vessel. *Nāvis, is, f.*

Vicinity, in the vicinity of. *Apud, ad, circum, prep. w. acc.*

Victoria. *Victōria, ae, f.*

Victory. *Victōria, ae, f.*

Village. *Vicus, ī, m.*

Virtue. *Virtūs, ūtis, f.*

Voice. *Vōx, vōcis, f.*

W.

- Wage. *Gerô, ere, gessi, gestum*; to wage against, *inferô, ferre, intuli, illatum*.
- Wait for. *Expectô, âre, âvi, âtum*.
- Wall. *Mûrus, i, m*.
- Want. *Inopia, ae, f*.
- War. *Bellum, i, n*; ship of war, *nâvis longa*.
- Warlike. *Bellicosus, a, um*.
- Warn. *Moneô, ère, ui, itum*.
- Waste, to lay waste. *Vasto, âre, âvi, âtum*.
- Way, in such a way. *Ita, adv*.
- Weaken. *Effeminô, âre, âci, âtum*.
- Well, to be well supplied. *Abundô, âre, âvi, âtum*.
- What? *Quis, quae, quid*; *qui, quae, quod*. 106, 188.
- When. *Cum, conj*.
- Whether. *Num*, in a single question; *utrum*, in a double question.
- Which, who. *Qui, quae, quod*, 106, 187; which? who? *quis, quae, quid*; *qui, quae, quod*; 106, 188.
- Whole. *Omnis, e*; *tôtus, a, um*, 45, 151; *universus, a, um*.
- Why. *Quârê, cûr, adv*.
- Width. *Lâtitudô, inis, f*.
- Willing, to be willing. *Volô, velle, volui*. 273, 293.
- Winter. *Hiems, emis, f*; winter quarters, *hiberna, ôrum, n. pl*.

To winter, pass the winter, *hiemô, âre, âvi, âtum*.

Wisdom. *Sapientia, ae, f*.

Wise. *Sapiens, entis*.

Wish. *Cuplô, ere, ivi or iî, itum*; *volô, velle, volui*. 273, 293.

With. *Cum, prep. w. abl*; among, *apud, prep. w. acc*; with reference to, *dê, prep. w. abl*; with each other, with one another, *inter sê*; to be greatly pleased with, *adamô, âre, âvi, âtum*.

Withdraw. *Subducô, ere, duxi, ductum*; *reducô, ere, duxi, ductum*; *deducô, ere, duxi, ductum*.

Without. *Sine, prep. w. abl*.

Withstand. *Sustineô, ère, ui, tentum*.

Witness. *Testis, is, m. and f*.

Word. *Verbum, i, n*.

Would that. *Utinam, interj*. 114, 483, 1.

Wound. *Vulnus, eris, n*. To wound, *vulnerô, âre, âvi, âtum*.

Write. *Scribô, ere, scripsi, scriptum*.

Wrong. *Injûria, ae, f*.

Y.

Yet, not yet. *Nôndum, adv*.

Yoke. *Jugum, i, n*.

You, thou. *Tû, tuî*. 102, 184.

Your. *Vester, tra, trum*; thy, *tuus, a, um*.

APPENDIX.

GENERAL RULES OF SYNTAX

Given here in a body, for convenience of reference, in the order and form in which they occur in the standard edition of Harkness's *LATIN GRAMMAR*, together with the numbers of sections in which the Rules are given respectively in this Volume, and their grammatical reference numbers.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

RULE I.—Predicate Nouns (59).

362. A noun predicated of another noun denoting the same person or thing agrees with it in CASE :

Brūtus cūstōs libertātis fuit, Brutus was the guardian of liberty.

RULE II.—Appositives (28).

363. An appositive agrees in CASE with the noun or pronoun which it qualifies :

Cluilius rēx moritur, Cluilius the king dies.

NOMINATIVE.—VOCATIVE.

RULE III.—Subject Nominative (12).

368. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative :

Servius rēgnāvit, Servius reigned.

RULE IV.—Case of Address (190).

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative :

Pergo, Laeli, proceed, Laelius.

ACCUSATIVE.

RULE V.—Direct Object (16).

371. The DIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Accusative :

Deus mundum aedificavit. God made (built) the world.

RULE VI.—Two Accusatives—Same Person (153).

373. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing :

Hamilcarem imperatorem fecerunt, they made Hamilcar commander.

RULE VII.—Two Accusatives—Person and Thing (273).

374. Some verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING admit two Accusatives—one of the *person* and the other of the *thing*:

Mē sententiam rogavit, he asked me my opinion.

RULE VIII.—Accusative of Specification.

378. A verb or an adjective may take an Accusative to define its application :

Capita velāmur, we have our heads veiled.

RULE IX.—Accusative of Time and Space (98).

379. DURATION OF TIME and EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative :

Septem et trigintā regnavit annos, he reigned thirty-seven years. Quinque milia passuum ambulare, to walk five miles.

RULE X.—Accusative of Limit (277).

380. The PLACE TO WHICH is designated by the Accusative :

I. Generally with a preposition—*ad* or *in* :

Legiones ad urbem adducit, he is leading the legions to or toward the city.

II. In names of towns without a preposition :

Nuntius Rōmam redit, the messenger returns to Rome.

RULE XI.—Accusative in Exclamations.

381. The Accusative, either with or without an interjection, may be used with Exclamations :

Heu mē miserum, ah me unhappy!

DATIVE.

RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs (54).

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Dative. It is used—

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE verbs:

Tibi serviō, *I am devoted to you.*

II. With TRANSITIVE verbs, in connection with the DIRECT OBJECT:

Agrōs plēbi dedit, *he gave lands to the common people.*

RULE XIII.—Two Datives—To which and For which (281).

390. Two Datives—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT OF END FOR WHICH—occur with a few verbs:

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE verbs:

Malō est hominibus avaritia, *avarice is an evil to men.*

II. With TRANSITIVE verbs in connection with the ACCUSATIVE:

Quinque cohortēs castris praesidiō reliquit, *he left five cohorts for the defence of the camp.*

RULE XIV.—Dative with Adjectives (141).

391. With adjectives, the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative:

Omnibus cārum est, *it is dear to all.*

RULE XV.—Dative with Nouns and Adverbs.

392. The Dative is used with a few special nouns and adverbs:

I. With a few nouns from verbs which take the Dative:

Iūstitia est obtemperatiō lēgibus, *justice is obedience to laws.*

II. With a few adverbs from adjectives which take the Dative:

Congruenter nātūrae vivere, *to live in accordance with nature.*

GENITIVE.

RULE XVI.—Genitive with Nouns (28).

395. Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

Catōnis oratiōnēs, *Cato's orations.*

RULE XVII.—Genitive with Adjectives.

399. Many adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning :

Avidus laudis, desirous of praise.

RULE XVIII.—Predicate Genitive.

401. A noun predicated of another noun denoting a different person or thing is put in the Genitive :

Omnia hostium erant, all things belonged to the enemy.

RULE XIX.—Genitive with Special Verbs.

406. The Genitive is used—

I. With *miseror* and *miserōscō* :

Miserere laborum, pity the labors.

II. With *recordor*, *memini*, *reminiscor*, and *obliviscor* :

Meminit praeſeritōrum, he remembers the past.

III. With *rēfert* and *intereſt* :

Intereſt omnium, it is the interest of all.

RULE XX.—Accusative and Genitive (285).

409. The ACCUSATIVE of the PERSON and the GENITIVE of the THING are used with a few transitive verbs :

I. With verbs of *reminding*, *admonishing* :

Tē amicitiae commonefacit, he reminds you of friendship.

II. With verbs of *accusing*, *convicting*, *acquitting* :

Virōs ſceleris arguit, you accuse men of crime.

III. With *miſeret*, *paenitet*, *pudet*, *taedet*, and *piget* :

Eōrum nōs miſeret, we pity them.

ABLATIVE PROPER.**RULE XXI.—Place from which (277).**

412. The PLACE FROM WHICH is denoted by the Ablative :

I. Generally *with a preposition*—*ā*, *ab*, *dē*, or *ex* :

Ab urbe proficiſcitur, he sets out from the city.

II. In NAMES OF TOWNS *without a preposition* :

Platōnem Athēnis arcēſſivit, he summoned Plato from Athens.

RULE XXII.—Separation, Source, Cause (158).

413. Separation, Source, and Cause are denoted by the Ablative *with* or *without* a preposition:

Caedem à vobis depellō, I ward off slaughter from you. Hōc audivi dē parente meō, I heard this from my father. Ars utilitāte laudātur, an art is praised because of its usefulness.

RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives (88).

417. Comparatives without *quam* are followed by the Ablative:

Nihil est amābilius virtūte, nothing is more lovely than virtue.

INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.

RULE XXIV.—Ablative of Accompaniment.

419. The Ablative is used—

I. To denote ACCOMPANIMENT. It then takes the preposition *cum*:

Vivit cum Balbō, he lives with Balbus.

II. To denote CHARACTERISTIC or QUALITY. It is then modified by an Adjective or by a Genitive:

Summā virtūte adulēscēns, a youth of the highest virtue.

III. To denote MANNER. It then takes the preposition *cum*, or is modified by an Adjective or by a Genitive:

Cum virtūte vixit, he lived virtuously.

RULE XXV.—Ablative of Means (78).

420. INSTRUMENT and MEANS are denoted by the Ablative:

Cornibus tauri sē tūtantur, bulls defend themselves with their horns.

RULE XXVI.—Ablative in Special Constructions (258).

421. The Ablative is used—

I. With *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and their compounds:

Plurimis rēbus fruimur et ūtimur, we enjoy and use very many things.

II. With VERBS and ADJECTIVES of PLENTY:

Villa abundat lacte, cāsēō, melle, the villa abounds in milk, cheese, and honey.

III. With *dignus*, *indignus*, and *contentus*:

Digni sunt amicitia, they are worthy of friendship.

RULE XXVII.—Ablative of Price.

422. PRICE is generally denoted by the Ablative :

Vēdidit aurō patriam, *he sold his country for gold.*

RULE XXVIII.—Ablative of Difference (236).

423. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative :

Ūnō diē longiōrem mēsem, *they make the month one day longer.*

RULE XXIX.—Specification (231).

424. A noun, adjective, or verb may take an Ablative to define its application :

Nōmine, nōn potestāte, fuit rēx, *he was king in name, not in power.*

LOCATIVE ABLATIVE :**RULE XXX.—Place in which (185).**

425. The PLACE IN WHICH is denoted—

I. Generally by the *Locative Ablative with the preposition in* :

Hannibal in Ūlīa fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.*

II. In NAMES OF TOWNS by the *Locative*, if such a form exists, otherwise by the *Locative Ablative* :

Rōmæ fuit, *he was at Rome.*

RULE XXXI.—Time (93).

429. The TIME of an action is denoted by the Ablative :

Octōgēsīmō annō est mortuus, *he died in his eightieth year.*

RULE XXXII.—Ablative Absolute (240).

431. A noun and a participle may be put in the Ablative to add to the predicate an attendant circumstance :

Serviō rēgnante viguērunt, *they flourished in the reign of Servius.*

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.**RULE XXXIII.—Cases with Prepositions (64).**

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with prepositions :

Ad amicum, *to a friend.* In Ūlīā, *in Italy.*

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, AND VERBS.

RULE XXXIV.—Agreement of Adjectives (43).

438. An adjective agrees with its noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE :

Fortūna caeca est, fortune is blind.

RULE XXXV.—Agreement of Pronouns (107).

445. A pronoun agrees with its antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON :

Animal, quod sanguinem habet, an animal which has blood.

RULE XXXVI.—Agreement of Verb with Subject (12).

460. A finite verb agrees with its subject in NUMBER and PERSON :

Ego rēgēs ejēci, I have banished kings.

USE OF THE INDICATIVE.

RULE XXXVII.—Indicative (112).

474. The indicative is used in treating of facts :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, God made (built) the world.

MOODS AND TENSES IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.

RULE XXXVIII.—Subjunctive of Desire, Command (114).

483. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action NOT AS REAL, but AS DESIRED :

Valeant civēs, may the citizens be well.

RULE XXXIX.—Potential Subjunctive.

485. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action NOT AS REAL, but AS POSSIBLE :

Hic quaerat quispiam, here some one may inquire.

RULE XL.—Imperative (114).

487. The Imperative is used in COMMANDS, EXHORTATIONS, and ENTREATIES :

Justitiam cole, practice justice.

MOODS AND TENSES IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

RULE XLI.—Sequence of Tenses (119).

491. Principal tenses depend upon principal tenses ; historical upon historical :

Entitur ut vincat, *he strives to conquer.*

RULE XLII.—Purpose (119).

497. The Subjunctive is used to denote PURPOSE—

I. With the relative *qui*, and with relative adverbs, as *ubi*, *unde*, etc. :

Missi sunt qui (= *ut ii*) consulerent Apollinem, *they were sent to consult Apollo.*

II. With *ut*, *nō*, *quō*, *quōminus* :

Entitur ut vincat, *he strives that he may conquer.*

RULE XLIII.—Result (123).

500. The Subjunctive is used to denote RESULT—

I. With the relative *qui*, and with relative adverbs, as *ubi*, *unde*, *cūr*, etc. :

Nōn is sum qui (= *ut ego*) his utar, *I am not such a one as to use these things.*

II. With *ut*, *ut nōn*, *quā* :

Ita vixit ut Athēniēnsibus esset cārissimus, *he so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.*

RULE XLIV.—Conditional Sentences with *sī*, *nisi*, *nī*, *sīn* (250).

507. Conditional sentences with *sī*, *nisi*, *nī*, *sīn*, take—

I. The INDICATIVE in both clauses *to assume* the supposed case :

Si spiritum dūcit, vivit, *if he breathes, he is alive.*

II. The PRESENT OR PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses to represent the supposed case *as possible* :

Dies deficiat, sī velim causam defendere, *the day would fail me, if I should wish to defend the cause.*

III. The IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses to represent the supposed case *as contrary to fact* :

Pluribus verbis ad tē scriberem, sī rēs verba dēsiderāret, *I should write to you more fully (with more words), if the case required words.*

RULE XLV.—Conditional Clauses with *dum, modo, ac si, ut si, etc.*

513. Conditional clauses take the Subjunctive—

I. With *dum, modo, dummodo*, 'if only,' 'provided that'; *dum nē, modo nē, dummodo nē*, 'if only not,' 'provided that not':

Manent ingenia, modo permaneat industria, mental powers remain, if only industry remains.

II. With *ac si, ut si, quam si, quasi, tanquam, tanquam si, velut, velut si*, 'as if,' 'than if,' involving an ellipsis of the real conclusion:

Perinde habebō, ac si scripsissēs, I shall regard it just as if (i. e., as I should if) *you had written.*

RULE XLVI.—Moods in Concessive Clauses (254).

515. Concessive clauses take—

I. Generally the INDICATIVE in the best prose, when introduced by *quamquam*:

Quamquam intellegunt, though they understand.

II. The INDICATIVE or SUBJUNCTIVE when introduced by *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi*, or *si*, like conditional clauses with *si*:

Etsi nihil sciō quod gaudeam, though I know no reason why I should rejoice.

III. The SUBJUNCTIVE when introduced by *licet, quamvis, ut, nē, cum*, or the relative *quī*:

Licet irrideat, though he may deride.

RULE XLVII.—Moods with *quod, quia, quoniam, quando*

516. Causal clauses with *quod, quia, quoniam, quandō*, generally take—

I. The INDICATIVE to assign a reason positively on one's own authority:

Quoniam supplicatio dēcrēta est, since a thanksgiving has been decreed.

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE to assign a reason doubtfully, or on another's authority:

Sōcratēs accūsātus est, quod corrumperet juventutē, Socrates was accused, because he corrupted the youth.

RULE XLVIII.—Causal Clauses with *cum* and *quī*.

517. Causal clauses with *cum* and *quī* generally take the Subjunctive in writers of the best period:

Cum vita metūs plēna sit, since life is full of fear.

RULE XLIX.—Temporal Clauses with *postquam*, etc.

518. In temporal clauses with *postquam*, *posteaquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, *simul atque*, etc., ‘after,’ ‘when,’ ‘as soon as,’ the Indicative is used :

Postquam vidit, etc., *castra posuit*, *he pitched his camp, after he saw*, etc.

RULE L.—Temporal Clauses with *dum*, etc.

519. I. Temporal clauses with *dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, in the sense of WHILE, AS LONG AS, take the INDICATIVE :

Haec feci, dum licuit, *I did this while it was allowed*.

II. Temporal clauses with *dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, in the sense of UNTIL, take—

1. The INDICATIVE, when the action is viewed as an ACTUAL FACT :

Dēliberā hōc, dum ego redeō, *consider this until I return*.

2. The SUBJUNCTIVE, when the action is viewed as something DESIRED, PROPOSED, OR CONCEIVED :

Differant, dum dēfervēscat ira, *let them defer it till their anger cools*.

RULE LI.—Temporal Clauses with *antequam* and *priusquam*.

520. In temporal clauses with *antequam* and *priusquam*—

I. Any tense except the Imperfect and Pluperfect is put—

1. In the INDICATIVE, when the action is viewed as an ACTUAL FACT :

Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *they are present before it is light*.

2. In the SUBJUNCTIVE, when the action is viewed as something DESIRED, PROPOSED, OR CONCEIVED :

Antequam dē rē publicā dicam, *before I (can) speak of the republic*.

II. The Imperfect and Pluperfect are put in the SUBJUNCTIVE :

Antequam urbem caperent, *before they took the city*.

RULE LII.—Temporal Clauses with *cum*.

521. In temporal clauses with *cum*—

I. Any tense except the Imperfect and the Pluperfect is put in the INDICATIVE :

Cum quīēscunt, probant, *while they are silent, they approve*.

II. The Imperfect and Pluperfect are put—

1. In the INDICATIVE, when the temporal clause ASSERTS AN HISTORICAL FACT:

Päruit cum necesse erat, he obeyed when it was necessary.

2. In the SUBJUNCTIVE, when the temporal clause simply DEFINES THE TIME of the principal action:

Cum epistolam complicarem, while I was folding the letter.

RULE LIII.—Moods in Principal Clauses (262).

523. The principal clauses of the DIRECT DISCOURSE on becoming INDIRECT take the INFINITIVE or SUBJUNCTIVE as follows:

I. When DECLARATIVE, they take the *Infinitive with a Subject Accusative*:
Dicēbat animōs esse divinōs, he was wont to say that souls are divine.

II. When INTERROGATIVE, they take—

1. Generally the *Subjunctive*:

Ad postulāta Caesaris respondit, quid sibi vellet, cūr veniret, to the demands of Caesar he replied, what did he wish, why did he come?

2. Sometimes the *Infinitive with a Subject Accusative*, as in rhetorical questions:

Docēbant rem esse testimoniō, etc.; quid esse levius, they showed that the fact was a proof, etc.; what was more inconsiderate?

III. When IMPERATIVE, they take the *Subjunctive*:

Scribit Labiēnō cum legiōne veniat, he writes to Labienus to come (that he should come) with a legion.

RULE LIV.—Moods in Subordinate Clauses (262).

524. The subordinate clauses of the DIRECT DISCOURSE, on becoming INDIRECT, take the *Subjunctive*:

Respondit sē id quod in Nervii fecisset facturum, he replied that he would do what he had done in the case of the Nervii.

RULE LV.—Moods in Indirect Clauses (127).

529. The Subjunctive is used—

I. In indirect questions:

Quæritur, cūr doctissimi hominēs dissentiant, it is a question, why the most learned men disagree.

II. Often in clauses dependent upon an Infinitive or upon another Subjunctive:

Nihil indignius est quam eum qui culpā careat supplicio nōn carere, *nothing is more shameful than that he who is free from fault should not be exempt from punishment.*

INFINITIVE.

RULE LVI.—Infinitive (132).

533. Many verbs admit an Infinitive to complete or qualify their meaning :

Haec vitare cupimus, we desire to avoid these things.

RULE LVII.—Accusative and Infinitive (171).

534. Many transitive verbs admit both an Accusative and an Infinitive :

Tē sapere docet, he teaches you to be wise.

RULE LVIII.—Subject of Infinitive (171).

536. The Infinitive sometimes takes an Accusative as its subject :

Platōnem Tarentum vēnisse reperiō, I find that Plato came to Tarentum.

SUPINE.

RULE LIX.—Supine in *Um* (166).

546. The Supine in *um* is used with verbs of motion to express PURPOSE :

Lēgātī vēnērunt rēs repetitum, deputies came to demand restitution.

RULE LX.—Supine in *ū* (246).

547. The Supine in *ū* is generally used as an Ablative of Specification :

Quid est tam jucundum auditū, what is so agreeable to hear (in hearing)?

ADVERBS.

RULE LXI.—Use of Adverbs (70).

551. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS :

Sapientēs feliciter vivunt, the wise live happily.

TABLE

SHOWING THE ARTICLES IN THIS BOOK CONTAINING ARTICLES
FROM THE LATIN GRAMMAR.

Gram.	Lat. Course.	Gram.	Lat. Course.	Gram.	Lat. Course.
1-4	1	211	227	421	258
5-14	2	212	235	422	314
16-18	4	217, 218	246	423	236
22	1	219	250	424	231
30, 31	1	231, 232	258	425, 426	185
33	1	233, 234	266	429	93
38-42	6	289-292	269	431	240
44	6	293	273	432	65
45	8	294, 295	277	438	43
46-48	10	298	281	440, NN. 1 and 2	
51	35	300, 301	281	191, f. n.	
55-58	49	346-349	14	445	107
59	53	351-353	106	459, 1	324, 16
60, 61	53	356, 357	14	460	20
62-65	63	362	59	465, N. 2	259, f. n.
66, 4	63	363	31	467, 4	339, 10
99	64	368	20	474	112
105	64	369	190	483	114
111	64	371	25	485	322
116	92	373	153	487	114
120	92	374	273	489	275, 2
140-151	42	376	275, 19	491-493	119
152-154	82	378	209	497, 498	119
155-157	86	379	98	500, 501	123
160-162	86	380	277	503	123
165, 166	86	381	299	506, 507	250
170	86	384	54	513	330
171, 172	97	385, 2	332, f. n. 2	514, 515	254
174-177	97	390	281	516, 517	334
178	247, f. n.	391	141	518, 519	337
179	97	392	303	520, 521	341
182-186	102	395	31	522-524	262
187-190	106	397	31	526	262
192-195	14	399	307	529	127
196	14 and 111	401	307	533	132
197-200	14	406	307	534	171
201-204	140	409	285	536	171
205	152	412	277	541-544	291
206	170	413	158	546	166
207	181	415	158	547	246
208	194	417	88	548-550	291
209	207	419	314	551	70
210	214	420	78		



LATIN TEXT-BOOKS.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph. D., LL. D.

A Complete Latin Course for the First Year.

*Progressive Exercises in Reading and Writing Latin, with
Frequent Practice in Reading at Sight.*

An Introductory Latin Book. 12mo.

A Latin Grammar. Edition of 1874. 12mo.

A Latin Grammar. Standard edition of 1881. 12mo.

The Elements of Latin Grammar. 12mo.

A New Latin Reader. 12mo.

A Latin Reader. 12mo.

A Latin Reader. With Exercises in Latin Composition. 12mo.

A Practical Introduction to Latin Composition. 12mo.

Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. 12mo.

Cicero's Select Orations. 12mo.

Cicero's Select Orations. With Explanatory Notes and a Special
Dictionary. 12mo.

Sallust's Catiline. With Explanatory Notes and a Special Vocabulary. 12mo.

Preparatory Course of Latin Prose Authors. Large 8vo. Contains Four Books of Caesar's Commentaries, Sallust's Catiline, and Eight of Cicero's Orations.

D. APPLETON & CO., Publishers,

NEW YORK, BOSTON, CHICAGO, SAN FRANCISCO.

STANDARD LATIN SERIES.

Harkness's Standard Latin Grammar.

"The most complete, philosophical, and attractive Grammar ever written." Adapted to all grades. 12mo. Introduction price, \$1.12.

Harkness's New Latin Reader.

Especially adapted for use with the "Standard Latin Grammar." 12mo. Introduction price, 87 cents.

Harkness's Complete Course in Latin for the First Year.

Comprising an Outline of Latin Grammar and Progressive Exercises in Reading and Writing Latin, with Frequent Practice in Reading at Sight. Designed to serve as a complete introductory book in Latin—no grammar being required. 12mo. Introduction price, \$1.12.

Harkness's Cæsar's Commentaries.

New Pictorial Edition. With full Dictionary, Life of Cæsar, Map of Gaul, Plans of Battles, Outline of the Roman Military System, etc., and Notes to the author's Standard Latin Grammar. Containing numerous colored plates, showing the movements of armies, military uniforms, arms, standards, etc., which, in point of beauty, are superior to any edition of Cæsar yet published. 12mo. Introduction price, \$1.20.

Harkness's Cicero's Orations.

With full Notes, Vocabulary, etc. 12mo. Introduction price, \$1.22.

Harkness's Course of Latin Prose Authors.

New Pictorial Edition. With full Notes and Dictionary. The work contains four books of "Cæsar's Commentaries," the "Catinine" of Sallust, and eight of Cicero's Orations. 12mo. Introduction price, \$1.40.

Frieze's Editions of Vergil.

THE ÆNEID, with Notes only. 12mo. \$1.40.

THE ÆNEID, with Notes and Dictionary. 12mo. \$1.30.

SIX BOOKS OF THE ÆNEID, GEORGICS, AND BUCOLICS, with Notes and Dictionary. 12mo. \$1.30.

VERGIL COMPLETE, with Notes and Dictionary. 12mo. \$1.60.

Sallust's Jugurthine War with full Explanatory Notes, References to Harkness's Standard Latin Grammar, and a copious Latin-English Dictionary. By CHARLES GEORGE HERBERMAN. 12mo. Introduction price, \$1.12.

(SEE NEXT PAGE.)

STANDARD LATIN SERIES—*Continued.*

Cornelius Nepos.

Prepared expressly for the Use of Students Learning to Read at Sight. With Notes, Vocabulary, Index of Proper Names, and Exercises for Translation into Latin. Illustrated by numerous Cuts. By THOMAS B. LINDSAY, Ph. D., Professor of Latin in the Boston University. 12mo. Introduction price, \$1.22.

THE SAME, for Sight-Reading in Schools and Colleges, with English-Latin Exercises and Index of Proper Names. By THOMAS B. LINDSAY. 12mo. Introduction price, \$1.00.

Selections from the Poems of Ovid.

With Notes. By J. L. LINCOLN, LL. D., Professor of Latin in Brown University. The text is very carefully annotated and references made to Harkness's Standard Grammar. 12mo. Introduction price, \$1.00.

THE SAME. With Notes and Vocabulary. 12mo. Introduction price, \$1.22.

Livy.

Selections from the First Five Books, together with the Twenty first and Twenty-second Books entire; with a Plan of Rome, a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the Use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, LL. D. 12mo. Introduction price, \$1.22.

Horace.

With English Notes, for the Use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. LINCOLN, LL. D. 12mo. Introduction price, \$1.22.

Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline.

With Notes and a Vocabulary. By NOBLE BUTLER and MINARD STURGIS. 12mo. Introduction price, \$1.22.

Germania and Agricola of Tacitus.

With Notes, for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of the Greek and Latin Languages in Amherst College. 12mo. Introduction price, 87 cents.

Mailed, post-paid, for examination, at introduction prices. Send for full descriptive circulars.

D. APPLETON & CO., Publishers,

New York, Boston, Chicago, Atlanta, San Francisco.

PROFESSOR LINCOLN'S LATIN TEXT-BOOKS.

Selections from the Poems of Ovid. With Notes. By J. L. LINCOLN, LL. D., Professor of Latin in Brown University. 12mo. 238 pages.

This edition of Ovid was prepared at the request of many teachers of Latin who regard the poetry of Ovid more suitable for the use of beginners than that of Vergil, an opinion that governs the course pursued in the European schools generally. The text is very carefully annotated, and references are made to Harkness's Standard Grammar.

Some selections from the "Amores," the "Fasti," and the "Tristia," have been added to those made from the "Metamorphoses," not only on account of the interesting themes of which they treat, but also for the sake of giving the student an opportunity of becoming acquainted with Latin elegiac verse, of which, in Latin poetry, Ovid is the acknowledged master.

With Notes and Vocabulary.

Horace. With English Notes, for the Use of Schools and Colleges. 12mo. 575 pages.

Selections from the First Five Books of Livy, together with the Twenty-first and Twenty-second Books entire; with a Plan of Rome, a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the Use of Schools. 12mo. 329 pages.

PROFESSOR LINDSAY'S LATIN TEXT-BOOKS.

Cornelius Nepos. Prepared expressly for the Use of Students Learning to Read at Sight. With Notes, Vocabulary, Index of Proper Names, and Exercises for Translation into Latin. Illustrated by numerous Cuts. By THOMAS B. LINDSAY, Ph. D., Assistant Professor of Latin in the Boston University. 12mo. 357 pages.

Among the characteristic features of this new edition of "Cornelius Nepos" are the following: The orthographical accuracy of the text, the results of the investigations of Fleckeisen, Brambach, and others having been kept carefully in view. The notes have been prepared with special reference to the training of the student in *sight-reading*, and to assist him in grasping the main idea of the sentence. The English-Latin exercises make immediate use of the words and idioms of the text, thus fixing them firmly in the mind. The marking of the long vowels and the relation of derivatives to a common root are among the special features of the vocabulary. It is a valuable supplementary reading-book, where the curriculum does not admit of its introduction into the prescribed course.

"Cornelius Nepos" is one of the authors regularly read in the German Gymnasia. The clearness of his style and the interest of the subjects treated by him are especially adapted to engage the attention of the student, and make his study of Latin a pleasure rather than a task.

THE SAME, for Sight-Reading in Schools and Colleges, with English-Latin Exercises and Index of Proper Names. 12mo.

This edition contains the Text, the English-Latin Exercises, and the Historical and Geographical Index, and is designed to meet the wants of students that desire in addition to the regular course to read a Latin author at *sight*.

D. APPLETON & CO., Publishers,

NEW YORK, BOSTON, CHICAGO, SAN FRANCISCO.

RECENT PUBLICATIONS FOR THE STUDY OF GREEK.

Hadley's Greek Grammar. Revised, and in part rewritten, by FREDERICK DE FOREST ALLEN, Ph. D., Professor of Classical Philology in Harvard University.

This grammar not only presents the latest and best results of Greek studies, but also treats the language in the light received from comparative philology. The work is clear in its language, accurate in its definitions, judicious in its arrangement, and sufficiently comprehensive for all purposes, while it is free from cumbrous details. It is simple enough for the beginner, and comprehensive enough for the most advanced students. 12mo. 495 pages. Introductory price, \$1.50.

Greek Lessons. Prepared to accompany the Grammar of Hadley and Allen. By ROBERT P. KEEP, Ph. D., Principal of the Norwich (Connecticut) Free Academy.

An elementary Greek book intended to serve as a companion and guide to the Grammar, and as an introduction to the study of Xenophon. The publishers commend this work to American teachers with great confidence that it will be found to possess important advantages above other books of its class. 12mo. Introductory price, \$1.20.

Elementary Lessons in Greek Syntax, designed to accompany the reading of Xenophon's Anabasis. By S. R. WINCHELL, A. M.

A series of lessons on Attic Greek Syntax, designed to follow about one year's study of the etymology of the language. It comprises lessons on the last half of the Grammar, with exercises and vocabularies, all arranged with a view of making the pupil familiar with the fundamental principles of Greek syntax. It is intended as an introduction to a thorough and comprehensive treatise on Greek prose composition. Introductory price, 54 cents.

Harkness's First Greek Book. Comprising an Outline of the Forms and Inflections of the Language, a complete Analytic Syntax, and an Introductory Greek Reader. With Notes and Vocabularies.

Revised and rewritten by the author. Designed especially to accompany Allen-Hadley's Greek Grammar, with references also to Goodwin's and Crosby's Greek Grammars. 12mo. 276 pages. Introductory price, \$1.05.

Three Months' Preparation for Reading Xenophon. By JAMES MORRIS WHITON, Ph. D., author of Whiton's "First Lessons in Greek," and MARY BARTLETT WHITON, A. B., Instructor in Greek in Packer Collegiate Institute, Brooklyn.

A concise and practical new introductory Greek book, designed to accompany Allen-Hadley's Greek Grammar. Containing references also to Goodwin's Greek Grammar. 12mo. 94 pages. Introductory price, 48 cents.

Sample copies, for examination, sent to teachers of Greek, post-paid, for examination, on receipt of the introductory price.

D. APPLETON & CO., Publishers,
NEW YORK, BOSTON, CHICAGO, ATLANTA, SAN FRANCISCO.

STANDARD GREEK TEXTS.

Xenophon's Anabasis: with Explanatory Notes for Use of Schools and Colleges in the United States. By JAMES R. BOISE, Ph. D. (Tübingen), LL. D., Professor of Greek in the University of Michigan. 12mo. 323 pages. Introduction price, \$1.40.

The First Four Books of Xenophon's Anabasis: with Explanatory Notes with grammatical references to Hadley-Allen's, Goodwin's, and other Greek Grammars; a copious Greek-English Vocabulary; and Kiepert's Map of the Route of the Ten Thousand. By JAMES R. BOISE. 12mo. 451 pages. Introduction price, \$1.32.

This work takes the place of the *Three Book* and *Five Book* editions of the *Anabasis* heretofore published.

THE SAME. Without Vocabulary. 12mo. 324 pages. Introduction price, \$1.08.

The First Three Books of Homer's Iliad, according to the Text of Dindorf; with Revised Notes, Critical and Explanatory, and References to Hadley-Allen's, Crosby's, and Goodwin's Greek Grammars. By HENRY CLARK JOHNSON, A. M., LL. B. 12mo. 180 pages. Introduction price, \$1.12.

THE SAME. With Vocabulary. 12mo. (*In press.*)

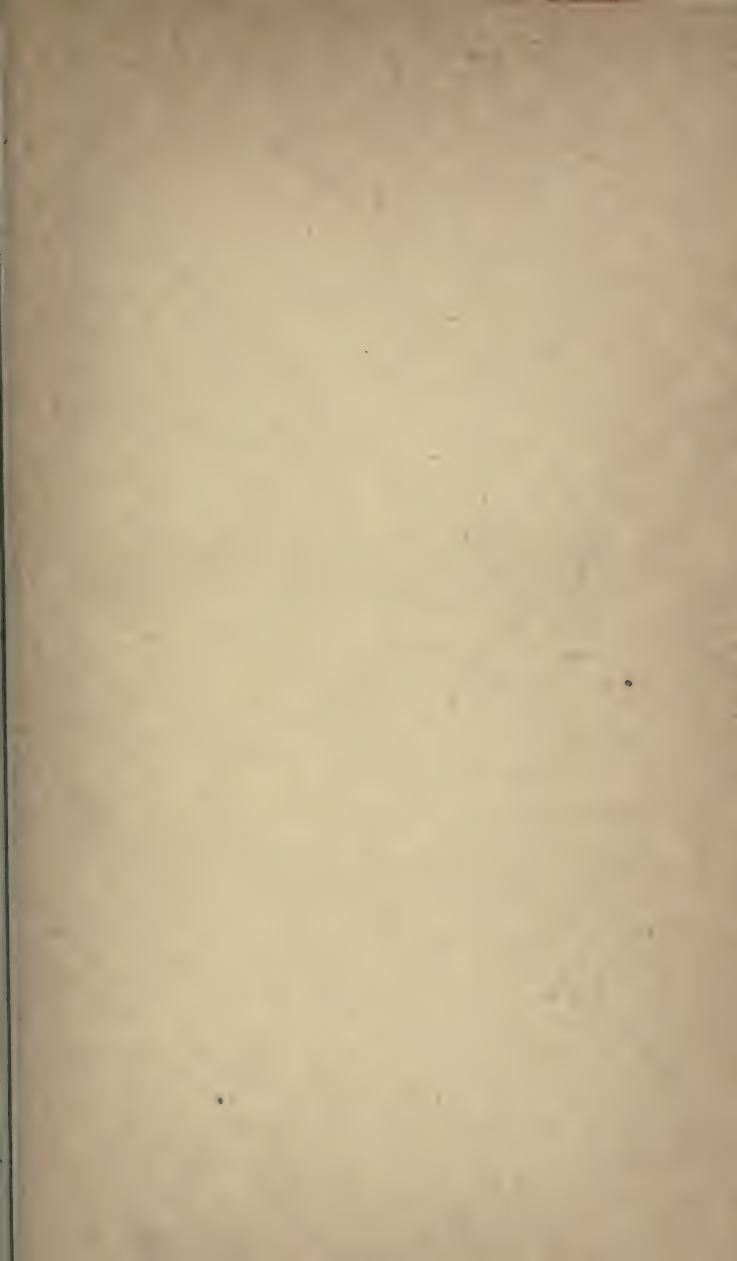
Selections from Herodotus: comprising mainly such Portions as give a Connected History of the East, to the Fall of Babylon and the Death of Cyrus the Great. By HERMAN M. JOHNSON, D. D., Professor of Philosophy and English Literature in Dickinson College. 12mo. 185 pages. Introduction price, \$1.05.

The Œdipus Tyrannus of Sophocles; with English Notes. By HOWARD CROSBY, D. D., formerly Professor of Greek Language and Literature in Rutgers College, and Professor in the University of the City of New York. Revised edition, with Notes to Hadley-Allen's and Goodwin's Greek Grammars. 12mo. Introduction price, \$1.05.

The Greek Prepositions, Studied from their Original Meanings as Designations of Space. By F. A. ADAMS, Ph. D. A short but comprehensive treatise on the meanings of the verbs as compounded with the prepositions. 12mo. 131 pages. Introduction price, 60 cents.

Specimen copies of the above books, for examination, will be sent, post-paid, to teachers of Greek, on receipt of introduction price.

D. APPLETON & CO., Publishers,
NEW YORK, BOSTON, CHICAGO, ATLANTA, SAN FRANCISCO.





STANDARD CLASSICAL TEXT-BOOKS.

- Arnold, T. K.** Greek Prose Composition. By SPENCER. 12mo.
— — Second Greek Prose Composition. By SPENCER. 12mo.
— — Greek Reading Book. By SPENCER. 12mo.
Blake, Clarence E. Lexicon of the First Three Books of the *Iliad*.
Boise, James R. Exercises in Greek Prose Composition. 12mo.
— — The First Four Books of Xenophon's *Anabasis*. With Notes and Vocabulary. 12mo.
— — Same, with Notes only. 12mo.
— — Xenophon's *Anabasis*. Complete with Notes, and Kiepert's Map. 12mo.
Champlin, J. T. Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar. 12mo.
Coy, Edward G. Mayor's Greek for Beginners.
Crosby Howard. *Œdipus Tyrannus* of Sophocles. With Notes, etc. 12mo.
Cyropædia. See OWEN.
Demosthenes. See SMEAD.
Greek Grammar. See ARNOLD, CHAMPLIN, COY, HADLEY, HARKNESS, KENDRICK, KUHNER, SILBER, and WHITON.
Greek Ollendorff. See KENDRICK.
Greek Reader. See ARNOLD, HARKNESS, and OWEN.
Greek Testament. See HAHN.
Hackett, H. B., and Tyler, W. S. Plutarch on the Delay of the Deity in Punishing the Wicked. With Notes, etc. Revised edition. 12mo.
Hadley-Allen's Greek Grammar (1884).
Hadley, James. Greek Grammar.
— — Elements of Greek Grammar.
— — Greek Verbs. Paper cover.
Hahn, Augustus. *Novum Testamentum Græce*. Notes by ROBINSON. 12mo.
Harkness, Albert. First Greek Book. With Reader, Notes, and Vocabulary. 12mo.
Herodotus. See JOHNSON, H. M.
Homer. See JOHNSON, H. C., and OWEN.
Iliad. See JOHNSON, H. C., and OWEN.
Johnson, Henry C. Homer's *Iliad*. First Three Books. Notes and References.
Johnson, Herman M. *Herodoti Orientalia Antiquiora*. Revised edition. 12mo.
Keap, Robert P. Greek Lessons.
Kendrick, Asahel C. Greek Ollendorff. 12mo.
Kuhner, Raphael. Greek Grammar. Translated by EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Revised edition. 8vo.
Memorabilia of Xenophon. See ROBBINS.
Odyssey. See OWEN.
Œdipus Tyrannus. See CROSBY, H.
Ollendorff, Greek. See KENDRICK.
Owen, John L. Acts of the Apostles, in Greek. With Lexicon. 12mo.
— — *Anabasis of Xenophon*. With Notes and References to Crosby's, Hadley's, and Kuhner's Grammars. 12mo.

STANDARD CLASSICAL TEXT-BOOKS.

- Owen, John L.** *Cyropædia of Xenophon.* With Notes, etc. Eighth edition. 12mo.
- — — *Greek Reader.* 12mo.
- — — *Homer's Iliad.* With Notes. 12mo.
- — — *Homer's Odyssey.* With Notes. Tenth edition. 12mo.
- — — *Thucydides.* With Notes, Map, etc. 12mo.
- Plato.** See TYLER.
- Plutarch.** See HACKETT and TYLER.
- Robbins's** *Memorabilia of Xenophon.* With Notes. Revised edition. 12mo.
- Robinson, Edward.** See HAHN.
- Silber, William B.** *Progressive Lessons in Greek.* With Notes and References to the Grammars of Sophocles, Hadley, and Crosby. Also, Vocabulary and Epitome of Greek Grammar, for Beginners. 12mo.
- Smead, M. J.** *The Antigone of Sophocles.* With Notes. 12mo.
- — — *The I, II, III Philippics of Demosthenes.* With Historical Introductions, and Notes. New, enlarged edition. 12mo.
- Sophocles.** See CROSBY, H., and SMEAD.
- Thucydides.** See OWEN.
- Tyler, W. S.** *Plato's Apology and Crito.* With Notes. 12mo.
- Tyler and Hackett** *Plutarch on the Delay of the Deity in Punishing the Wicked.* With Notes. 12mo.
- Whiton, James M., and Mary B.** *Three Months' Preparation for Reading Xenophon.*
- Whiton, James M.** *First Lessons in Greek: the Beginner's Companion to Hadley's Grammar.* 12mo.
- Winchell, S. R.** *Lessons in Greek Syntax.*
- Xenophon.** See BOISE, OWEN, and ROBBINS.

SYRIAC.

- Uhlemann.** *Syriac Grammar.* Translated from the German by ENOCH HUTCHINSON. With a Course of Exercises in Syriac Grammar, a Chrestomathy and brief Lexicon, prepared by the Translator. Second edition, with Corrections and Additions. 8vo.

HEBREW.

- Gesenius.** *Hebrew Grammar.* Edited by RODIGER. Translated from the last (the seventeenth) German edition by CONANT. With an Index. 8vo.

D. APPLETON & CO., Publishers,
NEW YORK, BOSTON, CHICAGO, ATLANTA, SAN FRANCISCO.

